



**EIILM UNIVERSITY**  
S I K K I M

## **COMPUTER APPLICATION IN MANAGEMENT**

**Subject: COMPUTER APPLICATION IN MANAGEMENT**

**Credits: 4**

## **SYLLABUS**

### **Introduction to Computer Systems**

Introduction: Evolution of Computers, Characteristics, Classification Generations; Computer Architecture: Components of Computer Systems (I/O Devices); Computer Memory; Data Representation

### **Computer Software**

Introduction to Software: Relation Between Hardware and Software; Types of Software: System Software, Application Software; Software Development Life Cycle; Introduction to Algorithm; Flow chart

### **Operating Systems**

Operating System: Functions of OS, Measuring System Performance; Evolution of Operating Systems : Serial Processing, Batch Processing, Multiprogramming; Types of Operating System; Operating System Techniques Multitasking, Multithreading, Multiprocessing; Some Popular Operating Systems: DOS (Disk Operating System), UNIX Operating System, Linux, Microsoft Windows, Microsoft Windows NT

### **Business Data Processing**

Data Processing; File Management System: File Types, File Organization, File Utilities; Database Management System: Database Models, Main Components of a DBMS, Creating and Using a Database

### **Data Communications**

Basic Elements of a Communication System: Data Transmission Modes, Transmission Basics; Types of Data Transmission Media; Modulation Techniques, Modems, Analog versus Digital Transmission; Multiplexing Techniques

### **Computer Networks**

Need for Computer Communication Networks; Types of Network; Network Topologies; Network Protocol; OSI and TCP/IP model ; The Future of Internet Technology; Internet Protocol; World Wide Web; E-mail; Search Engines

### **Suggested Readings:**

1. Fundamentals of Computers by Rajaraman, Publisher: Prentice Hall of India, New Delhi
2. Data Communication & Computer Network by White, Publisher: Thomas Learning, Bombay
3. Business Data Communication by Shelly, Publisher: Thomson Learning, Bombay
4. Computer Fundamentals by B.Ram, New Age Int.
5. Computer Fundamentals by P.K Sinha, Priti Sinha, Publisher Kalyani Publishers, 2nd Edition,

---

# INTRODUCTION TO COMPUTER SYSTEM

---

## Structure

### 1.1 Introduction

- 1.1.1 Evolution of Computers
- 1.1.2 A Brief History of Computers
- 1.1.3 Characteristics
- 1.1.4 Classification
- 1.1.5 Generations

### 1.2 Computer Architecture

- 1.2.1 Components of Computer System
- 1.2.2 Computer Memory

### 1.3 Data Representation

- 1.3.1 Number Systems

### 1.4 Review Questions

---

## 1.1 INTRODUCTION

---

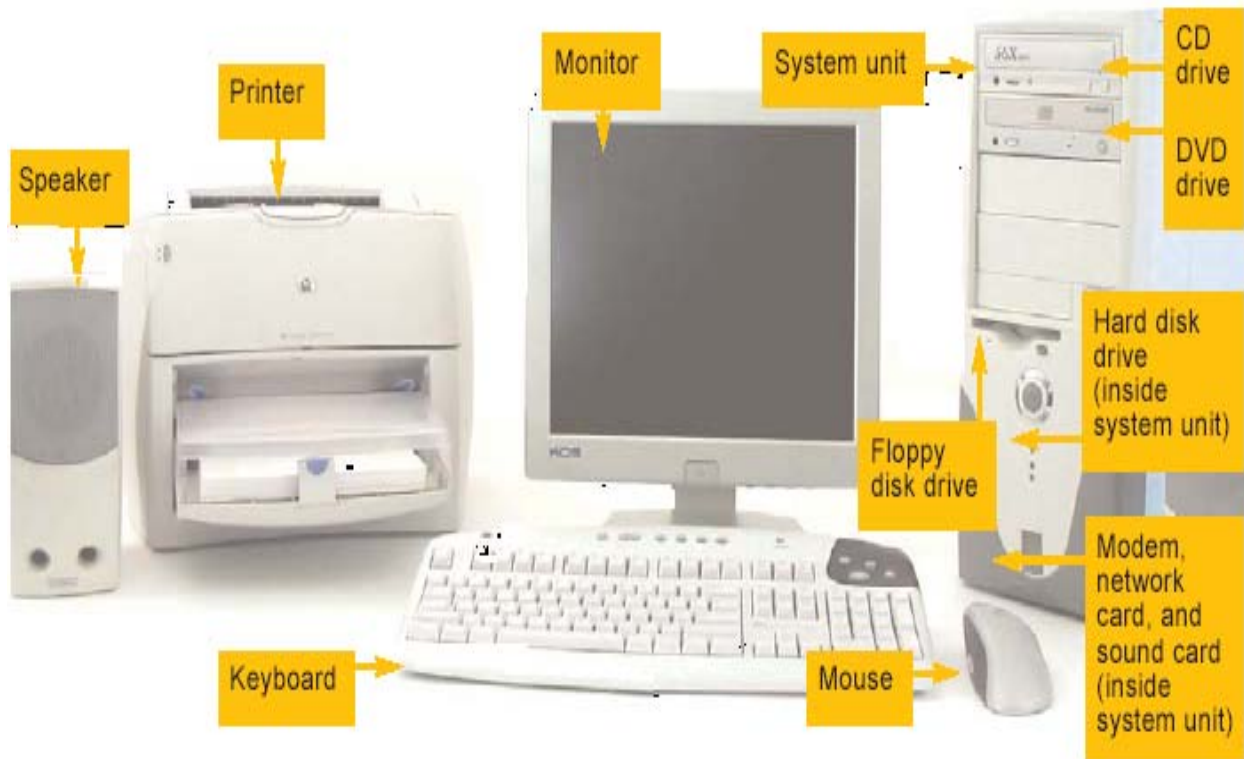
Computer has been the premier invention of this century. Now a days Computer plays an important role in almost every part of our lives, and their importance is so great that without them we would not be able to live the way we do. Look around you and you would find computers scattered all over the places, starting with the machine of computer to washing machine to refrigerator to car to mobile and to life saving devices with the doctors; everywhere a small computer working for your convenience and they seem performing almost any task in the world. Computers have had a tremendous impact on the way information is processed with in the organization. Although information have been processed manually throughout the history but with modern management where decision-making is so fast and the era of corporate governance is not possible without the help of information system managed by computers.

The word “**computer**” comes from word compute, which means to calculate. “A **computer** is a programmable machine (or more precisely, a programmable sequential state machine) that operates on data and is used for wide range of activities”.

**Computer is an electronic device or combination of electronic devices, which solves problem after accepting the data and supply the result to the user.** Computer is a

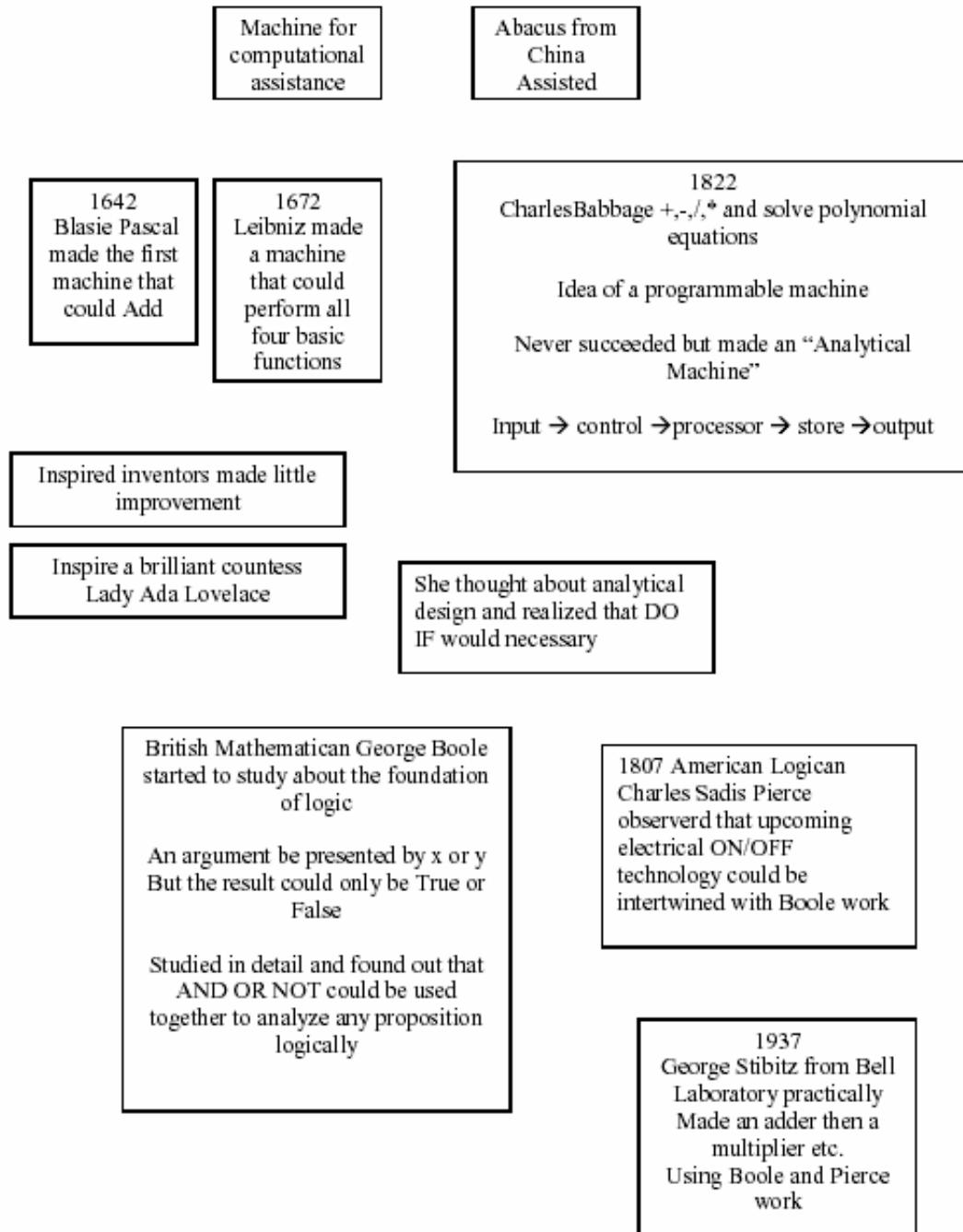
tool, which can be used to read and write stories, draw and look at images, and send and receive e-mail. They can store large information and perform various scientific and mathematical tasks.

Basically Computer system are a combination of the five elements i.e. Hardware, Software, People, Procedure and Data / information. The computer organization often compared with the human brain. Just think of a human brain how it works, first of all it can store the data with its five senses (Just like input devices in computer), it can process the gathered information and could reach to some conclusion drawing from the raw data (Just like the processing of computer system) and then it can deliver the output or result with speech or with expression (Just like the output device).



**Fig. 1.1: A Basic Personal Computer System**

### 1.1.1 Evolution of Computers





vacuum tube  
from the early  
1900's

Howard Aiken used wheels  
controlled by electrical  
impulses  
Beginning of electrical  
Computational machines

MARK I was made in  
World War II

Mauchly and Ecleut was  
given a project to make the  
first complete electrical  
machine using vaccum tubes  
Electrical Engineer At Upeen

ENIAC was made after the  
war ended It was a massive  
machine



Von Neuman meet Herman  
Goldstine accidentally.  
He collaborated extensively with  
the ENIAC team.  
His efforts were to use compter  
to solve real world problems  
This collaboration lead to the  
Most influential paper which  
formed basis for the VON  
NEUMAN ARCHITECTURE

#### FOUR STEP SYSTEM

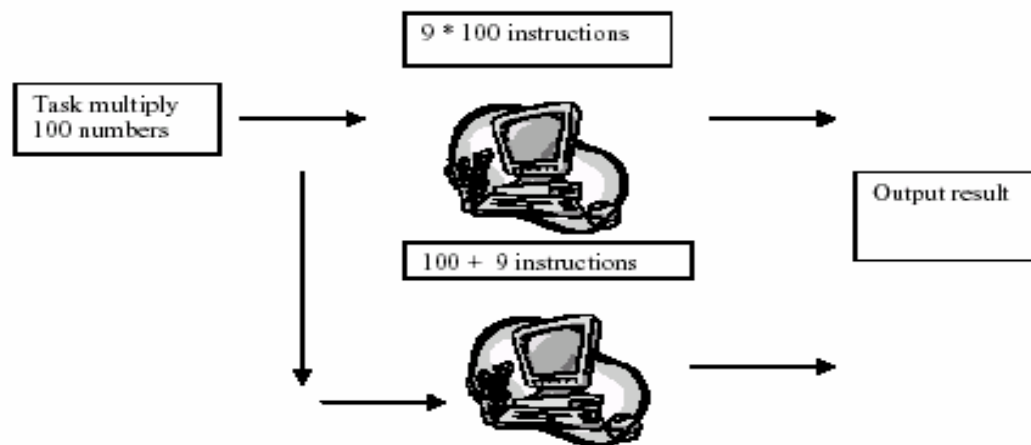
Extract Input One → Extract Input Two →  
Extract The Instruction → Store the output

SCALAR PROCESSING

FLOPS is floating point operations per  
second which is a term used to  
compare the processing power of  
machines

Transistors were introduced in 1950's by John Bardeen and William Shockley from Bell Labs  
 More transistors could be placed on one chip  
 And they were very much faster.  
 The US Govt intervened to accelerate the development Remington Rand and IBM given the challenge to make first all transistor machine  
 Remington Rand won the contract  
 LARC made with 60,000 transistors  
 IBM worked in the background made 169100 transistor machine  
 But were unable to reach the required speed  
 After losing millions of dollars both industries decided to proceed to a more lucrative business market  
 A vacuum built on the high computation side this was later on taken up by Control Data Corporation lead by Seymour Cray  
 Which would lead the market for next two decades

Integrated circuits and then processors on a single chip were introduced  
 Power consumption decreased  
 These integrated circuits marked the beginning of increase of speed more by design  
 Seymour implemented what was known as vectorization in processor design



### 1.1.2 A Brief History of Computers

"History reveals a clear pattern in the evolution of computers. Processing power increases rapidly after the introduction of the new technology. The rate of growth eventually slows down as the technology is exploited to its full potential. While in the background other technologies are nurturing and one ultimately supersedes the other to become the dominant technology and this cycle is repeated.

Under the right conditions the shift to the new technology can lead to possible increase in processor speed of hundred to thousand times. In order to have a better idea of the



evolution of computers it is worthwhile to discuss some of the well-known early computers. These are as follows:

**1. The Mark I Computer (1937-44):** Also known as Automatic Sequence Controlled calculator, this was the first fully automatic calculating machine designed by Howard A. Aiken of Harvard University in collaboration with IBM (International Business Machines) Corporation. It was an already developed for punched card machines.

Although this machine proved to be extremely reliable, it was very complex in design and huge in size. It used over 3000 electrically actuated switches to control its operations and was approximately 50 feet long and 8 feet high. It was capable of performing five basic arithmetic operations: addition, subtraction, multiplication, division, and table reference on numbers as big as 23 decimal digits. It took approximately 0.3 second to add two numbers and 4.5 seconds for multiplication of two numbers. Obviously, the machine was very slow as compared to today's computers.

**2. The Atanasoff- Berry Computer (1939-42):** Dr. John Atanasoff developed an electronic machine to solve certain mathematical equations. The machine was called the Atanasoff Berry Computer or ABC after its inventor's name and his assistant, Clifford Berry. It used 45 vacuum tubes for internal logic and capacitors for storage.

**3. The ENIAC (1943-46):** The Electronic Numerical Integrator and Calculator (ENIAC) was the first all electronic computer. It was constructed at the Moore School of Engineering of the University of Pennsylvania, U.S.A by a design team led by Professors J. Presper Eckert and John Mauchly.

The team developed ENIAC because of military needs. It was used for many years to solve ballistic related problems. It took up wall space in a 20 x 40 square feet room and used 18,000 vacuum tubes. It could add two numbers in 200 microseconds and multiply them in 2000 microseconds.

**4. The EDVAC (1946-52):** A major drawback of ENIAC was that its programs were wired on boards that made it difficult to change the programs. Dr. John Von Neumann later introduced the "stored program" concept that helped in overcoming this problem. The basic idea behind this concept is that a sequence of instructions and data can be stored in the memory of a computer for automatically directing the flow of operations. This feature considerably influenced the development of modern digital computers because of the ease with which different programs can be loaded and executed on the same computer. Due to this feature, we often refer to modern digital computers as stored program digital computers. The Electronic Discrete Variable Automatic Computer (EDVAC) used the stored program concepts in its design. Von Neumann also has a share of the credit for introducing the idea of storing both instructions and data in binary form (a system that uses only two digits – 0 and 1 to represent all characters), instead of decimal numbers or human readable words.

**5. The EDSAC (1947-49):** Almost simultaneously with EDVAC of U.S.A.; the Britishers developed the Electronic Delay Storage Automatic Calculator (EDSAC). The



machine executed its first program in May 1949. In this machine, addition operations took 1500 microseconds and multiplication operations took 4000 microseconds. A group of scientists headed by Professor Maurice Wilkes at the Cambridge University Mathematical Laboratory developed this machine.

**6. The UNIVAC I (1951):** The Universal Automatic Computer (UNIVAC) was the first digital computer that was not “one of a kind”. Many UNIVAC machines were produced, the first of which was installed in the Census Bureau in 1951 and was used continuously for 10 years. The first business use of a computer, a UNIVAC I, was by General Electric Corporation in 1954.

In 1952, the International Business machines (IBM) Corporation introduced the IBM-701 commercial computer. In rapid succession, improved models of the UNIVAC I and other 700- series machines were introduced. In 1953, IBM produced the IBM-650, and sold over 1000 of these computers. UNIVAC marked the arrival of commercially available digital computers for business and scientific applications.

### **1.1.3 Characteristics**

The ever-increasing use of computer is due to its special characteristics. Computer is not just a calculating machine; they also have the capability of doing complex activities and operation. Main characteristics of the computer are given below:

- 1. Speed:** Computer is very fast and accurate device. Since electronic pulses travel at incredible speed and they are electronic device its internal speed is virtually instantaneous. A microcomputer can process millions of instruction per seconds over and over again without any mistake.
- 2. Accuracy:** Computers physical circuits rarely make errors, if the data and instruction are correctly fed. Most errors which occur in computers are either hardware error or human error
- 3. Storage:** Computers have a large amount of memory to hold a very large amount of data, we can store large amount of data information in the secondary storage device.
- 4. Programmability:** A computer is programmable; i. e. what computer does depend on the lines of instruction (Program) it is using.
- 5. Diligence:** Computer is free from problems like lack of concentration, and confusions etc. Computer is never confused like humans and it can perform instruction again and again without failing or getting bored.
- 6. Versatility:** We can perform many different types of tasks on computer, one moment it might be busy in calculating the statistical data for annual performance evaluation of a business organization and next moment it might be working on inventory control.

7. **Power of remembrance:** Unlike humans, computer can store things for unlimited period of time. It has great remembering power.

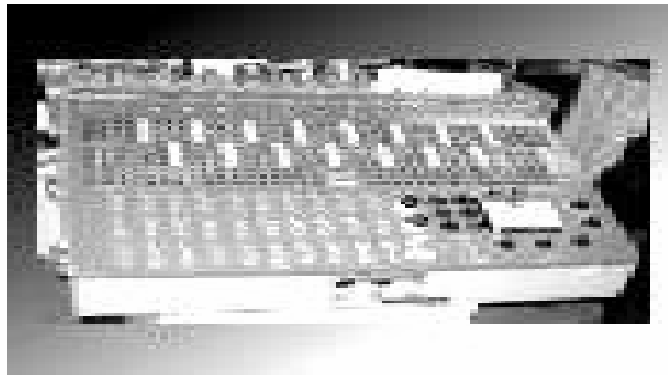
#### 1.1.4 Classification

Computers can be classified many different ways -- by size, by function, and/or by processing capacity. We will study the classification of computers by size. The size of a computer often determines its function and processing capacity. The size of computers varies widely from tiny to huge and is usually dictated by computing requirements. For example, it is clear that the IRS will have different requirements than those of a college student.

There are two basic kinds of computers: analog and digital.

##### A. Analog computers

Analog computers are analog devices. That is, they have continuous states rather than discrete numbered states. An analog computer can represent fractional or irrational values exactly, with no round off. Analog computers are almost never used outside of experimental settings. They handle or process information, which is of physical nature.



**Fig. 1.2 Analog Computers**

##### B. Digital Computer

Digital computer is a programmable-clocked sequential state machine. A digital computer uses discrete states. A binary digital computer uses two discrete states, such as positive/negative, high/low, on/off, used to represent the binary digits zero and one. They process data, which is essentially in a binary state.

Now these days, we rarely come across of analog computers in routine life. Digital computer does not get evolve in sparks time. It took more than five decades to emerge it as the most usable device today. Let's take the glimpse of its siblings.



**Fig.1.3 Digital Computer**

**1) Micro Computers:** A microcomputer's CPU is a microprocessor. The microcomputer originated in late 1970's. The first microcomputers were built around 8-bit microprocessor chips. What do we mean by an 8-bit chip? It means that the chip can retrieve instructions/data from storage, manipulate, and process an 8-bit data at a time or we can say that the chip has a built- in 8-bit data transfer path. 8088 was a 8/16 bit chip i.e. an 8-bit path is used to move data between chip and primary storage (external path), but processing is done within the chip using a 16-bit path (internal path) at a time 8086 is a 16/16 bit chip i.e. the internal and external paths both are 16 bit wide. Both these chips can support a primary storage capacity of up to 1 Mega byte (MB).



**Fig. 1.4 Micro Computer**

**2) Minicomputers:** The term minicomputer originated in 1960s when it was realized that many computing tasks do not require an expensive contemporary mainframe computers but can be solved by a small, inexpensive computer. Initial minicomputers were 8 bit and 12 bit machines but by 1970's almost all minicomputers were 16 bit machines. The 16 bit minicomputers have the advantage of large instruction set and address field; and efficient storage and handling of text, in comparison to lower bit machines. Thus, 16-bit minicomputer was more powerful machine, which could be used in variety of applications and could support business applications along with the scientific

applications. With the advancement in technology the speed, memory size and other characteristics developed and the minicomputer was then used for various stand alone or dedicated applications. The minicomputer was then used as a multi-user system, which can be used by various users at the same time. Gradually the architectural requirement of minicomputers grew and a 32-bit minicomputer, which was called super mini, was introduced. The super mini had more peripheral devices, larger memory and could support more users working simultaneously on the computer in comparison to previous minicomputers.



**Fig. 1.5 Mini Computer**

**3) Workstation** is a powerful stand-alone computer of the sort used in computer aided design and other applications requiring a high-end, expensive machine with considerable calculating or graphics capability. Machines using Intel Processor P2 at 400 MHz is an example of workstation. Now these day's computers having P-4 or AMD Athlon type microprocessor also come in the classification of workstation.

**4) Mainframe Computers** are very powerful, large-scale general-purpose computers. Their word length may be 48,60 or 64 bits, memory capacity being in some megabytes and storage capacity in some terabytes etc. A mainframe is simply a very large computer. And totally different from what you have on your desk. Don't say: what seems to be a mainframe today is on your desktop tomorrow. Apart from the CPU's (processors) that is far from true. Mainframe is an industry term for a large computer. The name comes from the way the machine is build up: all units (processing, communication etc.) were hung into a frame. Thus the main computer is build into a frame, therefore: **Mainframe** and because of the sheer development costs, mainframes are typically manufactured by large companies such as IBM, Amdahl, and Hitachi. Their main purpose is to run commercial applications of Fortune 1000 businesses and other large-scale computing purposes. Think here of banking and insurance businesses where enormous amounts of data are processed, typically (at least) millions of records, each day. They are used where large amount of data are to be processed or very complex calculations are to be made and these tasks are beyond the capacities of mini computers. They are used in research organizations, large industries, airlines reservation where a large database has to be maintained. Examples are IBM 4300 series, IBM Enterprise system/9000 series.



**Fig. 1.6 Mainframe Computer**

- 5) **Super Computers** processing capabilities lies in the range of GIPS2, word length 64-128 or may be in 256 or so. Memory capacity in some gigabytes or in terabytes and storage capacity in pixabytes. It contains a number of CPU's, which operate in parallel to make it faster, giving them their speed through parallel processing. They are used for weather forecasting, weapons research and development, rocketing, aerodynamics, atomic, nuclear and plasma physics. Supercomputers have limited use and limited market because of their very high price.



**Fig.1.7: Super Computer**

They are being used at some research centers and government being used at some research centers and government tasks. Examples of users of these computers are governmental agencies, such as the IRS, the National Weather Service, and the National Defense Agency. Also, they are used in the making of movies, space exploration, and the design of many other machines. Supercomputers are used for tasks that require mammoth data manipulation.

### **1.1.5 Generations**

‘Generation’ in computer talk is a step of changing technology. It provides the framework for the growth of computer industry. There are five generations of computer with the first generation computers being those, which became commercially available in the early 1950s.

#### **First Generation Computers (1951- 1958)**

The first generation of computer was marked by the use of vacuum tubes for the electronic components and by the use of either electrostatic tubes (i.e., cathode ray tubes) or mercury delay lines for storage. Examples of such first generation machines are EDSAC (operational in 1949), SEAC (1950, the first stored program computer operational in the US), EDV AC (1951) and IAS (1952). This generation lasted until the end of the 1950s and computers in this era had their basis in wired circuitry and thermionic valves.

Their outstanding features were:

- Vacuum Tubes Circuit
- Drum Primary Storage
- Batch processing
- Few thousand instructions per second is the processing speed
- Machine language was the language used
- It produce large amount of heat
- Very expensive
- Poor reliability
- ENIAC, EDVAC, EDSAC, UNIVAC are some of the first generation computers
- Quite large and, because they generated a lot of heat, required special housing
- The medium of internal storage was magnetic drum.

#### **Second Generation Computers (1959-1964)**

The second-generation machines were initially marked by either magnetic drum or magnetic core storage and, later, by the use *of* the transistor in place of vacuum tubes.

The second generation, which covered the first half *of* the 1960s, saw the introduction of printed circuits and the replacement of vacuum by transistors. Typical computers were the ICT (ICL) 1300 and the IBM 140J.

The outstanding features of this generation were:

- Transistors and diodes were used
- Magnetic primary storage
- Tape secondary storage
- One million instructions per second is the processing speed
- Assembly and Fortran were the language used
- Very expensive
- Better reliability
- Faster then the faster generation
- Reduced generated heat

- Required less power to operate
- Increase storage capacity

### **Third Generation Computers (1965- 1975)**

The arrival of the third generation in the mid-1960s proved to be an important milestone in the evolution of computers. The advances over the previous generation were very significant and, although relatively expensive, allowed an increasing number of organizations to reap the undoubted benefits which computerization could bring. Because of the 'high costs involved and the need to get maximum utilization from the machine, the computer service bureau business was spawned. This in itself was important in that it allowed companies to avail themselves of the new technology and to take advantage of the continuing developments. Many of the computers acquired by companies during this period are still in use.

The following are the outstanding features of this generation:

- Magnetic Disk Secondary Storage
- On-Line Real Time Processing
- Used operating System
- Multiprogramming Operating System
- Development of the micro computer
- Integrated Circuits
- Faster than the previous generation of the computer
- Better storage device (tape)
- Improved input and output device
- Transistor replaced by Integrated Circuits
- IBM- 370, NCR 395 were the third generation computers

### **Fourth Generation Computers (1975- present)**

The fourth generation of computers arrived in the mid-1970s. The distinguishing marks were the introduction of standard architecture, which was provided for greater mobility of systems, the introduction of micro-technology and significant software developments. The IBM-4300 and ICL-2900 ranges coincided with the start of this era. Micro-technology gave rise to the availability of microcomputers, word processors and intelligent terminals.

The outstanding features of this generation are:

- Further reductions in the size of the hardware
- Better price performance
- Large scale and very large scale Integrated Circuits (LSI/VLSI)
- Semiconductor primary storage
- Online real time processing
- User friendly software
- Widespread use of CRT terminals
- Development of t electronic spreadsheet
- High-level languages



- Microprocessor used
- Increase cost of software
- Data base management system
- Distributes processing
- Graphics manipulation
- Pentium/AMD based are the fourth generation computers

### **Fifth Generation Computer**

It is very difficult to define the fifth generation of the computer. The most famous example of this generation computer is fictional HAL9000 from Arutur C. Clarke's novel HAL performed all of the functions currently envisioned for real time fifth generation computer

- Organic chips
- Decreasing cost of software
- Decreasing cost of hardware
- Artificial Intelligence
- Multi point input-output
- Large storage facility
- Auto decision
- High speed
- Under development in USA, Japan and UK

---

## **1.2 COMPUTER ARCHITECTURE**

---

We have seen that computer affects our life in a big way by increasing the efficiency and enhanced ability. Now we will have to look for the anatomy of computer. What it is made up of? The architecture of a simple and basic computer system. The parts of computer as we know did not appear all at once in one machine by one person. It is a continuously evolving process starting as early as 17<sup>th</sup> century when people began to work on machines that would automate task and to your surprise the first such machine was developed in 17<sup>th</sup> century by mathematician and philosopher Blaise Pascal but it was not an electronic device. It was purely a mechanical machine, which used meshed gears to add and multiply the numbers. But after him there was a long gap when an idea emerged from Charles Babbage to process information although he could never successfully develop such mechanical machine but his idea was of million dollar worth. That's why he is known as a first father of computer. Modern electronic computer started taking shape in 1940 with the invention of Mark – I Computer since then there have been a lot of research and new inventions in the technology of computer.

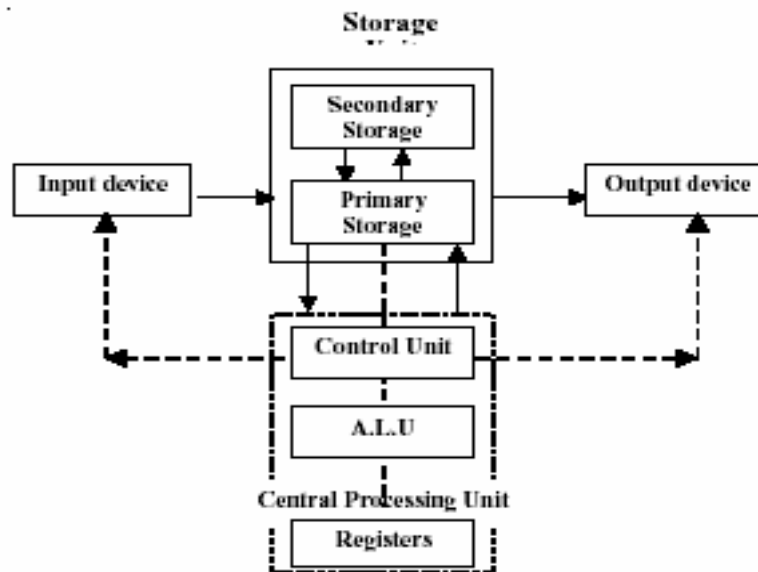
### **1.2.1 Components of Computer System (I/O Devices)**

A computer system has the following main components:

- Input Unit/Devices
- Output Unit/Devices

- Central Processing Unit
- Memory Unit/Storage Devices

All these components are basically the integral parts of general-purpose computers. These may be the Desktop systems or Workstations. The diagram of a generalized architecture of a computer system is shown here



**Fig. 1.8: Architecture of a Computer System**

### **Input/ Output Unit**

We know that the computer is a machine that processes the input data according to a given set of instructions and gives the output. Before a computer does processing, it must be given data and instructions. After processing, the output must be displayed or printed by the computer. The unit is used for getting the data and instructions into the computer and displaying or printing output is known as an Input/Output Unit (I/O Unit).

There are many peripheral devices, which are used as input/output units for the computer. The most common form of input device is known as a terminal. A terminal has an electronic typewriter like device, called keyboard along with a display screen, called Visual Display Unit (VDU) or monitor. Keyboard is the main input device while the monitor can be considered both as an input as well as an output device.

### **A) Input Devices**

Input unit performs following functions:

- a) It accepts (or reads) instructions and data from outside world.

- b) It converts these instructions and data in computer acceptable form.
- c) It supplies the converted instructions and data to computer system for further processing.

Input Devices are used to input data, information and instructions into the RAM. We may classify these devices into the following two broad categories:

- Basic Input Devices
- Special Input Devices

### **Basic Input Devices**

The input devices, which have now days become essential to operate a PC, may be called as **Basic Input Devices**. These devices are always required for basic input operations. These devices include Keyboard and Mouse.

### **Special Input Devices**

The input devices, which are not essential to operate a PC, are called as Special Input Devices. These devices are used for various special purposes and are generally not required for basic input operations. These devices include Trackball, Light Pen, Touch Screen, Joystick, Digitizer, Scanner, OMR, OCR, Bar Code Reader, MICR and Voice Input Devices.

### **B) Output Devices**

An Output unit performs following functions:

- a) It accepts the results produced by a computer, which are in coded form and hence, we cannot easily understand them.
- b) It converts these coded results to human acceptable (readable) form.
- c) It supplies the converted results to outside world.

Output devices are hardware components, which are used to display or print the processed information. We are discussing below the structure, working and uses of the common output devices:

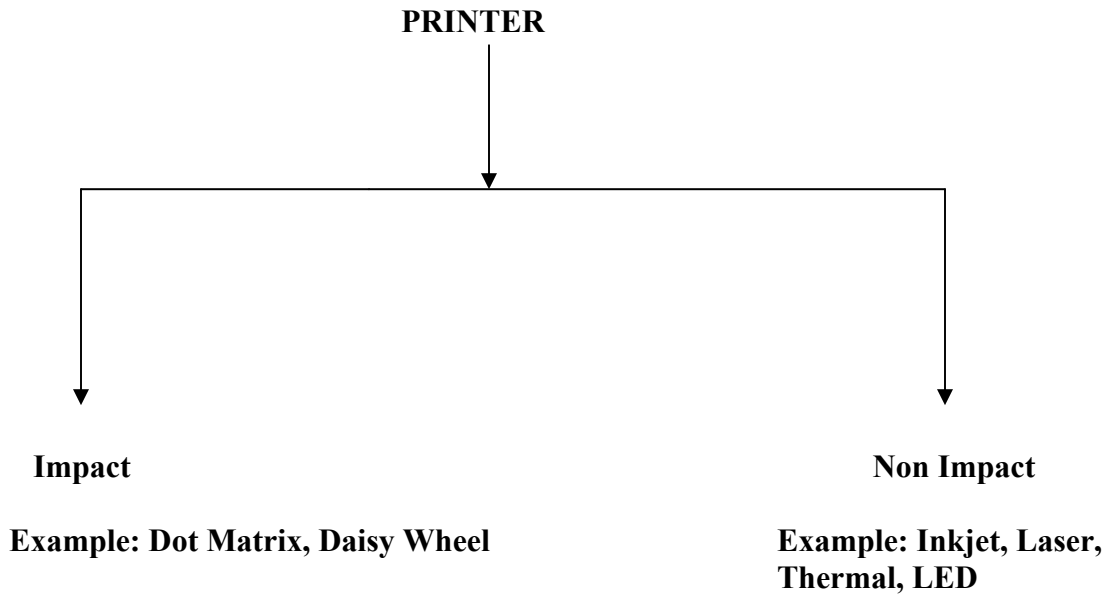
#### **Monitor**

Visual Display Unit (VDU) commonly called, as monitor is the main output device of a computer. It consists of a Cathode Ray Tube (CRT), which displays characters as an output. It forms images from tiny dots, called pixels that are arranged in a rectangular form. The sharpness of the image (screen resolution) depends upon the number of pixels.



#### **Printer**

Printer is the most important output device, which is used to print information on paper. Printers are essential for getting output of any computer-based application.



**Table 1.9 Classifications of Printers**

### **Central Processing Unit**

Central Processing Unit (CPU) is the main component or "brain" of a computer, which performs all the processing of input data. Its function is to fetch, examine and then execute the instructions stored in the main memory of a computer. In microcomputers, the CPU is built on a single chip or integrated Circuit (IC) and is called as a Microprocessor. The CPU consists of the following distinct parts:

- Arithmetic Logic Unit (ALU)
- Control Unit (CU)
- Registers
- Buses
- Clock

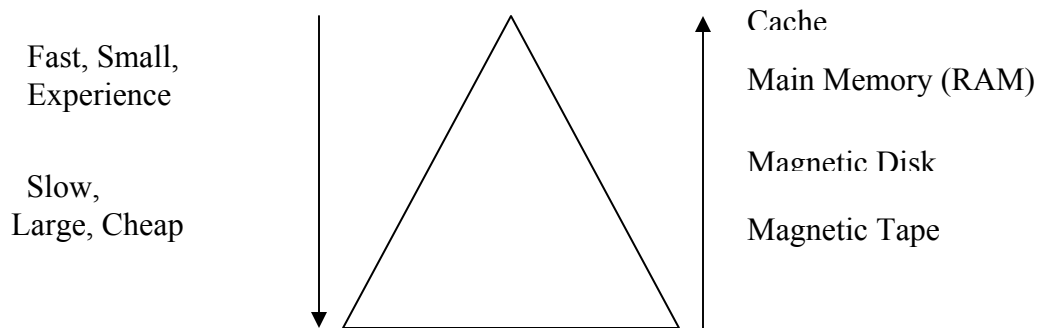
### **Memory Unit**

Memory Unit is that component of a computer system, which is used to store the data, instructions and information before, during and after the processing by ALU. It is actually a work area (physically a collection of integrated circuits) within the computer, where the CPU stores the data and instructions. It is also known as a Main/Primary/internal Memory.

### **1.2.2 Computer Memory**

Memory in a computer system is required for storage and subsequent retrieval of the instruction and data. A computer system uses variety of devices for storing the instruction and data, which are required for its operations. Normally we classify the information to be stored on computer in two basic categories: Data and the instructions.

“The storage device along with the algorithm or information on how to control and manage these storage devices constitutes the memory system of computer”. A memory system is a very simple system yet it exhibits a wide range of technology and types. But unfortunately, faster memory technology is more costly. In addition fast memories require power supply till the information needs to be stored. These things are not very convenient, but on the other hand the memories with smaller cost have very high access time, this is the time taken by CPU to access a location in the memory in high, which will result in slower operation of the CPU. Thus, the cost versus access time anomaly has lead to a hierarchy of memory where we supplement fast memories with larger, cheaper, slower memories. This memory unit may have different physical and operational characteristics, therefore, making the memory system very diverse in type, cost, organization, technology and performance. This memory hierarchy will be fruitful if the frequency of access to slower memories is significantly less than the faster memories.



Thus, a memory system can be considered to consist of three groups of memories. These are:

- 1) **Internal Processor Memories:** These consist of the small set of high speed registers which are internal to a processor and are used as temporary locations where actual processing is done.
- 2) **Primary memory or main memory:** It is a large memory, which is fast but not as fast as internal processor register. Processor directly accesses this memory. It is mainly based on integrated circuit.
- 3) **Secondary or Auxiliary Memory:** Auxiliary memory is in fact much larger in size than main memory but is, slower than main memory. It normally stores system programs, and data files. These cannot be accessed directly by processor.

### Memory

Memory- is also known as the primary storage or main memory/ internal memory. It is a part of microcomputer that hold data for processing, instruction for processing the data (the program) and information (processed data) .It is of the following three types:

1. Read Only Memory (ROM)
2. Random Access Memory (RAM)
3. Complementary Metal Oxide Semiconductor Memory (CMOS)

## 1. Read Only Memory

Read Only Memory is an essential component of the memory unit. We know that the computer, being a machine, itself has no intelligence or memory and requires instructions, which are given by a person. Whenever the computer is switched on, it searches for the required instructions. The memory, which has these essential instructions, is known as Read Only Memory (ROM). This memory is permanent and is not erased when the system is switched off. As appears with its name, it is read only memory i.e. it can be read only and not be written by user/ programmer. The memory capacity of ROM varies from 64 KB to 256 KB (1 Kilobyte = 1024 bytes) depending on the model of computer.

### Types of ROM

There are many types of ROM available for microcomputers like Mask ROM, PROM, EPROM, EEPROM and EAPROM.

**Mask ROM:** Mask ROM is the basic ROM chip. In this type of ROM, the information is stored at the time of its manufacturing. So, it cannot be altered or erased later on.

**PROM:** PROM stands for Programmable Read Only Memory. In this type of ROM, the information is stored by programmers after its manufacturing. It also cannot be altered or erased later on.

**EPROM:** EPROM stands for Erasable Programmable Read Only Memory. It is similar to PROM, but its information can be erased later on by ultra violet light and it can be reprogrammed.

**EEPROM:** EEPROM stands for Electrically Erasable Programmable Read Only Memory. It is similar to EPROM, but its information can be erased by using a high voltage current.

**EAPROM:** EAPROM stands for Electrically Alterable Read Only Memory. As compared to EPROM and EEPROM, the information stored in EAPROM can be altered later.

## 2. Random Access Memory

Random Access Memory (RAM) is another important component of the Memory Unit. It is used to store data and instructions during the execution of programs. Contrary to ROM, RAM is temporary and is erased when the computer is switched off. RAM is a read/ write type of memory, and thus can be read and written by the user/ programmer. As it is possible to randomly use any location of this memory, therefore, this memory is

known as random access memory. The memory capacity of RAM varies from 640 KB to several megabytes (1 Megabyte = 1024 KB) with different models of PC.

### **Types of RAM**

There are two types of RAM used in PCs - Dynamic and Static RAM.

**Dynamic RAM (DRAM):** The information stored in Dynamic RAM has to be refreshed after every few milliseconds, otherwise it is erased. DRAM has higher storage capacity and is cheaper than Static RAM.

**Static RAM (SRAM):** The information stored in Static RAM need not be refreshed, but it remains stable as long as power supply is provided. SRAM is costlier but has higher speed than DRAM.

### **3. Complementary Metal Oxide Semiconductor Memory**

Complementary Metal Oxide Semiconductor (CMOS) memory is used to store the system configuration, date, time and other important data. When the computer is switched on, BIOS matches the information of CMOS with the peripheral devices and displays error in case of mismatching.

---

## **1.3 DATA REPRESENTATION**

---

We know that data is usually combination of numbers, characters and special characters. This data has to be worked upon by the computer as well as it has to be transported from place to place, i.e. data has to flow from place to place within the computer hardware. As the computer is an electronic device and it works with electronic pulses, this data or information should be in the form which is machine readable and understandable, for this reason, data has to be represented in the form of electronic pulses.

The data has to be converted into electronic pulses and each pulse should be identified with a code. For these reasons, the data is converted into numeric format first, by using world wide standard called ASCII i.e. American standard code for Information Interchange, where each and every character, special character and keystrokes have numerical equivalent. We will have a detail discussion on ASCII codes in the codes section. Thus using this equivalent, the data can be interchanged into numeric format. For the numeric conversion we use number systems, each number system has a radix or base, which indicates the number of digits in that number system. Lets have a quick look at number systems.

### **1.3.1 Number System**

Most modern computer systems do not represent numeric values using the decimal system. Instead, they typically use a binary or two's complement numbering system. To understand the limitations of computer arithmetic, you must understand how computers represent numbers.

In any number system there is an ordered set of symbols known as digit with rules



defined for performing arithmetic operations like addition, multiplication etc. A collection of these digits makes a number which in general has two parts

1. Integer part
2. Fractional part

These two parts are separated by a point (.).

$$(N)_b = d_{n-1}d_{n-2}d_{n-3}\text{-----}d_1d_0.d_1d_{-2}d_{-3}\text{-----}d_{-m}$$

Where

N = A number

b = radix or base of the number system

n = number of digits in integer portion

m = number of digits in fractional portion

$d_{n-1}$  = most significant digit (msd)

$d_{-m}$  = least significant digit (lsd)

Let's understand it:

You are quite familiar with the decimal number system that is the number system we are using in our daily life. Here base is 10 as it has 10 digits (0...9)

Suppose you are having a number

N = 1 2 3. ....8 9

$d_1 d_0 . d_1 d_2$

where d represents the digits

The base is 10

n is 3

m is 2

Now I think you got the basic criteria to distinguish the one number system from another. Now based on this lets come to the types of number system

### Types of Number Systems

Basically there are 4 types of number system. They are as follows

- Binary number system;
- Decimal number system;
- Octal number system;
- Hexadecimal number system.

Now lets see the characteristics of these number systems:

Number system	Base or radix (b)	Symbols or digits used (d)	Example
Binary System	2	0, 1	1011.11
Octal System	8	0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7	3567.25
Decimal System	10	0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9	3947.89
Hexadecimal System	16	0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9, A, B, C, D, E, F	3FA9.9A

**Table 1.1**

---

## 1.4 REVIEW QUESTIONS

---

1. What are supercomputers and where they are used?
2. What is the different between analog and digital computer? You have to explain in your own words?
3. What is the difference between second and the fourth generation of the computer?
4. Do the comparative studies of the various generations of the computer based on power and space occupied by them
5. What are the characteristics of computer?
6. Draw a block diagram to illustrate the basic organization of a computer system and explain the functions of various units.
7. Which component of a computer is generally called 'brain' of computer and Why? Describe the functions of the distinct parts of this component.

---

# COMPUTER SOFTWARE

---

## Structure

### 2.1 What is Software?

#### 2.1.1 Relation between Hardware and Software

### 2.2 Types of Software

#### 2.2.1 System Software

#### 2.2.2 Application Software

### 2.3 Software Development Life Cycle

### 2.4 Introduction to Algorithm

### 2.5 Flowcharts

#### 2.5.1 Problem Solving, Step by Step

#### 2.5.2 How to Draw Flowcharts

#### 2.5.3 Basic Flowcharting Shapes

#### 2.5.4 Advantages of Flowcharts

### 2.6 Review Questions

---

## 2.1 WHAT IS SOFTWARE?

---

A Computer cannot do anything on its own. It must be instructed to do a job desired by us. Hence, it is necessary to specify a sequence of instructions a computer must perform to solve a problem. Such a sequence of instructions written in a language understood by a computer is called a **computer program**. A program controls a computer's processing activity, and the computer performs precisely what the program wants it to do. When a computer is using a program to perform a task, we say, it is running or executing that program.

The term **software** refers to a set of computer programs, procedures, and associated documents (flowcharts, manuals, etc.) describing the program, and how they are to be used.

A software package is a group of programs that solve a specific type of job. For example, a word processing package may contain programs for text editing, text formatting, drawing graphics, spelling checking, etc. Hence, a multipurpose computer system, like a personal computer in your home, has several software packages, one each for every type of job it can perform.

### **2.1.1 Relation between Hardware and Software**

For a computer to produce useful output its hardware and software must work together. Nothing useful can be done with the hardware on its own, and software cannot be utilized without supporting hardware.

To take an analogy, a cassette player and its cassettes purchased from the market are hardware. However, the songs recorded on the cassettes are its software. To listen to a song, that song has to be recorded on one of the cassettes first, which is then mounted on the cassette player and played. Similarly, to get a job done by a computer, the corresponding software has to be loaded in the hardware first and then executed.

Following important points regarding the relationship between hardware and software are brought out by this analogy:

1. Both hardware and software are necessary for a computer to do useful job. Both are complementary to each other.
2. Same hardware can be loaded with different software to make a computer perform different types of jobs just as different songs can be played using the same cassette player.
3. Except for upgrades (like increasing main memory and hard disk capacities, or adding speakers, modems, etc.); hardware is normally a one- time expense, whereas software is a continuing expense. Like we buy new cassettes for newly released songs or for songs whose cassettes, we do not have, we buy, new software to be run on the same hardware as and when need arises, or funds become available.

---

## **2.2 TYPES OF SOFTWARE**

---

Software is broadly classified into following two types:

- System Software
- Application Software

### **2.2.1 System Software**

Software that is required to control the working of hardware and aid in effective execution of a general user's applications are called System Software. This software performs a variety of functions like file editing, storage management, resource accounting, I/O management, database management, etc. Some of the examples of system software are DOS (Disk Operating System), Windows, BASIC, COBOL and PC TOOLS. This software is developed by System Programmers.

#### **Types of System Software**

System software can be further categorized into following three types:

- System Management Software (Operating Systems, DBMSS, Operating Environments)

- System Development Software (Language Translators, Application Generators, CASE Tools)
- System Software Utilities

**Assemblers:** Assemblers translate the assembly language code (source program) into machine language code (object program). After assembling, a linker program is used to convert the object program into an executable program. The Microsoft assembler program (MASM) and Borland Turbo assembler program (TASM) are two popular assemblers. Assemblers are used mainly in development of system software.

**Interpreters:** Instructions of a high-level language are coded in many statements. At the time of their execution, they are converted statement by statement into machine code, by using system software, called *Interpreters*. For example, programs written in BASIC language are executed by using BASICA or GWBASIC interpreters. Programs written in some fourth generation languages, like dBase III plus are also executed using dBase interpreter.

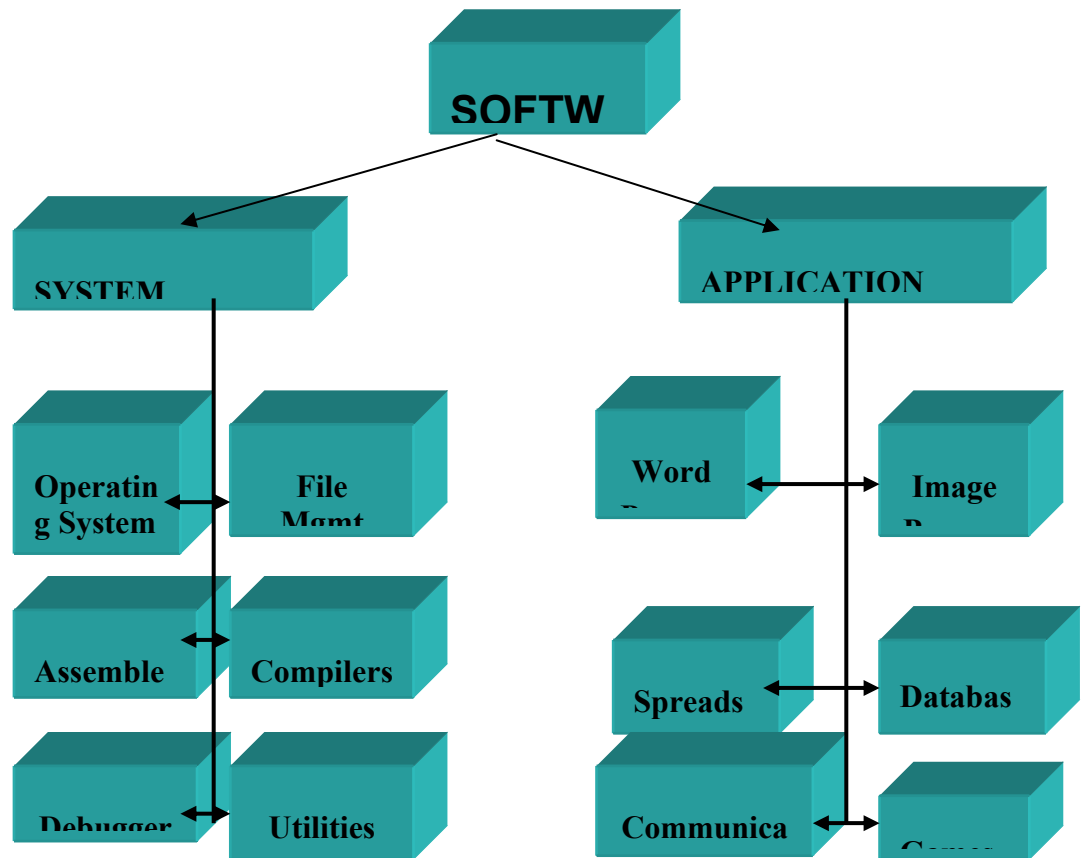
There are certain disadvantages of interpreters. As instructions are translated and executed simultaneously using interpreters, they are very slow for executing large programs. Hence, interpreters are not suitable for most of applications development.

**Compilers:** As contrast to interpreters, compilers provide faster execution speed. Compilers do not translate and execute the instructions at the same time. They translate the entire program (source code) into machine code (object code). Using linker, the object code is converted into executable code. Compilers are widely used in translating codes of high-level languages (e.g. COBOL, FORTRAN, PASCAL, Turbo/ Quick BASIC, Turbo/ Microsoft C etc.) and fourth generation languages (dBase IV, FoxPro etc.). As compared to interpreters or assemblers, compilers are preferred in development of application software.

### 2.2.2 Application Software

Software that is required for general and special purpose applications like database management; word processing, accounting etc. are called Application Software. Some of the examples of application software are dBase, Word Star, Tally etc. Application software is developed using system software by Application Programmers. Application software can be further classified into following two types:

- General Purpose Application Software (Database Management Packages, Word Processors, Spreadsheets etc.)
- Special Purpose Application Software (Accounting, Inventory, Production Management etc.)



**Fig 2.1 Types of Software**

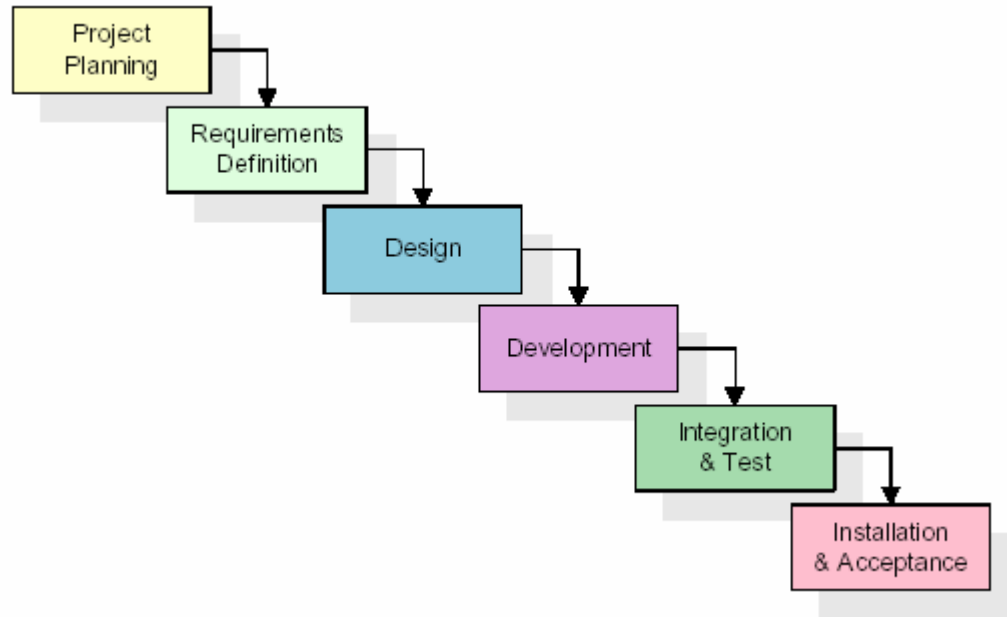
---

## **2.3 SOFTWARE DEVELOPMENT LIFE CYCLE**

---

Software Development Life Cycle or SDLC is a model of a detailed plan on how to create, develop, implement and eventually fold the software. It's a complete plan outlining how the software will be born, raised and eventually be retired from its function. All software needs to be developed by someone. Developing software and putting it to use is a complex process involving following steps:

1. Analyzing the problem at hand, and planning the program (s ) to solve the problem;
2. Coding the program (s);
3. Testing, debugging, and documenting the program (s);
4. Implementing the program (s);
5. Evaluating and maintaining the program (s).



**Fig 2.2 Software Development Life Cycle**

### **Importance of Software Development Life Cycle**

Because software can be very difficult and complex. We need the SDLC as a framework to guide the development to make it more systematic and efficient.

We will be able to tell how long it will take to complete the project, to test and deploy. Not only that, you'll have an easier time debugging and finding flaws in the software program or make enhancement to it.

---

## **2.4 INTRODUCTION TO ALGORITHM**

---

Planning a program involves defining its logic (the correct sequence of instructions needed to solve the problem at hand). The term **Algorithm** refers to the logic of a program. It is a step – by – step description of how to arrive at a solution. To a given problem. It is defined as a sequence of instructions that when executed in the specified sequence, the desired results are obtained. In order to qualify as an algorithm, a sequence of instructions must possess the following characteristics:

1. Each instruction should be precise and unambiguous.
2. Each instruction should be executed in a finite time.
3. One or more instructions should not be repeated infinitely. This ensures that the algorithm will ultimately terminate.
4. After executing the instructions (when the algorithm terminates), the desired results are obtained.



Therefore, in simple terms, we can say that an algorithm is a procedure to accomplish a specific task. It is the idea behind any computer program. To be interesting, an algorithm has to solve a general, well-specified *problem*. An algorithmic problem is specified by describing the complete set of *instances* it must work on and what properties the output must have as a result of running on one of these instances. This distinction between a problem and an instance of a problem is fundamental. To gain insight into algorithms, let us consider a simple example.

**Example:** There are 50 students in a class who appeared in their final examination. Their mark sheets have been given to you. Write an algorithm to calculate and print the total number of students who passed in first division.

**Algorithm:**

Step 1: Initialize TOTAL FIRST DIVISION and TOTAL MARKSHEETS CHECKED to zero.

Step 2: Take the mark sheet of the next student.

Step 3: Check the division column of the mark sheet to see if it is FIRST. If no, go to step 5.

Step 4: Add 1 to TOTAL FIRST DIVISION.

Step 5: Add 1 to TOTAL MARKSHEETS CHECKED.

Step 6: Is TOTAL MARKSHEETS CHECKED = 50? If no, go to step 2.

Step 7: Print TOTAL \FIRST DIVISION.

Step 8: Stop.

It must be clear to you from this example that even for every simple problems, the development of algorithms is not as simple as it might initially appear and requires some thinking. It may also be noted from the given example that in order to solve a given problem, each and every instruction must be strictly carried out in a particular sequence. It is this fact, which a beginner to problem solving by computers finds difficult to appreciate.

---

## 2.5 FLOWCHARTS

---

A Flowchart is a pictorial representation of an algorithm. Programmers often use it as a program – planning tool for visually organizing a sequence of steps necessary to solve a problem using a computer. It uses boxes of different shapes to denote different types of instructions. The actual instructions are written within these boxes using clear and concise statements. Solid lines having arrow marks connect these boxes to indicate the flow of

operation, that is, the exact sequence in which to execute the instructions. The Process of drawing a flowchart for an algorithm is known as **flowcharting**.

### **2.5.1 Problem Solving: Step by Step**

Before we begin to learn the kinds of steps that a computer has to perform to solve a problem, let us think about problem solving, in general.

Think of what you might do if I asked you to write a set of instructions for brushing your teeth. What are the steps you might write down? Would you write this down?

- (1) Put toothpaste on toothbrush.
- (2) Brush teeth with toothbrush.
- (3) Put toothbrush away.

If you write only these three instructions, it means that the person must somehow know where the toothbrush and toothpaste are located, how to get the toothpaste out of the tube, what it means toothbrush, and how to put the toothbrush away. You cannot assume that the person knows these things. You have not taken care of any possible problems that might arise. You would have to be much more detailed in you writing. Let try it again

- (1) Go to the bath-room.
- (2) Open door.
- (3) Take out toothpaste.
- (4) If toothbrush is not there, look for toothbrush.
- (5) If toothbrush is not found, go to step 18.
- (6) Remove toothpaste.
- (7) If toothpaste is not there, look for toothpaste.
- (8) If toothpaste cannot be found, go to step 12.
- (9) Take cap of toothpaste.
- (10) Squeeze toothpaste onto toothbrush.
- (11) If toothpaste does not come out of the tube, check tube.
- (12) Put toothbrush into mouth and rub on teeth.
- (13) Spit out.

- (14) Fill glass with water.
- (15) Rinse mouth with water.
- (16) Wash face.
- (17) Replace toothbrush.
- (18) Put toothpaste away if you had toothpaste.
- (19) Wash face.
- (20) Clean sink.
- (21) Rinse glass.
- (22) Put glass back.

It took twenty-two instructions to replace the three instructions and I have left out one instruction did you spot it?! Did not put the cap back on the toothpaste!

Sometimes, if you Java out a step like that, the computer will just stop. It may say something to you or it may not. It may continue to do things, but they may not be the things you want you do. It may give you an answer, but the answer may not be the correct one. The computer did not make a mistake. It did all the steps you asked it to do. If the computer does not do what you want it to do, it may be because you did not tell it the right steps. It may be because you left out a choice that made a change in the program.

Did you notice that I included what you had to do if anything went wrong? If there were no toothbrush or toothpaste or if the toothpaste did not come out of the tube, you were instructed to do something. You must plan 'for all the things that could happen when the computer is running its program. What if a number gets to be too big or someone gives the wrong answer to a question? You must have something for the computer to do in every base.

You are making a plan for the computer to follow, just as the architect makes a plan for the carpenters to follow. Before we begin to make plans for a computer to follow, let's try to plan some things for people to do and then have you follow the plans. Some actions you might write instructions for are typing a shoelace of a necktie, putting on makeup, or riding bicycle. If you don't put in enough steps, you may find someone in a very strange position.

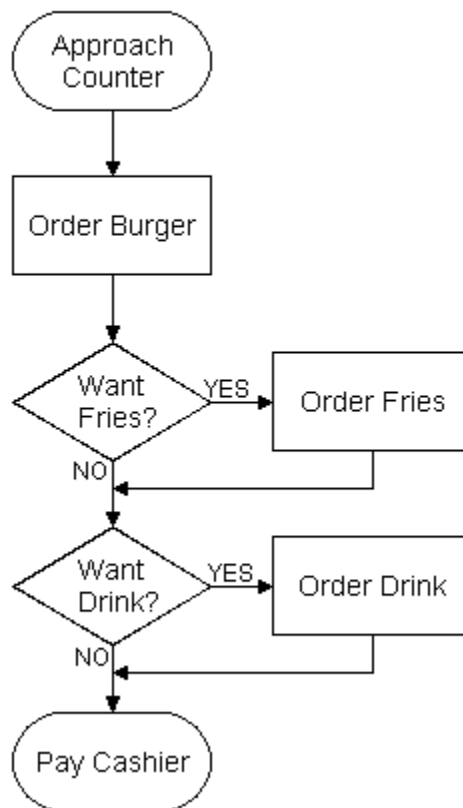
### **2.5.2 How to Draw Flowcharts**

A flowchart illustrates the steps in a process. By visualizing the process, a flowchart can quickly help identify bottlenecks or inefficiencies where the process can be streamlined or improved.

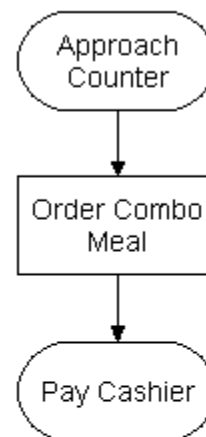
### Example: Two Flowcharts for a Common Process

Suppose your research revealed that you always want fries and a drink with your burger. You decide to streamline your process by ordering the combo meal, which automatically includes fries and a drink. The two flowcharts show at a glance that you omit two decisions and two order steps by using the streamlined order process.

**Ordering a Burger  
Standard Process**


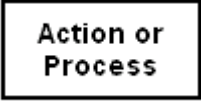


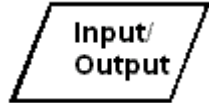

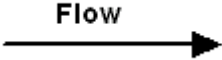


**Ordering a Burger  
Improved Process**



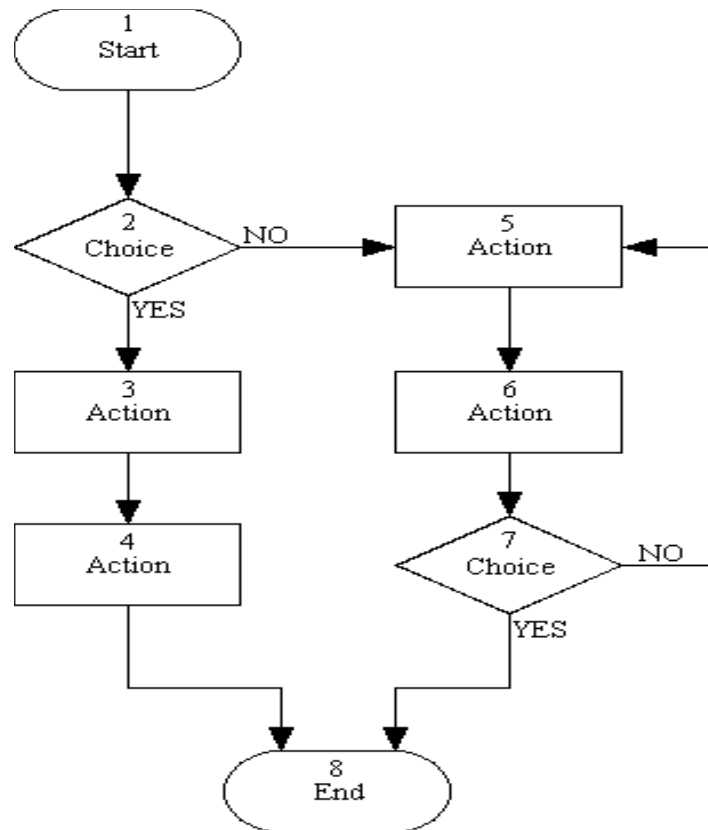
### 2.5.3 Basic Flowcharting Shapes

Flowcharts use special shapes to represent different types of actions or steps in a process. Lines and arrows show the sequence of the steps, and the relationships among them.

	<p>The terminator symbol marks the starting or ending point of the system. It usually contains the word "Start" or "End."</p>
	<p>A box can represent a single step ("add two cups of flour"), or an entire sub-process ("make bread") within a larger process.</p>
	<p>A printed document or report.</p>
	<p>A decision or branching point. Lines representing different decisions emerge from different points of the diamond. The box where the computer can make decisions like finding out which number is bigger or smaller or equal than another number, depending on the information it receives. These are diamond-shaped boxes. The computer can decide with the help of decision taken by the diamond box, which route is to be followed further.</p>
	<p>Represents material or information entering or leaving the system, such as customer order (input) or a product (output).</p>
	<p>Indicates that the flow continues on another page, where a matching symbol (containing the same letter) has been placed.</p>
	<p>Lines indicate the sequence of steps and the direction of flow.</p>

### Basic Flowchart

A basic Flowchart identifies the starting and ending points of a process, the sequence of actions in the process, and the decision or branching points along the way.



### 2.5.4 Advantages of Flowcharts

The following benefits may be obtained from flow charts:

1. Better Communication
2. Effective analysis
3. Effective synthesis
4. Proper program Documentation
5. Effective coding
6. Systematic debugging
7. Systematic testing

---

## **2.6 REVIEW QUESTIONS**

---

1. Differentiate between system and application software. Give 4 examples of each
2. What are the various flowcharting symbols?
3. Draw a flow chart of getting the maximum of three numbers input.
4. What is algorithm? What are the characteristics necessary for a sequence of instructions to qualify as an algorithm?
5. Define the terms hardware and software.
6. Describe the functions of the various basic flowcharting symbols.



---

# OPERATING SYSTEMS

---

## Structure

### 3.1 Introduction

- 3.1.1 Layers of Operating System
- 3.1.2 Functions of Operating Systems
- 3.1.3 Characteristics of an Operating System
- 3.1.4 Measuring System Performance

### 3.2 Evolution of Operating Systems

- 3.2.1 Serial Processing
- 3.2.2 Batch Processing
- 3.2.3 Multiprogramming

### 3.3 Types of Operating System

- 3.3.1 Batch Processing Operating Systems.
- 3.3.2 Time Sharing Operating Systems
- 3.3.3 Real Time Operating Systems

### 3.4 Operating System Techniques

- 3.4.1 Multiprogramming
- 3.4.2 Multiprocessing
- 3.4.3 Multitasking
- 3.5.4 Multithreading

### 3.5 Some Popular Operating Systems

- 3.5.1 Disk Operating System
- 3.5.2 UNIX
- 3.5.3 Linux
- 3.5.4 Microsoft Windows
- 3.5.5 Microsoft Windows NT

### 3.6 Review Questions

---

## 3.1 INTRODUCTION

---

What is human body without life giving Oxygen, the same is the case of a computer, its existence is immaterial, without an operating system, such is the importance of the Operating System. Operating System falls under the category of System software. The goal of this unit is to introduce the concept related to operating system and what is the function of operating system.

The Operating System is not the command interpreter alone, as people perceive. The Operating System is the program that must be running all the time, and cannot be replaced

without it being a different O/S. Let us look into this most important component of the Computer System, the Operating System.

**Definition 1:**

“An operating system can be defined as the set of instructions or programs, which make the computer work”

**Definition 2:**

“An Operating System or OS is a software program that enables the computer hardware to communicate and operate with the computer software”

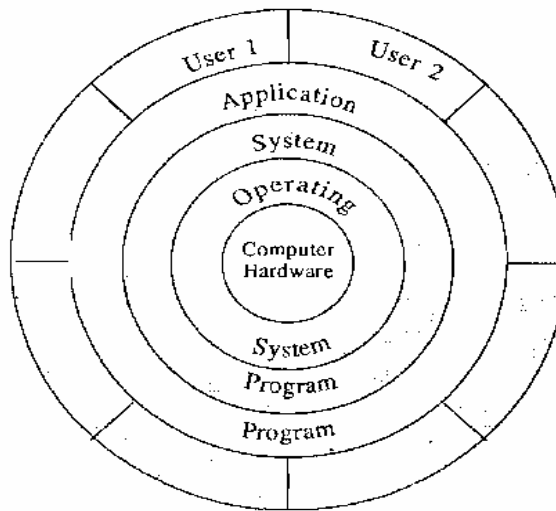
**Definition 3:**

“An operating system is software, which controls the computer and its peripherals and makes the computer ready to use by a process called booting”

Without an Operating System a computer would be useless.

An **Operating System (OS)** is an integrated set of programs that is used to manage the various resources and overall operations of a computer system. It is designed to support the activities of a computer installation. Its prime objective is to improve the performance and efficiency of a computer and increase facility, the ease with which a system can be used. As we have seen that an operating system is software, which makes the computer ready to use by a process called booting. Before, discussing more on the operating systems, let us first see what exactly do you mean by booting:

When we switch on the computer, the instructions stored in ROM are automatically executed. These instructions help the computer to load the operating system from external storage device (disk) to internal storage (RAM). This process of loading of operating system from disk to RAM is called **booting**.



**Fig 3.1 Component of Computer System**

### 3.1.1 Layers of Operating System

Each group of computers may have its own and unique operating system although not necessarily only one. Operating system programs are commonly stored in hard disk. When we switch on the computer the booting program known as BIOS (Basic I/O System) which is stored in the ROM (Read only memory) fetches the OS from hard disk to primary storage (RAM). An OS tells the computer how to conduct himself. The architecture of Operating System is designed with many layers in the core of it is Hardware/Kernel, above it is loaded an OS which in turn controls everything inside a computer and make an interface with the application program loaded in to the computer. It interconnects the application program to CPU through Compiler or Interpreter.

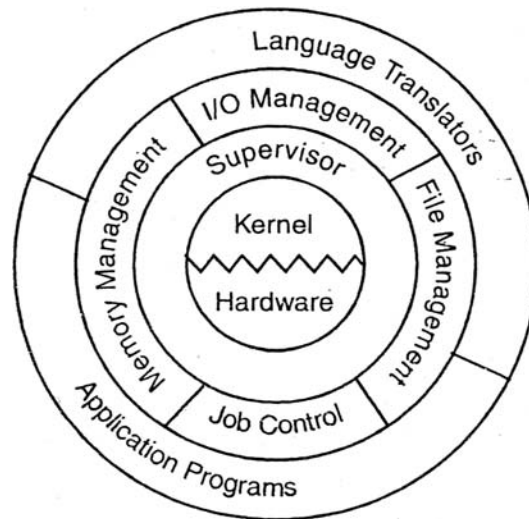


Fig 3.2 Layers of Operating System

### 3.1.2 Functions of Operating Systems

Operating systems in general take care of all the housekeeping tasks. They do read and write files, maintain disk directories, allocate memory to application programs, and usually handle mechanical chores such as reading the keyboard when you press keys and updating the screen when something needs to be displayed. These tasks require a surprising amount of software and every computer requires software to do these jobs.

Due to the fact that there is close-knit cooperation between operating systems and applications programs, each and every application program must be designed such that it is able to work with a particular operating system. All operating systems essentially do the same things but they do it in different ways, some features may be additional which add to the functionality. This makes the point clear that an application program may work with all operating systems, with slight modifications. An operating system performs, basically the following functions:

1. Communication with the computer user or operator by means of terminals or Consoles, and through the use of monitor commands and responses. It acts as

system start up device also. The operating system is automatically loaded into hardware's main memory (RAM) when computer is turned on. Then the OS either waits for you to give it a command or it brings a pre selected program into a ready to operate condition. This sequence is known as boot strapping or simply booting.

2. **Assigning Priorities:** Usually, the OS has several levels of priorities. For instance, a report generating program may continue to run until the system receives a command or query from the terminal, (a priority in computer lingo). Then the system responds to the request from the terminal before continuing with the report program.
  3. **The scheduling and loading of programs, or subprograms** is necessary in order to provide a continuous job processing sequence or to provide appropriate responses to events- job to job - processing and job accounting.
  4. **Control over hardware resources** e.g. control over the selection and operation of all peripheral devices used to input, or storage. The operating system also directs the movement and processing of information required by your applications programs. It transfers data to and from storage and input output devices like terminals or printers.
  5. **Managing the data and program files:** The operating system directs the information storage and retrieval functions using one or more filing methods. These may include sequential (magnetic tape), random (as on disk, units) or data base storage structures.' the latter method uses special identifiers for each file to locate information more rapidly and to avoid- redundant information storage.
  6. **Provide utility functions** that provide the user with tools for some operations like:
    - Loading programs
    - Transferring files from one floppy to another, backing up and copying.
    - Formatting a disk to accept data Program.
    - Sending information to I/O devices like printer, or a modem.
    - Displaying the directory of contents of a disk.
  7. **Handling errors** when they occur and using corrective routines where possible.
  8. **Protecting hardware, software and data** from improper use.
  9. **Furnishing a complete Account** of what has happened during operation. Some details of this log may be stored for accounting purposes.
- The more sophisticated a computer's operating system, the better the computer system can manage itself, the less human intervention is required, and the more data computer can process. This is one reason why today's mainframe operating systems are large, complex programs involving thousands of instructions and costing thousands of dollars.

### 3.1.3 Characteristics of an Operating System

Let us try to identify the main characteristics of an operating system:

- Concurrency: being able to handle events as they occur and executing multiple tasks in parallel;
- Sharing the resources for a number of reasons:
  1. Cost
  2. Using the work of others
  3. Sharing data: use the same data in several different programs possibly used by several different users.
- Removing redundancy;
- Long-term storage of information (privacy, integrity, security);
- Non determinacy: an operating system must be able to handle events occurring in an unpredictable order.

### 3.1.4 Measuring System Performance

Efficiency of an operating system and overall performance of a computer system are measured usually in terms of the following parameters:

1. **Throughput:** Throughput is the amount of work that a system is able to do per unit time. It is measured as the number of jobs (processes) completed by the system per unit time. For example, if a system is able to complete  $n$  processes in  $t$  seconds, its throughput is  $n/t$  processes per second during that interval. Throughput is measured normally in processes per hour. Note that the throughput of a system does not depend on its jobs processing efficiency only, but also on the number of jobs processed. For long process, throughput of a system may be one process/hour; whereas for short processes, it may be 100 processes /hour for the same system.
2. **Turnaround time:** From the point of view of an individual user, an important criterion is how long it takes a system to complete a job submitted by him/her. **Turnaround time** is the interval between the time of submission of a job to the system for processing to the time of completion of the job. Although, higher throughput is desirable from the point of view of overall system performance, individual users are more interested in better turnaround time for their jobs.
3. **Response time:** Turnaround time is not a suitable measure for interactive systems because in such a system a process can produce some output early during its execution and can continue executing while previous results are being output to the user. Hence, another measure used in case of interactive systems is response time. It is the interval between the time of submission of a job to the system for processing to the time of the system producing the first response for the job. In any computer system, it is desirable to maximize throughput and minimize turnaround time and response time.

---

## **3.2 EVOLUTION OF OPERATING SYSTEMS**

---

An operating system may process its task serially (sequentially) or concurrently (several tasks simultaneously). It means that the resources of the computer system may be dedicated to a single program until its completion or they may be allocated among several programs in different stages of execution. The feature of operating system to execute multiple programs in interleaved fashion or different time cycles is called as multiprogramming systems. In this topic, we will try to trace the evolution of operating system. In particular, we will describe serial processing, batch processing and multiprogramming.

### **3.2.1 Serial Processing**

Programming in 1's and 0's (machine language) was quite common for early computer systems. Instruction and data used to be fed into the computer by means of console switches or perhaps through a hexadecimal keyboard. Programs used to be started by loading the program computer register with the address of the first instruction of a program and its result (program) used to be examined by the contents of various registers and memory locations of the machine. Therefore, programming in this style caused a low utilization of both users and machine.

Advent of Input Output devices, such as punched cards paper tape and language translators (Compiler/Assemblers) brought a significant step in computer system utilization. Program started being coded into programming language are first changed into object code (binary code) by translator and then automatically gets loaded into memory by a program called loader. After transferring a control to the loaded program, the execution of a program begins and its result gets displayed or printed. Once in memory, the program may be re-run with a different set of input data. The process of development and preparation of a program in such environment is slow and cumbersome due to serial processing and numerous manual processing. In a typical sequence first the editor is called to create a source code of user program written in programming language, translator is called to convert a source code into binary code and then finally loader is called to load executable program into main memory for execution. If syntax errors are detected, the whole process must be restarted from the beginning. The next development was the replacement of card decks with standard input/output and some useful library programs, which were further linked with user program through system software called linker. While there was a definite improvement over machine language approach, the serial mode of operation is obviously not very efficient. This results in low utilization of resources.

### **3.2.2 Batch Processing**

Utilization of computer resources and improvement in programmer's productivity was still a major prohibition. During the time that tapes were being mounted or programmer was operating the console, the CPU was sitting idle. The next logical step in the evolution of operating system was to automate the sequencing of operations involved in program execution and in the mechanical aspects of program development. Jobs with similar requirements were batched together and run through the computer as a group. For example,

suppose the operator received one FORTRAN program, one COBOL program and another FORTRAN program. If he runs them in that order, he would have to set up for FORTRAN program environment (loading the FORTRAN compiler tapes) then set up COBOL program and finally FORTRAN program again. If he runs the two FORTRAN programs as a batch, however he could set up only once for FORTRAN thus saving operator's time.

Batching similar jobs brought utilization of system resources quite a bit. But there were still problems. For example, when a job is stopped, the operator would have to notice that fact by observing the console, determine why the program stopped and then load the card reader or paper tape reader with the next job and restart the computer. During this transition from one job to the next, the CPU sat idle.

To overcome this idle time, a small program called a resident monitor was created which is always resident in the memory. It automatically sequenced one job to another job. Resident monitor acts according to the directives given by a programmer through control cards which contain information like marking of job's beginnings and endings, commands for loading and executing programs, etc. These commands belong to job control language. These job control language commands are included with user program and data. Here is an example of job control language commands.

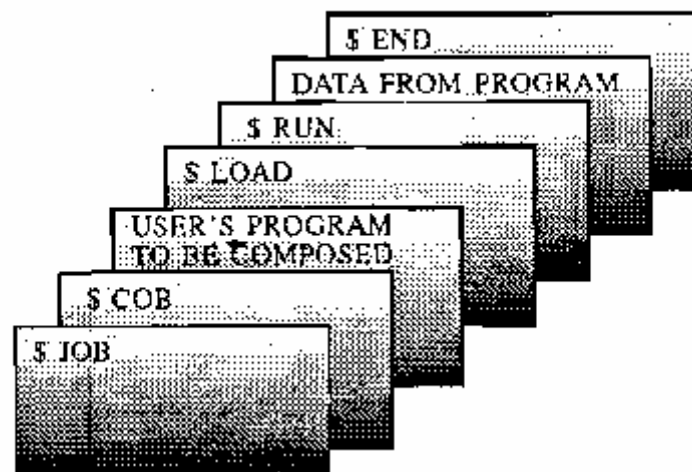
\$COB - Execute the COBOL compiler

\$JOB - First card of a job

\$END - Last card of a job

\$LOAD - Load program into memory

\$RUN - Execute the user program



**Figure 3.3 shows a sample card deck set up for a simple batch system.**

With sequencing of program execution mostly automated by batch operating system, the speed discrepancy between fast CPU and comparatively slows input/output devices such as ' card readers, printers emerged as a major performance bottleneck. Even a slow CPU works in the microsecond range, with millions of instructions per second. But, fast card

reader, on the other hand, might read 1200 cards per minute. Thus, the difference in speed between the CPU and its input/output devices may be three orders of magnitude or more. The relative slowness of input/output devices can mean that CPU is often waiting for input/output. As an example, an Assembler or Compiler may be able to process 300 or more cards per second. A fast card reader, on the other hand, may be able to read only 1200 cards per minute. This means that assembling or compiling a 1200 card program would require only 4 seconds of CPU time but 60 seconds to read. Thus, the CPU is idle for 56 out of 60 seconds or 93.3 per cent of the time. The resulting CPU utilization is only 6.7 per cent. The process is similar for output operations. The problem is that while an input/output is occurring, the CPU is idle, waiting for the input/output to complete; while the CPU is executing, input/output devices are idle.

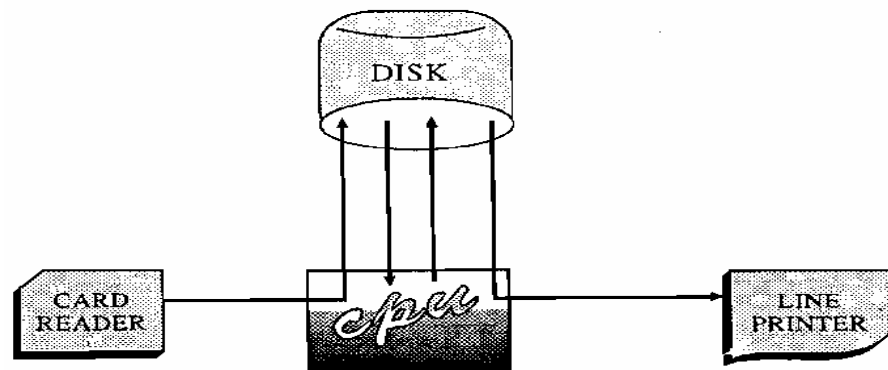
Over the years, of course, improvements in technology resulted in faster input/output devices. But CPU speed increased even faster. Therefore, the need was to increase the throughput and resource utilization by overlapping input/output and processing operations. DMA (Direct Memory Access) chip which directly transfers the entire block of data from its own buffer to main memory without intervention by CPU was a major development. While CPU is executing, DMA can transfer data between high speed input/output devices and main memory. CPU requires to be interrupted per block only by DMA. Apart from DMA, there are two other approaches to improving system performance by overlapping input, output and processing. These are buffering and spooling.

**Buffering** is a method of overlapping input, output and processing of a single job. The idea is quite simple. After data has been read and the CPU is about to start operating on it, the input device is instructed to begin the next input immediately. The CPU and input device are then both busy. With luck, by the time that the CPU is ready for the next data item the input device will have finished reading it. The CPU can then begin processing the newly read data, while the input device starts to read the following data. Similarly, this can be done for output. In this case, the CPU creates data that is put into a buffer until an output device can accept it. For output, the CPU can proceed at full speed until, eventually all system buffers are full. Then the CPU must wait for the output device. This happens with input/output bound jobs where the amount of input/output relation to computation is very high. Since the CPU is faster than the input/output device, the speed of execution is controlled by the input/output device, not by the speed of the CPU.

More sophisticated form of input/output buffering called **SPOOLING** (simultaneous peripheral operation on line) essentially use the disk as a very large buffer (figure 3.4) for reading and for storing output files reading and for storing output files.

Buffering overlaps input, output and processing of a single job whereas Spooling allows CPU to overlap the input of one job with the computation and output of other jobs. Therefore this approach is better than buffering. Even in a simple system, the spooler may be reading the input of one job while printing the output of a different job.



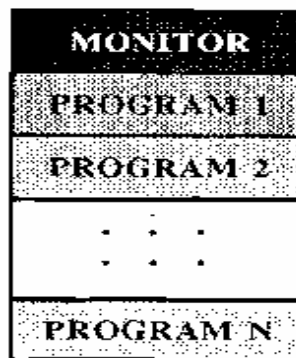


**Fig 3.4 Spooling**

### 3.2.3 Multiprogramming

Buffering and spooling improve system performance by overlapping the input, output and computation of a single job, but both of them have their limitations. A single user cannot always keep CPU or I/O devices busy at all times. Multiprogramming offers a more efficient approach to increase system performance. In order to increase the resource utilization, systems supporting multiprogramming approach allow more than one job (program) to utilize CPU time at any moment. More number of programs competing for system resources, better will be resource utilization. The idea is implemented as follows. The main memory of a system contains more than one program (Figure 3.5).

#### Primary Memory



**Figure 3.5: Memory layout in multiprogramming environment**

The operating system picks one of the programs and start executing. During execution process program1 may need some I/O operation to complete. In a sequential execution environment (Figure 3.6a), the CPU would sit idle. In a multiprogramming system, (Figure 3.6b) operating system will simply switch over to the next program (Program2).

When that program needs to wait for some I/O operation, it switches over to Program 3 and so on. If there is no other new program left in the main memory, the CPU will pass its control back to the previous programs.

Multiprogramming has traditionally been employed to increase the resource utilization of a computer system and to support multiple simultaneously interactive users (terminals). Compared to operating system which supports only sequential execution, multiprogramming system requires some form of CPU and memory management strategies

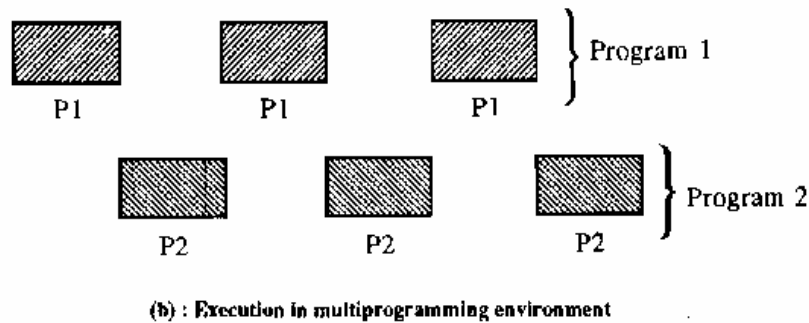
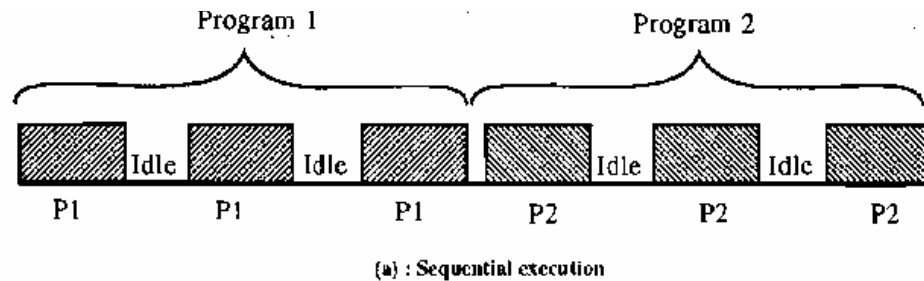


Figure 3.6: Multiprogramming

---

### 3.3 TYPES OF OPERATING SYSTEM

---

As computers have progressed and developed so have the types of operating systems. Many types of operating systems are available for computers, which can be divided into the following two broad categories -

- (a) Single-user operating systems.
- (b) Multi-user operating systems.

**(a) Single-user operating systems:** These operating systems are used for mainly computers having only one terminal (stand-alone PCs). MS DOS (Microsoft Disk Operating System) and PC DOS (Personal Computer Disk Operating System) are the two important single user operating systems. Both systems are almost identical and are simply called DOS. OS/2 and Windows NT are other popular single-user multi-tasking operating systems for microcomputers.

- (i) **Microsoft DOS** - MS DOS, developed by 'Microsoft Inc.' in 1981, is the most widely used operating system of IBM-compatible microcomputers. The latest version identification number of a release of software) of MS DOS is 7.
- (ii) **PC DOS** - PC DOS is essentially the same operating system as MS DOS, but developed and supplied by IBM for its personal computers.

**(b) Multi-user operating systems:** These operating systems are used for those computers (micro to mainframe), which have many terminals (multi-user systems). The popular operating systems used for multi-user systems are UNIX, NETWARE, MVS, OS/400, VMS and Linux.

Multi-user operating systems are used on networks of computers and allow many different users to access the same data and application programs on the same network. It also allows users to communicate with each other.

Modern computer operating systems may also be classified into three other groups, which are distinguished by the nature of interaction that takes place between the computer user and his or her program during its processing. The three groups are called **batch**, **time-shared** and **real time** operating systems.

### **3.3.1 Batch Processing Operating Systems.**

If there was a lot of work to be done, then these works are pooled and the collections of these instructions would be given to the computer to work on overnight. Since the computer was working on batches of instructions, this type of operating system was called a Batch Processing Operating System.

Batch processing operating systems are good at churning through large numbers of repetitive jobs on large computers. Jobs like: printing of invitations for AGM, consolidation of marks and presenting result, working out the pay of each employee in large firm; or processing all the questionnaire forms in a large survey.

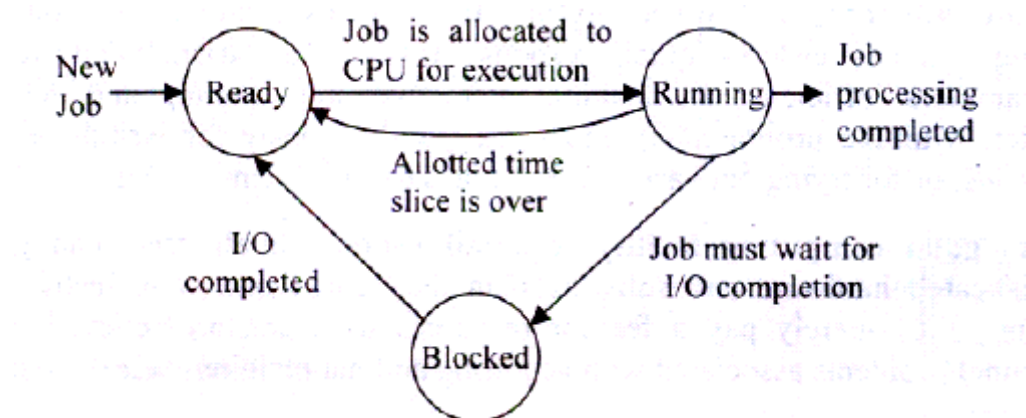
In a **batch processing operating system** environment users submit jobs to a central place where these jobs are collected into a batch, and subsequently placed on an input queue at the computer where they will be run. In this case, the user has no interaction with the job during its processing, and the computer's response time is the turnaround time-the time from submission of the job until execution is complete, and the results are ready for return to the person who submitted the job.

### **3.3.2 Time Sharing Operating Systems**

Time-sharing is a mechanism to provide simultaneous interactive use of a computer system by many users in such a way that each one feels that he/she is the sole user of the system. It uses multiprogramming with a special CPU scheduling algorithm to achieve this.

A time-sharing system has many (even hundreds of) user terminals connected to the same computer simultaneously. Using these terminals, multiple users can work on the system

simultaneously. Multiprogramming feature allows multiple user programs to reside simultaneously in main memory, and special CPU scheduling algorithm allocates a short period of CPU time one-by-one to each user process (from the first one to the last one, and then again beginning from the first one). The short period during which a user process gets to use CPU is known as **time slice, time slot, or quantum**, and is typically of the order of 10 to 100 milliseconds. Hence, when CPU is allocated to a user process, it uses the CPU until the allotted time slice expires (system's clock sends an interrupt signal to CPU after every time slice), or it needs to perform some I/O operation, or it completes its execution during this period. Notice that CPU is taken away from a running process when the allotted time slice expires. Figure 3.7 shows the process state diagram of a time-sharing system



**Figure 3.7 Process state diagrams for a time-sharing system.**

In this environment a computer provides computing services to several or many users concurrently on-line. Here, the various users are sharing the central processor, the memory, and other resources of the computer system in a manner facilitated, controlled, and monitored by the operating system. The user, in this environment, has nearly full interaction with the program during its execution, and the computer's response time may be expected to be no more than a few second.

**Advantages of Time-sharing Systems:** Although time-sharing systems are complex to design, they provide the following advantages to their users:

- 1. Reduces CPU idle time.** A user's thinking and typing speed is much slower than a computer's processing speed. Hence, during interactive usage of a system, while a user is engaged in thinking or typing his / her input, a time-sharing system services many other users. Hence, time-sharing systems help in reducing CPU idle time and, in turn, provide increased system throughput.
- 2. Provides advantages of quick response time.** The special CPU scheduling algorithm used in time sharing systems ensures quick response time to all users. This feature helps in improving programmers' efficiency by making interactive programming and debugging much simpler and quicker. Multiple programmers can work simultaneously for writing,

testing, and debugging their programs, or for trying out various approaches to a problem solving.

**3. Offers good computing facility to small users.** Small users can gain direct access to more sophisticated hardware and software than they could otherwise justify or afford. In time-sharing systems, they merely pay a fee for resources used and are relieved of hardware, software, and personnel problems associated with acquiring and maintaining their own installation.

**Multitasking Operating Systems:** Multi-tasking operating systems are now very common. They enable the computer to run more than one piece of software at the same time. It is quite common to sit at your computer and have a word-processor open and running, as well as an Internet browser, and an audio CD player all at the same time.

The operating system allows you to switch between the applications and even transfer data between them (for example, it helps you to copy a picture from an internet site shown on your browser application and paste it into your DTP application).

Multitasking Operating systems allow multiple software processes to be run at the same time. Operating systems that would fall into this category are:

- System 7.x
- System 8.x
- UNIX
- Windows 2000
- Windows 95
- Windows 98
- Windows NT 4.0

Multitasking operating systems allow a user to do more than one thing at the same time.

**Multi-user Operating Systems:** Multi-user operating systems are used on networks of computers and allow many different users to access the same data and application programs on the same network. It also allows users to communicate with each other.

There are many different types of Network Operating System, each one suited to a different.

**Multi - User -** Allows multiple users to utilize the computer and run programs at the same time. Operating systems that would fall into this category are:

- System 7.x
- System 8.x
- UNIX
- Windows 2000
- Windows 3.1x
- Windows 95
- Windows 98

- Windows NT

### 3.3.3 Real Time Operating Systems

A Real-Time Operating System (**RTOS**) is a multitasking operating system intended for real-time applications. Such applications include embedded systems (programmable thermostats, household appliance controllers), industrial robots, spacecraft, industrial control (see SCADA), and scientific research equipment. It is another form of operating system which is used in environments where a large number of events mostly external to computer systems, must be accepted and processed in a short time or within certain deadlines. Examples of such applications are flight control, real time simulations etc. Real time systems are also frequently used in military application.

Real Time Operating Systems are designed to service those applications where response time is of the essence in order to prevent error, misrepresentation or even disaster. Examples of real time operating systems are those, which handle airlines reservations, machine tool control, and monitoring of a nuclear power station. The systems, in this case, are designed to be interrupted by external signal that require the immediate attention of the computer system.

A primary objective of real-time system is to provide quick response times. User convenience and resource utilization are of secondary concern to real-time system. In the real-time system each process is assigned a certain level of priority according to the relative importance of the event processes. The processor is normally allocated to the highest priority process among those which are ready to execute. Higher priority process usually pre-empt execution of lower priority processes. This form of scheduling called, priority based pre-emptive scheduling, is used by a majority of real-time systems.

In fact, many computer operating systems are hybrids, providing for more than one of these types of computing service simultaneously. It is especially common to have a background batch system running in conjunction with one of the other two on the same computer. A number of other definitions are important to gaining an understanding of operating systems:

A **multiprogramming operating system** is a system that allows more than one active user program (or part of user program) to be stored in main memory simultaneously. Thus, it is evident that a time-sharing system is a multiprogramming system, but note that a multiprogramming system is not necessarily a time-sharing system. A batch or real time operating system could, and indeed usually does, have more than one active user program simultaneously in main storage. Another important, and all too similar, term is 'multiprocessing'.

A **multiprocessing system** is a computer hardware configuration that includes more than one independent processing unit. The term multiprocessing is generally used to refer to large computer hardware complexes found in major scientific or commercial applications. This Operating system allows multiple processors to be utilized. Operating systems that would fall into this category are:

- UNIX
- Windows 2000
- Windows NT 4.0

A **networked computing system** is a collection of physical interconnected computers. The operating system of each of the interconnected computers must contain, in addition to its own stand-alone functionality, provisions for handling communication and transfer of program and data among the other computers with which it is connected.

A **distributed computing system** consists of a number of computers that are connected and managed so that they automatically share the job-processing load among the constituent computers, or separate the job load as appropriate particularly configured processors. Such a system requires an operating system, which, in addition to the typical stand-alone functionality, provides coordination of the operations and information flow among the component computers.

The networked and distributed computing environments and their respective operating systems are designed with more complex functional capabilities. In a network operating system the users are aware of the existence of multiple computers, and can log in to remote machines and copy files from one machine to another. Each machine runs its own local operating system and has its own user (or users).

A distributed operating system, in contrast, is one that appears to its users as a traditional unprocessed system, even though it is actually composed of multiple processors. In a true distributed system, users should not be aware of where their programs are being run or where their files are located; that should all be handled automatically and efficiently by the operating system.

Network operating systems are not fundamentally different from single processor operating systems. They obviously need a network interface controller and some low-level software to drive it, as well as programs to achieve remote login and remote files access, but these additions do not change the essential structure of the operating systems.

---

## 3.4 OPERATING SYSTEM TECHNIQUES

---

There are several techniques used in Multi-user operating systems for enabling many users to concurrently share the single or multiple CPU (e.g. Multiprogramming and Multiprocessing). Some techniques are used in single-user operating system to handle multiple tasks (Multitasking). We will now discuss these common techniques used in different operating systems.

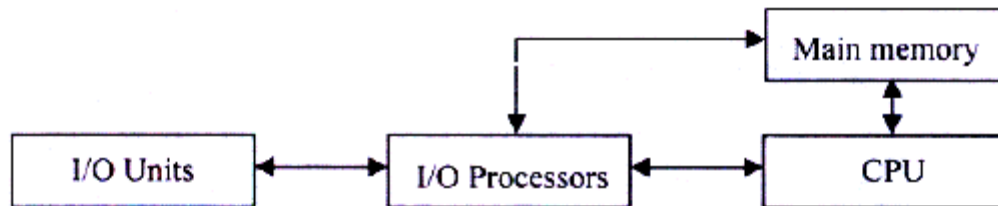
### 3.4.1 Multiprogramming

It is a process by which single CPU works on two or more programs simultaneously. Using this technique, the operating system keeps the CPU busy. Multiprogramming allows the processor to handle either multiple batch jobs at a time (Batch Multiprogramming) or

multiple interactive jobs shared among multiple users (Time Sharing Multiprogramming). Time-sharing is a technique that allows a CPU to simultaneously support the activities of several users by allocating fixed time slots (in milliseconds). Examples of operating systems that support multiprogramming are OS/2, UNIX and Macintosh System 7.

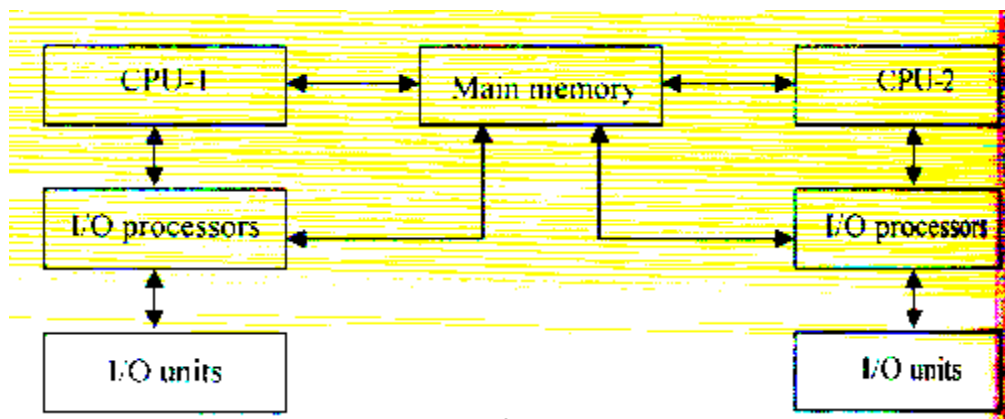
### 3.4.2 Multiprocessing

It refers to the use of two or more CPUs to perform a coordinated task simultaneously. Figure 3.8 shows the architecture of a computer with its CPU, memory, and I/O processors.



**Fig 3.8 Architecture of a computer system with its CPU, memory, and I/O processors.**

The idea of using I/O processors to improve system performance was carried a step further by designing systems with multiple CPUs. Such systems are called **multiprocessing systems** because they use multiple processors (CPUs) and can execute multiple processes concurrently. Multiple CPUs of these systems are used to process either instructions from different and independent programs or different instructions from the same program simultaneously. Figure 3.9 shows basic organization of a typical multiprocessing system.



**Figure 3.9 Basic organization of a typical multiprocessing system**

For example, MVS, VMS and Windows NT support multiprocessing.

### 3.4.3 Multitasking

It refers to the ability of an operating system to execute two or more tasks concurrently. In multitasking environment, the user opens new applications without closing the previous ones and the information can be easily moved among a number of applications.



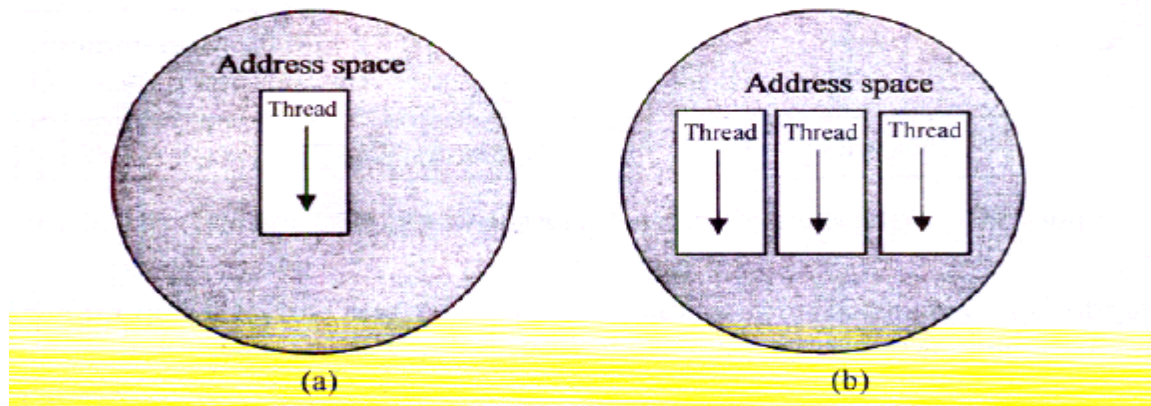
Technically speaking, multitasking is same as multiprogramming. Many authors do not distinguish between multiprogramming and multitasking because both refer to the same concept. However, some authors prefer to use the term *multiprogramming* for multi-user systems (systems that are used simultaneously by many users such as mainframe and server class systems), and *multitasking* for single-user systems (systems that are used by only one user at a time such as a personal computer or a notebook computer). Note that even in a single-user system, it is not necessary that the system processes only one job at a time. In fact, a user of a single-user system often has multiple tasks being processed by the system. For example, while editing a file in foreground, a sorting job can be given in background. Similarly, while compilation of a program is in progress in background, user may be reading his/her electronic mails in foreground. In this manner, a user may work concurrently on many tasks. In such a situation, status of each of the tasks is viewed on computer's screen normally by partitioning the screen into multiple windows. Progress of different tasks is viewed on different windows in a multitasking system.

Hence, for those who like to differentiate between multiprogramming and multitasking, **multiprogramming** is interleaved execution of multiple jobs (of same or different users) in a multi-user system, while **multitasking** is interleaved execution of multiple jobs (often referred to as *tasks* of same user) in a single-user system. Typically, computer systems used for such purposes are uni-processor systems (having only one CPU). Typically, computer systems used for such purposes are uni-processor systems (having only one CPU). For example, Windows NT and OS/2 operating systems use this technique.

### 3.5.4 Multithreading

**Threads** are a popular way to improve application performance. In traditional operating systems, the basic unit of CPU utilization is a process. Each process has its own program counter, its own register states, its own stack, its own address space (memory area allocated to it). On the other hand, in operating systems, with threads facility, the basic unit of CPU utilization is a thread. In these operating systems, a process consists of an address space and one or more threads of control [see Figure 3.10(b)]. Each thread of a process has its own program counter, its own register states, and its own stack. However, all the threads of a process share the same address space. Hence, they also share the same global variables. In addition, all threads of a process also share the same set of operating system resources, such as open files, signals, accounting information, etc. Due to sharing of address space, there is no protection between the threads of a process. However, this is not a problem because process (and hence all its threads) is always owned by a single user. Therefore, protection between multiple threads of a process is not necessary. Protection between multiple processes is needed because different processes may belong to different users.

Threads share a CPU in the same way as processes do. At a particular instance of time, a thread can be in anyone of several states - running, blocked, ready, or terminated. Due to these similarities, threads are often viewed as mini processes. In fact, in operating systems with threads facility, a process having a single thread corresponds to a process of a traditional operating system [see Figure 3.10(a)]. Threads are often referred to as **lightweight processes** and traditional processes are referred to as **heavyweight processes**.



**Fig 3.10 (a) Single-threaded and (b) Multithreaded processes.**

Operating systems that allow different parts of software program to run concurrently. Operating systems that would fall into this category are:

- UNIX
- Windows2000
- Windows95
- Windows98
- Windows NT 4.0

---

## 3.5 SOME POPULAR OPERATING SYSTEMS

---

### 3.5.1 Disk Operating System

What is DOS and what do DOS mean? DOS is an acronym for Disk Operating System. Though this doesn't say exactly what DOS does it tells you what it is. An operating system is a program that is run on a computer that allows the user to communicate with it in a way the user understands. Imagine if you had to talk to the computer on its level! No one would want to work with computers if that were the case.

DOS allows you to perform tasks on the computer by telling the computer what to do in terms of English like commands such as COPY and MOVE are infinitely better than 10001110101110111! Designed for microcomputers (your PC is a microcomputer), DOS makes it easier for you to work with the information on your disks whether they are floppy disks or hard disks. But before we look deeper into how to use DOS we need to have a little background on how DOS looks at information on the computer.

**Rebooting the Computer:** Sometimes it may happen that your system crashes down because of any reason. In This process is called **Warm Boot or Reset**. This will again get things going. But it is advisable to use it as a last alternative when all other efforts of resuming work fail. At times, Warm Boot also fails to restart the computer. This means the instructions that are given by the keyboard are no longer valid and are not interpreted by the system. In this case, switch off the power supply such a situation, hit < Ctrl + Alt + Del

> Keys together. This will restart your computer and wait for a few minutes. Then turn on the power supply and start working. Sometimes, due to unknown reasons the system is unable to boot from the hard disk, in such a situation, you are required to boot the system from the bootable floppy (floppy that contains DOS).

**Concept of Files and Directories:** **File** is a collection of related information. Any kind of text, data or program that is entered is stored in a file. Now, it is very essential to organize your files in an ordered manner. This makes file search easier. Otherwise, it can really be a difficult and time consuming job to search for a particular file out of the whole lot of files stored on the disk. An example of library can make the explanation of the concept clearer. As you must have already observed, the books in a library are put in big cabinets. Each cabinet is divided into many shelves *and sub* shelves. Each shelf or sub-shelf contains books on a particular subject. So, the required book on a particular subject can be found out very easily without wasting much time and effort.

On similar grounds, all the files that are related to each other are clubbed at one place. This is known as a **Directory Structure** or simply a **Directory**. A directory structure resembles an inverted tree. The main directory becomes the **Root directory**. The directories and files become the branches of this directory tree. Any number of files and directories can be added to it, thus, making the tree grow big downwards. Let us take an example. Suppose we wish to store two *kinds of* files on our disk: ACCOUNT and EXPENSE. Further, we wish to keep two more *kinds of* files (say CASHSALE and CREDSALE) under ACCOUNT sub-directory. DOS can very much help you in organizing your files through directory structure.

1. On the top of the directory structure, there is a Root directory. This directory is always present and is shown by \ (backslash) for referencing. Any file or directory that is created is always under the Root directory.
2. EXPENSE is the sub-directory of the Root directory.
3. ACCOUNT is the parent directory of the directories CASHSALE and CREDSALE. It can also be said that the CASHSALE and CREDSALE are the sub-directories of the ACCOUNT directory. Thus, a directory under a directory is called a sub-directory / (Root).
  - ACCOUNT EXPENSE
  - CASHSALE CREDSALE WEST.TXT
  - EAST.TXT

It can be clearly seen that the files relating to a particular subject can be put under a directory. For example, all the files relating to expenses can be put under EXPENSE subdirectory whereas all the files relating to cash sales can be stored under the subdirectory CASHSALE.

### Referencing Files

It's time to learn as to how to locate a file. The directory structure *has* two sub-directories under the Root directory. The sub-directory EXPENSE has two files under it. DOS allows you to go from one directory to another by following a certain path. In the beginning, the user is always resident in the Root directory. While traveling from one directory to another

certain rules have to be followed. A user cannot go directly from ACCOUNT subdirectory to EXPENSE sub-directory. To go from one sub-directory to another, you have to first go to its parent directory or the Root directory. Thus, for going from ACCOUNT sub-directory to EXPENSE sub-directory, you first have to go to Root directory. Similarly for going from the file EAST.TXT to WEST.TXT, you have gone to the EXPENSE sub-directory first. Thus, in other words, while moving from one directory to another, you have to its parent directory first. Now, in order to reach out to the file WEST.TXT the following path has to be followed:

C:\>Expense\West.txt

1 2 3 4 5

Here,

1. Is the drive name where the file is resident in;
2. Is the path which DOS takes to reach for a file;
3. Is the directory under the Root;
4. Is the primary name of the file that is to be accessed;
5. Is the extension name of the same file.

The \ (backslash) has to be used for tracing out the path. First backslash takes you to the Root directory. The subsequent backslashes separate the directories, sub-directories and the filename that are given in the whole path. File Naming Conventions There are certain rules that have to be followed while giving names to your files. A filename has two parts:

1. Primary Name
2. Extension (Secondary Name)

A dot (.) separates a primary name from an extension. Let see the two parts of the file named DRAGON.TXT. A primary name cannot have more than eight characters and similarly an extension can contain only up to three characters. Filename having only the primary name and no extension is absolutely valid because it is absolutely optional to give an extension to a filename. An extension is generally given by language or software used by the file. For example, if you entering BASIC and PASCAL programs, their filenames would have extension BAS and PAS respectively. A filename can contain the following characters:

1. An Alphabet (A-Z) or (a-z)
  2. A number (0-9)
  3. Special characters such as etc.
- Except \*, ?, full stop (.) and space

It is a good practice to give meaningful names to your files. However, no two files can have exactly the same name on disk. Thus, a name given to a file on a disk has to be unique. A look at a few valid and invalid filenames:

VALID	INVALID
MYHUNT	MY BOOK.DOC
DRAGON.TXT	B.R.ARORA
UPHILL.UP	S?JAIN.BAS
VIJAYA	EXCELBOOKS
EMPLOYEE.EMP	ANURAG*.*
157.IN	VICKY.MEHTA

The rules for naming a directory are the same as that of naming files.

### **Dos Commands:**

DOS offers a variety of commands to perform various functions. With the help of DOS commands, you can display the list of files and directories that are present on the disk, create new files and directories; remove unwanted files and directories and much more. DOS commands can be entered either in uppercase or lowercase letters. The format of a DOS command is called *syntax*. All DOS commands begin with command name. When DOS carries out the instructions given by you, is called the execution of DOS command.

All DOS commands can be classified into two categories: Internal Commands and External Commands.

### **Internal Commands**

The commands which are a part of the main files of DOS COMMAND.COM and two hidden files) are known as Internal Commands. They are loaded in the RAM as soon as the computer is switched on. The important internal commands are DIR, COPY, DEL, REN, MD, CD, RD, TYPE, COPY CON, DATE, TIME, CLS, ECHO, PROMPT and PATH.

### **External Commands**

External commands are those commands, which are stored disks as separate program files. These files have the same primary name as the command name. The extension of these files is either COM or EXE. So, at the time of execution of these commands, the corresponding program file should be present in the DOS sub-directory of the hard disk and DOS sub-directory should also be in the path search. The commonly used external commands are- FORMAT, DISKCOPY, CHKDSK, XCOPY and LABEL.

Let us discuss some of the important DOS commands in detail.

- **CD or CHDIR**

### **To change the directory path.**

#### **Syntax**

CHDIR [drive:][path]

or

CD [drive:][path]

Switches Used

**cd\** - Goes to the highest level the root of the drive.

**cd..** - Goes back one directory. For example if you are within

C:\WINDOWS\COMMAND> directory this would take to C:\WINDOWS>

**CD windows** - If present would take you into the Windows directory. Windows can be substituted with any other name. Example Suppose you are under the EXPENSE sub-directory and you want to access the files or directories in the ACCOUNT subdirectory. This would involve the changing of directory from EXPENSE to ACCOUNT. This will make the ACCOUNT directory active. The task of changing directories can be accomplished with the help of CD command. Look at the following example:

```
C:\>CD ACCOUNT <Enter>
```

The above command will take you to the sub-directory ACCOUNT as shown by following prompt:

```
C:\ACCOUNT>
```

If you want to go to the sub-directory CASHSALE from the sub-directory EXPENSE, issue the following command:

```
C:\>CD ACCOUNT\CASHSALE <Enter>
```

After the above command, the following prompt C:\ACCOUNT\CASHSALE>

The command for going to the root directory from prompt is:

```
C:\ACCOUNT\CASHSALE>CD\ <Enter>
```

But, the command for going to the parent or previous (whether it is root or subdirectory) is:

```
C:\ACCOUNT\CASHSALE>CD.. <Enter>
```

If you are in the sub-directory CASHSALE, the command will take you to ACCOUNT sub-directory below:

```
C:\ACCOUNT>
```

Suppose you are under the EXPENSE sub-directory want to access the files or directories in the ACCOUNT subdirectory. This would involve the changing of directory.

EXPENSE to ACCOUNT. This will make the directory active. The task of changing directories accomplished with the help of CD command. Look following example:

```
C:\>CD ACCOUNT <Enter>
```

where CD stands for Change Directory

The above command will take you to the sub-directory ACCOUNT as shown by following prompt:

```
C:\ACCOUNT>-
```

If you want to go to the sub-directory CASHSALE from the sub-directory EXPENSE, issue the following command:

```
C:\>CD ACCOUNT\CASHSALE <Enter>
```

After the above command, the following prompt

C:\ACCOUNT\CASHSALE>\_

The command for going to the root directory from prompt is:

C:\ACCOUNT\CASHSALE>CD\ <Enter>

But, the command for going to the parent or previous

(whether it is root or subdirectory) is: C:\ACCOUNT\CASHSALE>CD.. <Enter>

If you are in the sub-directory CASHSALE, the command will take you to ACCOUNT sub-directory below:

C:\ACCOUNT>-

The command for displaying the name of the currently directory is:

C:\>CD <Enter>

- **DIR**

Displays a list of files and subdirectories in a directory.

### Syntax

DIR [drive:][path][filename] [/P] [/W] [/A[:attributes]] [/

O[:sort order]] [/S] [/B] [/L] [/V]

### Switches Used

<b>/P</b>	Pauses after each screenful of information.
<b>/W</b>	Uses wide list format.
<b>/A</b>	attributes: D Directories R Read-only files H Hidden files A Files ready for archiving S System files - Prefix meaning not
<b>/O</b>	List by files in sorted order, sortorder: N By name (alphabetic) S By size (smallest first) E By extension (alphabetic) D By date & time (earliest first) G Group directories first - Prefix to reverse order A By Last Access Date (earliest first)
<b>/S</b>	Displays files in specified directory and all subdirectories.
<b>/B</b>	Uses bare format (no heading information or summary).
<b>/L</b>	Uses lowercase.
<b>/V</b>	Verbose mode.

Example

**dir** = Lists all files and directories in the directory that you are currently in.

**dir /ad** = List only the directories in the current directory.

**dir /s** = Lists the files in the directory that you are in and all sub directories after that directory, if you are at root "C:\>" and type this command this will list to you every file and directory that is on the computer.

**dir /p** = If the directory has a lot of files and you cannot read all the files you can use this command and it will display all files one page at a time.

**dir /w** = If you don't need the info on the date / time and other information on the files you can use this command to list just the files and directories going horizontal taking as little as space needed.

**dir /s /w /p** = This would list all the files and directories in the current directory and the sub directories after that in wide format one page at a time.

- **COPY CON**

This command is used to create a file.

**Syntax**

Copy con <filename>

Once you have entered the above command this will create the file by the name specified. Once you have typed all the lines you wish to be in the file press and hold CTRL + Z. This should enter ^Z, once on the screen press the enter and one file should be copied.

Example

C:\>copy con file1.txt

- **MD**

This command is used to make a directory.

**Syntax**

MD <directoryname>

Example

C:\>md dir1

This will create a directory named dir1 under root.

- **COPY**

Copies one or more files to another location.

**Syntax**

COPY Source Destination

Example

**copy \*.\* a:** = This would copy all files in the directory currently in to the floppy disk in drive a:

**copy file1.txt c:\dir1\file2.txt** = This would copy file1.txt to a directory dir1 under root with a different name file2.txt.



**copy myfile1.txt+myfile2.txt** = This command would copy the contents in myfile2.txt and combine it with the contents in myfile1.txt

- **DEL**

Deletes one or more files.

**Syntax**

DEL [drive:][path]filename

Examples

**del test.tmp** = Deletes the test.tmp in the directory that you currently are in, if the file exists.

**del c:\windows\test.tmp** = Delete the c:\windows\test.tmp in the windows directory if it exists.

**del c:\windows\temp\\*.\*** (\* is for wild character(s)) \*.\* indicates that you would like to delete all files in the c:\windows\temp directory.

**del c:\windows\temp\?est.tmp** (? is a single wild character for one letter) This command would delete any file ending with est.tmp such as pest.tmp or zest.tmp

- **EDIT**

Edit allows a user to view, create and or modify their computer files. The disadvantage of copy con is that you cannot modify a file. So we use edit.

**Syntax**

EDIT <filename>

Example

Using edit you can also create files, for example if you wanted to create a file called myfile.txt you would type:

**edit myfile.txt** <press enter>

This would bring up a blank edit screen, as long as the file is saved upon exit this will create the file myfile.txt.

- **MOVE**

Allows you to move files or directories from one folder to another or from one drive to another.

**Syntax**

MOVE source destination

Example

C:\>move file.txt c:\dir1\file1.txt

This would move a file named file1.txt to directory dir1 with the same name.

- **REN OR RENAME**

Used to rename files and directories from the original name to a new name.

**Syntax**

Ren oldfilename newfilename

Example

C:\>ren file1.txt file2.txt

This will change the name of file1.txt to file2.txt.

- **CLS**

cls is a command that allows a user to clear the complete contents of the screen and leave only a prompt.

**Syntax**

cls

- **Format**

Format is used to erase all of the information off of a computer diskette or fixed drive.

**Syntax**

Format <drive>

Example

C:\>Format a:

This will erase all the contents of the floppy disk inside floppy drive.

### **3.5.2 UNIX**

UNIX was developed by some of the members of the Multics team at the bell labs starting in the late 1960's by many of the same people who help created the C programming language. The UNIX today however is the not just the work of a couple of programmers. Many other organizations, institutes and various other individuals contributed significant additions to the system we now know to day.

UNIX is primarily a command line oriented operating system you can get additional applications such as X-Window which allows you to have a graphic oriented operating system similar to Windows 3.x / Windows 95 / Windows 98. However while this is available UNIX is still primarily used from the command line. Because the UNIX operating system is an open operating system you will discover that there are various shells. A shell is a large add-on / modification of the UNIX operating system, to determine the shell you can type echo \$shell at the UNIX prompt. When typing this you will receive a response such as / bin/csh which in this case indicates that the UNIX you are logged into is a C shell. Another popular shell is the Borne shell which is / bin/ sh and Korn shell that the UNIX you are logged into is a C shell. Another popular shell is the Borne shell which is / bin/sh and Korn shell.

### **3.5.3 Linux**

Linux is an open- source operating system enhanced and backed by thousands of programmers worldwide. It is a multi tasking, multiprocessing operating system designed originally for use on personal computers. The name "Linux" is derived from its inventor Linus Torvalds. Torvalds was a student at the University of Helsinki, Finland in early 1990s when he wrote the first version of an UNIX- like kernel as a toy project. He later posted the code on the Internet and asked programmers across the world to help him build it into a working system. The result was Linux. Torvalds holds the copyright but permits free distribution of source code. That is, he oversees development of kernel and owns its trademark. When someone submits a change or a feature, Torvalds and his core team of kernel developers review the merit of adding it to kernel source code.

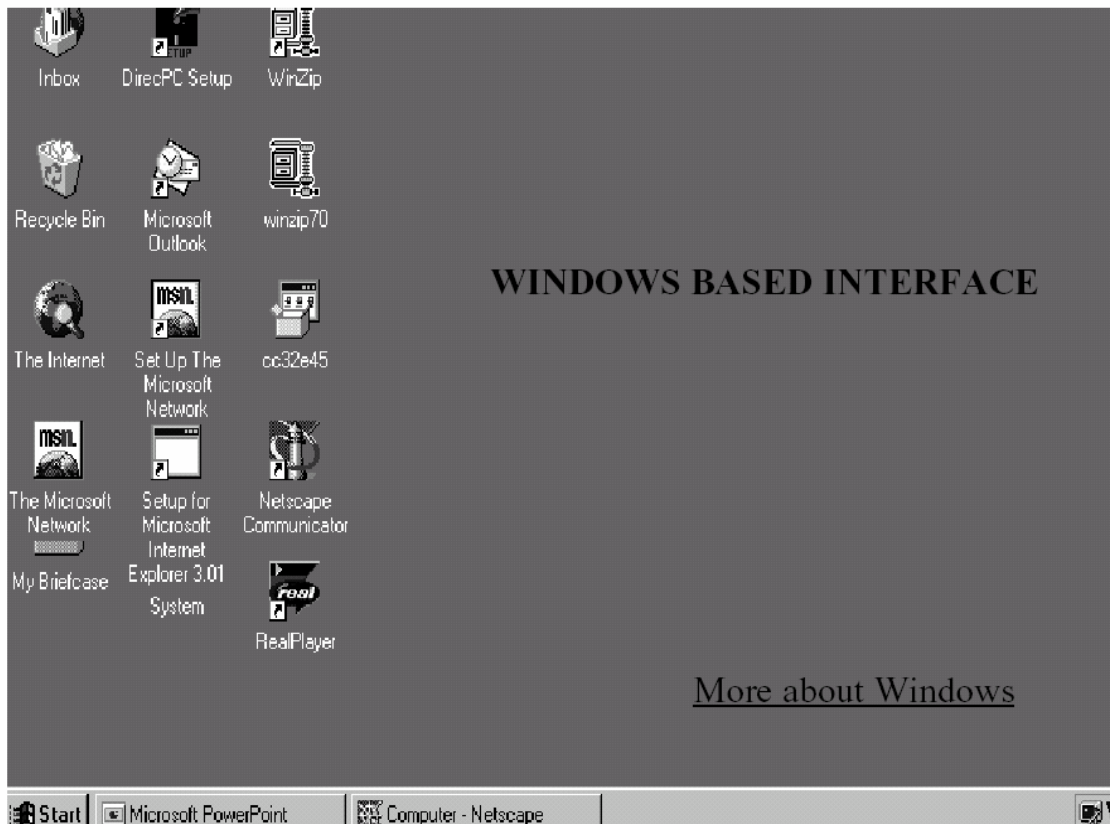
### 3.5.4 Microsoft Windows

It is a series of software operating systems and graphical user interfaces produced by Microsoft. It was developed by Microsoft to overcome the limitations of its own MS-DOS operating system. Microsoft first introduced an operating environment named **Windows** in November 1985 as an add-on to MS-DOS in response to the growing interest in graphical user interfaces (GUIs). Microsoft Windows came to dominate the world's personal computer market, overtaking Mac OS, which had been introduced previously. The most recent client version of Windows is Windows Vista; the most recent server version is Windows Server 2008. Vista's successor, Windows 7 (currently a release candidate), It is a family of operating systems for personal computers. Windows dominates the personal computer world, running, by some estimates, on 90% of all personal computers. The remaining 10% are mostly Macintosh computers. Like the Macintosh operating environment, Windows provides a graphical user interface (GUI), virtual memory management, multitasking, and support for many peripheral devices. Main Features of Microsoft Windows are as follows:

Its native interface is a GUI. Hence, for a new user it is easier to learn and use a computer system.

A Microsoft window was designed to be not just an operating system but also a complete operating environment. That is, all its programs conform to a standard way of working. For example, a Microsoft Windows word processor works similarly the way a Microsoft windows spreadsheet (or any other type of Windows program) works. This means that experience gained by learning one Windows program is useful while using any other Microsoft Windows program.

It is single- user, multitasking operating system. That is, a user may run more than one program at a time. For example, while editing a file in foreground, a sorting job can be run in background. Monitor's screen can be portioned into multiple windows and progress of different programs can be viewed on different windows.



**Fig 3.11 Microsoft Windows**

### **3.5.5 Microsoft Windows NT**

Windows NT is a family of operating systems produced by Microsoft, the first version of which was released in July 1993. It is an operating system developed by Microsoft for high-performance processors and networked systems. In 1993, when it was first released, Microsoft Windows NT was Microsoft's platform of choice for high-end systems. The current version, 4.0, is intended for use as a network server (NT Server) or a workstation (NT Workstation). Windows NT did not replace Windows 95. While Windows NT contains the Windows 95 interface, it is entirely 32-bit.

#### **Technical features of Windows NT**

- Interface
  - Contains the Windows 95 interface and features like the Start button, Taskbar, Explorer, Network Neighborhood, and Briefcase
- Networking
  - NetWare client and login script support
  - Enhanced meta-file (EMF) spooling for improved network printing speed

- Support for 15 network protocols
  - Peer-to-peer and FTP server capabilities
  - Client software for both telnet and FTP services
- Messaging Capabilities
  - Windows Messaging Subsystem
  - Microsoft Exchange and Microsoft Schedule+ included
  - WINCHAT, NET MESSAGE, or Net DDET
- Remote Management
  - Remote management utilities such as Event Viewer, Performance Monitor, Service Controller, and Registry Editor
  - Dial-out capability to remote servers
  - Remote dial-in capability
- Remote Access Services (RAS)
  - Internet access to Windows NT Server and DNS names for resource connections
  - Dial-out capability to remote servers, including Internet services
  - Remote dial-in ability to any workstation
  - Full network functionality over remote links using NetBEUI, IPX/SPX, and TCP/IP protocols
  - Dial-in capability to remote NetWare servers using RAS
  - Multi-link capability for channel aggregation of multiple modem connections
- Security
  - Per-file and per-directory security with the NT file system (NTFS)
  - Local desktop security; user ID and password required for access
  - Account lockout capabilities to prevent unlimited login attempts
  - Network security with single network login using challenge/response protocol
- Application Support
  - Native support for all applications based on Windows 95, Win32, 16-bit Windows, 16-bit MS-DOS, 16-bit OS/2, and POSIX 1003.1
  - Separate memory spaces for 16-bit applications (multiple virtual MS-DOS machines)
  - Preemptive multitasking for 16-bit and 32-bit applications
  - 486 emulator allows 386-enhanced 16-bit applications to run on RISC machines
  - OLE support between all 16-bit and 32-bit Windows based applications
  - Asynchronous I/O queue for improved responsiveness
  - Structured exception handling for easy troubleshooting
- Graphics and Multimedia
  - Significant performance gains for graphic intensive applications
  - OpenGL APIs for high-performance three-dimensional color graphics
  - 16-bit and 32-bit API support for the Video for Windows 1.1 feature set
- Utilities
  - File compression with NTFS
  - User Manager for configuration and security

- Disk Administrator for graphical disk configuration
- Diagnostics utility that details basic system information
- Performance Monitor for local and remote troubleshooting
- Tape backup
- Event Viewer and logging utility for local and remote troubleshooting
- Long filename support on FAT and NTFS
- Configuration details managed in registry database
- Hardware Support
  - Multiple hardware configuration; you can specify a hardware profile at start time, including services, devices, and video resolutions
  - Intel, Alpha AXP, MIPS, and PowerPC platforms
  - Symmetric multiprocessing (SMP) support

---

### 3.6 REVIEW QUESTIONS

---

1. Discuss about the role of System Software?
2. Comment on the role of Operating System as a System Software.
3. What components are involved in determining the performance of computer system?
4. What factors affect the performance of computer system?
5. Explain the role of classifying criteria for the Operating Systems.
6. Explain the working of Single User Operating Systems.
7. Explain the working of Multi User Operating Systems.
8. Explain the Concept of Multi Tasking
9. List some of the Technical features of Microsoft Windows NT.

---

## BUSINESS DATA PROCESSING

---

### Structure

- 4.1 Data Processing
  - 4.1.1 Types of Data Processing
- 4.2 File Management System
  - 4.2.1 File Types
  - 4.2.2 File Organizations
  - 4.2.3 File Utilities
- 4.3 Database Management System
  - 4.3.1 Data Base
  - 4.3.2 Purpose of Database System
  - 4.3.3 Database Management Systems (DBMS)
  - 4.3.4 Database Models
    - 4.3.4.1 Hierarchical Database
    - 4.3.4.2 Network Model
    - 4.3.4.3 Relational Model
    - 4.3.4.4 Object-Oriented Model
  - 4.3.5 Main Components of a DBMS
    - 4.3.5.1 Data Definition Language (DDL)
    - 4.3.5.2 Data Manipulation Language (DML)
  - 4.3.6 Creating and Using a Database
    - 4.3.6.1 Creating a Database
    - 4.3.6.2 Viewing, Modifying, Deleting and Adding Records
    - 4.3.6.3 Searching For Desired Information
- 4.4 Review Questions

---

## 4.1 DATA PROCESSING

---

**Computer data processing** is any computing process that converts data into information or knowledge. The processing is usually assumed to be automated and running on a computer. Because data's are most useful when well-presented and actually *informative*, data-processing systems are often referred to as information systems to emphasize their practicality. Nevertheless, the terms are roughly synonymous, performing similar conversions; data-processing systems typically manipulate raw data into information, and likewise information systems typically take raw data as input to produce information as output. Data can be seen as a raw material, which is later converted to information. e.g. For a company that wants to produce Bornvita, such company will need to make use of cocoa, which means that cocoa is the raw material for the production of Bornvita, likewise data is

the raw material for information. Data has to pass through a specific process before it could be changed to information, and it is called a process.



**Fig 4.1 Data Processing Chart**

**Data** is a collection of facts - unorganized, but able to be organized into useful information. A collection of sales orders, employee time sheets, and class attendance cards are a few examples. Data can be manipulated to produce output, such as bills, employee salary slips, and student attendance reports. This output, called information, is an organized fact that helps people to make decisions. Hence, **information** is data arranged in an order and form that is useful to people who receive it.

**Processing**, in general terms, is a series of actions or operations that converts some input into useful output. In data processing, input is data, and useful output is information. Hence, **data processing** is a series of actions or operations that converts data into information. It consists of three sub-activities - capturing input data, manipulating it, and producing output information. A **data processing system** includes resources such as people, procedures, and devices used to process input data for producing desirable output.

### **4.1.1 Types of Data Processing**

Basically there are two types of data processing

**1. Batch Processing:** With batch processing, changes and queries to file are stored for a period of time, and then a processing run is made periodically to update the file and to produce responses to the queries. Batch runs can be made on a scheduled basis, such as daily, weekly, or-monthly, or they can be made on an as required basis.

Examples of batch processing include generation of mark-sheets of students. Mark-sheets and results of school examinations are given to students only at the end of an academic year. So, a programmer can develop a program for this and the results can be printed at the required time.

**2. Online or immediate processing:** In immediate processing, transactions are processed to update the file immediately or shortly after a real-world event occurs. Information processing applications that use immediate processing are often called real time application. A real time application can immediately capture data about ongoing events or



processes and provide the information necessary to manage them. An airline-reservation system is an example of a real time application.

Real time systems must have real time files that are updated immediately after the event occurs. Consequently, at any point in time, the data in real time files should accurately reflect the status of the real world variables they represent. For example, when a customer reserves a seat on an airline flight, the reservations agent keys in that fact and the inventory of non reserved seats on the flight is immediately changed to reflect one less available seat. Immediate processing requires direct-access files, since immediate processing with sequential files would be impractical because of the time required to search for individual records. Batch processing; on the other hand, can occur with either sequential or direct access files.

Examples of immediate processing or interactive processing include air traffic and banking. In air traffic, as the flying speed increases control decisions have to be taken. Hence, data is raw material of information, and just as a manufacturing process transforms raw materials into more quickly. Therefore, interactive processing is the only suitable system for air traffic control. In banking, where a customer is at the counter and the time to update his bank account will naturally take more time if done by human, so a computer can give full updated details of the customer's account within seconds. For this, a customer is given the wanted information mostly by interactive processing.

---

## 4.2 FILE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

---

In file-oriented approach of organizing data, a set of programs is provided to facilitate users to organize, create, delete, update, and manipulate their files. All these programs together form a **File Management System (FMS)**. Features found commonly in file management systems are described below.

### 4.2.1 File Types

Data files are categorized according to the way an application uses them. A file management system typically supports following types of files:

- 1. Transaction File:** A transaction file stores input data until it can be processed. For example, in a payroll application for generating monthly pay slips of employees, current month's transaction file contains this month's data of each employee, such as details of hours worked, normal and overtime hours, and if piecework is involved, quantity of goods made.
- 2. Master File:** A master file contains all current data relevant to an application. For example, in payroll application mentioned above, master file contains permanent details of each employee (name, address, employee-code, pay-rate, income-tax-rate, etc.), and also current gross-pay-to-date total and tax-paid-to-date total. When payroll program is processed, it consolidates both master and current month's transaction files to generate this month's pay-slips, and updates master file to make it ready for following month's processing.

3. **Output File:** Some applications use multiple programs for data processing. In such applications, output produced by one program is fed often as input to another program. Hence, output produced by former program is stored in a file known as output file, which is used later by the latter' program.
4. **Report File:** A report file holds a copy of a report generated by a data processing application in computer-accessible form. A report file can be printed to obtain hard copy of the report whenever desired. It is advantageous to keep report files instead of paper documents because files are easier to store and carry.
5. **Backup File:** A backup file is a copy of a file created as a safety precaution against loss of data due to corruption or inadvertent deletion of original file. Regular creation of backup files is extremely important.

#### 4.2.2 File Organizations

File organization deals with physical organization of records of a file for convenience of their storage and retrieval. System designers choose to organize, access, and process records of various files in different ways, depending on application type and users' needs. Three file organizations used commonly in business data processing applications are sequential, direct/random, and indexed sequential.

Selection of a particular file organization depends on application type. The best file organization for an application is one that meets the application's data access and processing requirements in the most effective and economical manner. Hence, an application designer must evaluate the strengths and weaknesses of each file organization, before making a choice of file organization type for the application

File organization requires use of some key field in every record in a file. The key field value must be unique for each record of the file because duplications would cause serious problems. In payroll example, employee-code field may be used as the key field.

#### 4.2.3 File Utilities

File utilities are routines to perform generalized operations on data files. Normally, they are quite general in nature in the sense that they can deal with different data formats and different types of storage medium. Operations performed by some commonly used file utilities are described below.

**Sorting:** A file sorting utility is used to arrange records of a file in some defined sequence. Values of certain specified fields (known as *keys*) in each record determine this sequence. The simplest case of sorting is ordering of records in a file on a single key. For example, records of employee file in Figure 4.2 are sequenced by ascending order of employee-code. A more complex sorting would be ordering of records in a file on two or more keys. For example, records of employee file in Figure 4.3 are sequenced by ascending order of employee-code within department-code. This means that all records for the lowest department-code are listed first for each employee belonging to that department in ascending sequence of employee-code, then all records for next department-code, and so on. Out of these two keys used in this sorting example, department-code is called primary key, and employee-code is called secondary key, because order of sorting is employee-code

within department-code.

A sorting utility enables users to specify their sequencing requirements for a file by means of input parameters. Input parameters such as size and number of keys, and type of ordering (ascending, descending) vary from one sorting utility to another. These parameters decide the extent and sophistication of sorting utilities.

Sorting utility reads un-sequenced records of an input file, and by means of various copying techniques, ultimately produces an output file containing records of the input file ordered in desired sequence.

Employee Code	Department Code	Other fields (Name, Address, Qualification, Basic Salary, etc)
101	2	-----
123	3	-----
124	1	-----
176	2	-----
178	1	-----
202	3	-----
213	1	-----

**Fig 4.2 Sorting on one key in ascending employee- code sequence**

Employee Code	Department Code	Other fields (Name, Address, Qualification, Basic Salary, etc)
124	1	-----
178	1	-----
213	1	-----
101	2	-----
176	2	-----
123	3	-----
202	3	-----

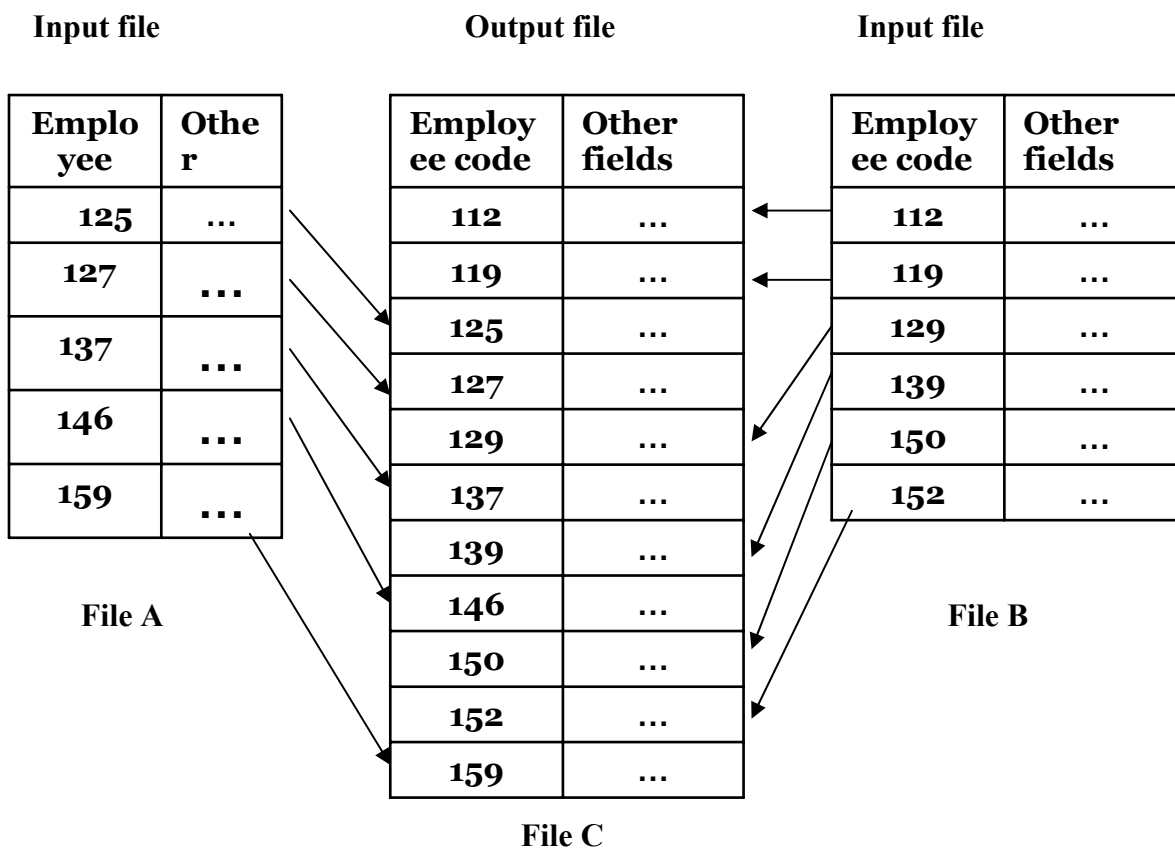
**Fig 4.3 Sorting on two keys: Ascending employee - code (secondary key) within ascending department - code (primary key)**

**Searching:** A file searching utility is used to find a particular record in a file. Searching is carried out by matching the values of certain specified fields (known as *keys*) in each record with desired values. For example, in employee file of Figure 4.2, a user can specify value 202 for employee-code field to search corresponding employee's record.

Efficiency of a search algorithm depends on file organization. For example, to search a particular records sequential file, records in the file are scanned sequentially, beginning with the first record, and specified key field value is compared one-by-one with the key field value of each record. Search process terminates when a record with matching key is found. On the other hand, direct or index sequential file organizations enable immediate

access to desired record with the help of either a hashing algorithm (in case of direct file organization) or an index file (in case of index sequential file organization). Users need to specify a file and key field value as input parameters to a search utility, which searches through the file and produces the desired record (s). Normally, the time required for searching a particular record from a direct or index sequential file is much less, than the time required to search it from a sequential file.

**Merging:** A file merging utility is used to combine records of two or more ordered (sorted) files into a single ordered file. Records of each of the input files must be sorted in same order, although their record layout need not be identical. A merging utility places records from each of the input files in their correct relative order, producing an output fill having all records in same order as input files. Figure 4.4 illustrates merging of two input files A and B to produce an output file C.



**Fig 4.4 Merging of files A and B to produce file C**

**Copying:** A file copying utility is used to produce a copy of a file either from one unit of a storage device to another similar unit (such as from one tape reel or floppy disk to another), or from one storage medium to another (such as from tape to hard disk, or from CD-ROM to hard disk).

File copying utilities are used often to take back-up copies of files. For example, a file may be copied from a hard disk to a tape or floppy for back-up purpose. File copying utilities

are also known as **peripheral interchange programs (PIP)** since they are used often to copy a file from one peripheral device to another.

**Printing:** A file printing utility is used to print a file on a printer to produce hard copy of its contents. Printing utilities often provide facility to print file contents in different formats. They often provide some selection and editing facilities to enable printing of parts of files (such as specified number of records and only certain fields of records). Special printing facilities are often provided to print files that contain program instructions rather than data.

**Maintenance:** A file maintenance utility is used to copy data from one or more files to a new file selectively, or to update a file's contents selectively. For example, a file maintenance utility may provide features to combine data from more than one file into a single file, delete records in a file identified by record key values or record count, and select specific fields of records to be copied from an existing file to a new file.

---

## 4.3 DATABASE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

---

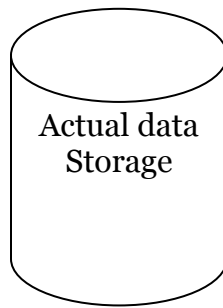
### 4.3.1 Data Base

A **database** can be defined in various ways, for example

- A database is a collection of structured data. The structure of the data is independent of any particular application.
- A database is a file of data; structured in such a way that it may serve a number of applications without its structure being dictated by any one of those applications, the concept being that programs are written round the database rather than files being structured to meet the needs of a particular programs

The centre of any information system is its database, which is a collection of the data resources of an organization designed to meet the requirements of the company for processing and retrieving information by decision makers. One important use of database is to target more precisely marketing efforts. In the USA the later trend in management information systems is the executive information system which is used by senior managers.

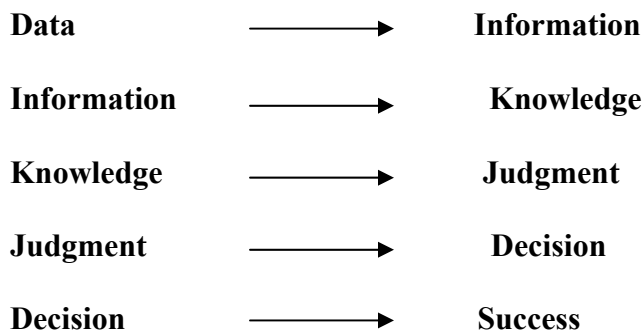
A database can be termed as a repository of data. A collection of actual data which constitutes the information regarding an organization is stored in a database. For example, there are 1000 students in a college & we have to store their personal details, marks details etc., these details will be recorded in a database.



A collection of programs that enables you to store, modify, and extract information from a database is known as **Data Base Management System (DBMS)**. The primary goal of a DBMS is to provide a way to store & retrieve database information that is both convenient & efficient.

Database systems are designed to manage large bodies of information. Management of data involves both defining structures for storage of information & providing way for manipulation of data. In addition, the database system must ensure safety of data.

Good data management is an essential prerequisite to corporate success.



Provided that data is:

- **Complete;**
- **Accurate;**
- **Timely; and**
- **Easily available**

### 4.3.2 Purpose of Database system

A file system is one in which we keep the information in operating system files. Before the evolution of DBMS, organizations used to store information in file systems. A typical file processing system is supported by a conventional operating system. The system stores permanent records in various files & it need application program to extract records, or to add or delete records.

We will compare both systems with the help of an example.

There is a saving bank enterprise that keeps information about all customers & saving accounts. Following manipulations has to be done with the system

- A program to debit or credit an account
- A program to add a new account.
- A program to find balance of an account.
- A program to generate monthly statements.

As the need arises new applications can be added at a particular point of time as checking accounts can be added in a saving account. Using file system for storing data has got following disadvantages:-

### **1. Data Redundancy & Inconsistency:-**

Different programmer's works on a single project, so various files are created by different programmers at some interval of time. So various files are created in different formats & different programs are written in different programming language.

Same information is repeated. For ex name & address may appear in saving account file as well as in checking account. This redundancy results in higher storage space & access cost. It also leads to data inconsistency which means that if we change some record in one place the change will not be reflected in all the places. For ex. a changed customer address may be reflected in saving record but not any where else.

### **2. Difficulty in accessing data:-**

Accessing data from a list is also a difficulty in file system. Suppose we want to see the records of all customers who has a balance less than \$10,000, we can either check the list & find the names manually or write an application program .If we write an application program & at some later time, we need to see the records of customer who have a balance of less than \$20,000, then again a new program has to be written.

It means that file processing system do not allow data to be accessed in a convenient manner.

### **3. Data Isolation:-**

As the data is stored in various files, & various files may be stored in different format, writing application program to retrieve the data is difficult.

### **4. Integrity Problems**

Sometimes, we need that data stored should satisfy certain constraints as in a bank a minimum deposit should be of \$100. Developers enforce these constraints by writing appropriate programs but if later on some new constraint has to be added then it is difficult to change the programs to enforce them.

## 5. Atomicity Problems

Any mechanical or electrical device is subject to failure, and so is the computer system. In this case we have to ensure that data should be restored to a consistent state. For example an amount of \$50 has to be transferred from Account A to Account B. Let the amount has been debited from account A but have not been credited to Account B and in the mean time, some failure occurred. So, it will lead to an inconsistent state.

So, we have to adopt a mechanism which ensures that either full transaction should be executed or no transaction should be executed i.e. the fund transfer should be atomic.

## 6. Concurrent access Problems

Many systems allow multiple users to update the data simultaneously. It can also lead the data in an inconsistent state. Suppose a bank account contains a balance of \$ 500 & two customers want to withdraw \$100 & \$50 simultaneously. Both the transaction reads the old balance & withdraw from that old balance which will result in \$450 & \$400 which is incorrect.

## 7. Security Problems

All the user of database should not be able to access all the data. For example a payroll Personnel needs to access only that part of data which has information about various employees & are not needed to access information about customer accounts.

**Table 4.1 Comparison of File Management Systems with Database Systems**

<b>File Management</b> Examples:-C++, VB or COBOL program	<b>Database Management</b> Examples:- Postgres, Oracle
Small systems Often PC based Relatively cheap Few 'files' Files are files Simple structure Little preliminary design Integrity left to application programmer No security Simple, primitive backup/recovery Often single user	Large systems Mini-Mainframe Relatively Expensive Many 'files' Files not necessarily files Complex structure Vast preliminary design Rigorous inbuilt integrity checking Rigorous security Complex & sophisticated backup/recovery Multiple users

Files tend to contain duplication. Therefore they are susceptible to a loss of INTEGRITY if all files are not updated at the same time. Programs are bound to a file. If a files structure is modified then all programs that access it need to be modified. Thus alterations to file structures are difficult and expensive.



Data base systems originated in the late 1950s and early 1960s largely by research and development of .IBM Corporation. Most developments were responses to needs of business, military, government and educational institutions which are complex organizations with complex data and information needs.

### 4.3.3 Database Management Systems (DBMS)

This is the interface between the users (application programmers) and the database (the data). A database is a collection of data that represents important objects in a user's business. A database management system (DBMS) is a program that allows users to define, manipulate, and process the data in a database in order to produce meaningful information.

DBMS is collection of programs that enables you to store, modify, and extract important information from a database. There are many different types of DBMS, ranging from small systems that run on personal computers to huge systems that run on mainframes.

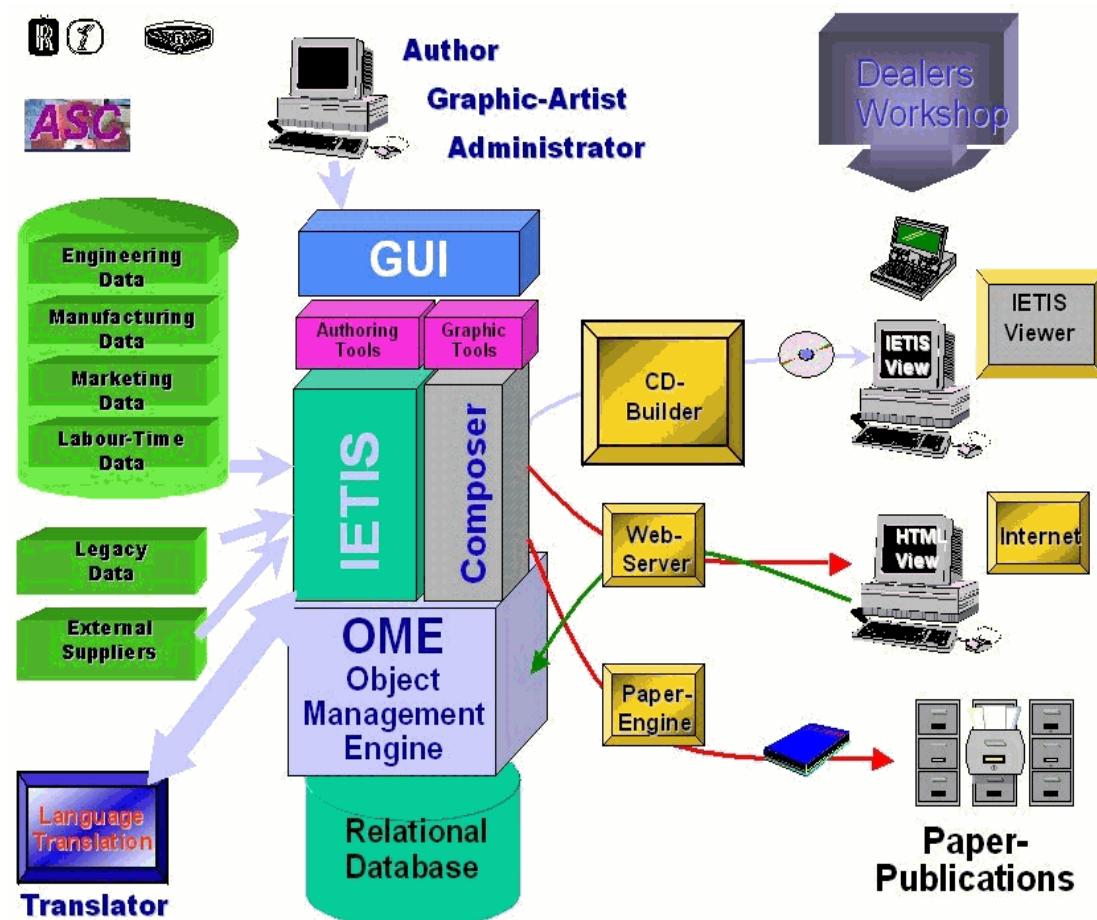


Fig 4.5 Data Base Management System

Following are the examples of DBMS:

- Computerized library systems
- Automated teller machines
- Flight reservation systems
- Computerized parts inventory systems

A database contains a no. of files & certain programs to access & modify these files. But the actual data is not shown to the user; the system hides actual details of how data is stored & maintained.

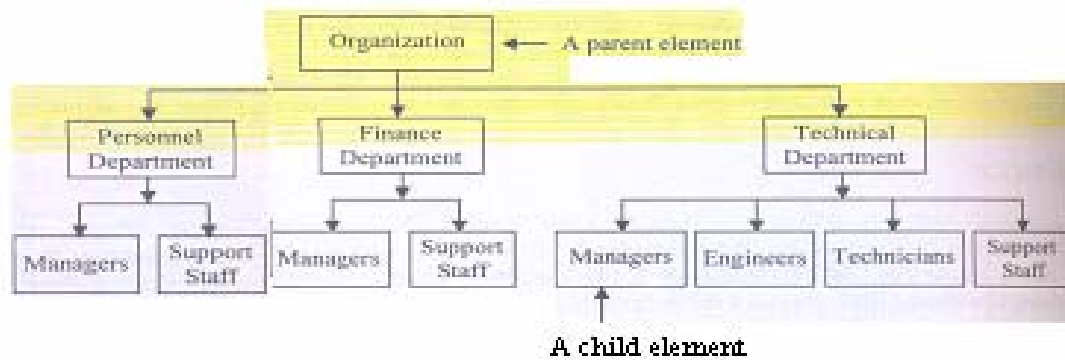
#### 4.3.4 Database Models

We saw that multiple related files are integrated together to form a database. A **database model** defines the manner in which various files of a database are linked together. Four commonly used database models are hierarchical, network, relational, and object-oriented. Also known as **database structures** or **database structuring techniques**, they are briefly described below.

##### 4.3.4.1 Hierarchical Databases

The **hierarchical data model** organizes data in a tree structure. There is a hierarchy of parent and child data segments. This structure implies that a record can have repeating information, generally in the child data segments. Data are in a series of records, which have a set of field values attached to it. It collects all the instances of a specific record together as a record type. These record types are the equivalent of tables in the relational model, and with the individual records being the equivalent of rows. To create links between these record types, the hierarchical model uses Parent Child Relationships. These are a 1: N mapping between record types. This is done by using trees, like set theory used in the relational model, "borrowed" from mathematics. For example, an organization might store information about an employee, such as name, employee number, department, salary. The organization might also store information about an employee's children, such as name and date of birth. The employee and children data forms a hierarchy, where the employee data represents the parent segment and the children data represents the child segment. If an employee has three children, then there would be three child segments associated with one employee segment. In a hierarchical database the parent-child relationship is one to many. This restricts a child segment to having only one parent segment. Hierarchical DBMSs were popular from the late 1960s, with the introduction of IBM's Information Management System (IMS) DBMS, through the 1970s.

For example, in Figure 4.6 employees are categorized by their department, and within a department, they are categorized by their job function, such as managers, engineers, technicians, and support staff. If personnel department faces shortage of support staff on a day, producing a list of all support staff, to take a decision to use some support staff from other departments for this department, would not be directly possible. Instead, support staff assigned to each department would have to be determined department-by-department.



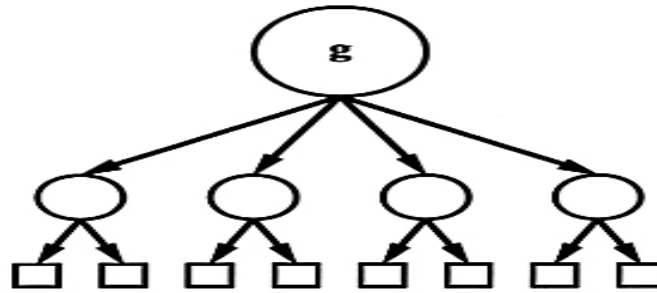
**Fig.4.6. An example of a hierarchical database.**

#### 4.3.4.2 Network Model

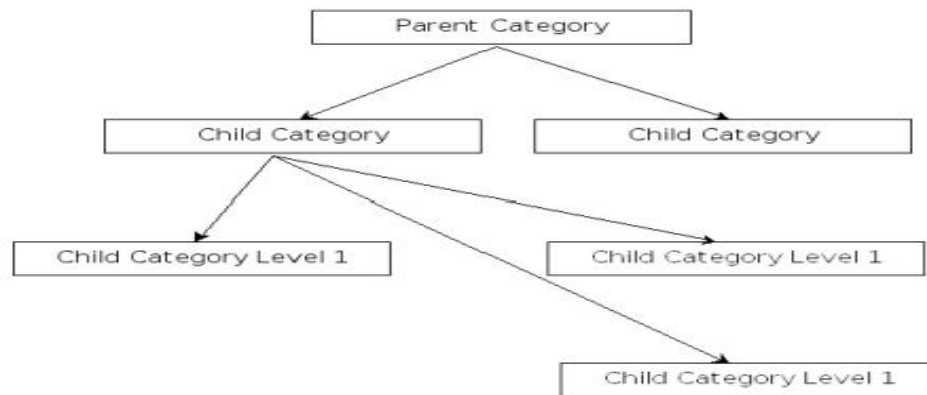
In the **network model** of a database it is possible for a record to have multiple parents, making the system more flexible compared to the strict single-parent model of the hierarchical database. The model is made to accommodate many to many relationships, which allows for a more realistic representation of the relationships between entities. Even though the network database model enjoyed popularity for a short while, it never really lifted of the ground in terms of staging a revolution. It is now rarely used because of the availability of more competitive models that boast the higher flexibility demanded in today's ever advancing age. In 1971, the Conference on Data Systems Languages (CODASYL) formally defined the network model. The basic data modeling construct in the network model is the set construct. A set consists of an owner record type, a set name, and a member record type. A member record type can have that role in more than one set; hence the multi parent concept is supported. An owner record type can also be a member or owner in another set. The data model is a simple network, and link and intersection record types (called junction records by IDMS) may exist, as well as sets between them. Thus, the complete network of relationships is represented by several pair wise sets; in each set some (one) record type is owner (at the tail of the network arrow) and one or more record types are members (at the head of the relationship arrow). Usually, a set defines a 1: M relationship, although 1:1 is permitted. The CODASYL network model is based on mathematical set theory.

Figure 4.8 shows an example of a network database maintaining relationships among courses offered and students enrolled for each course in a college. Notice that parent and child elements can have many-to-many relationships. That is, each student may be enrolled for several courses, and each course may have a number students enrolled for it. With this database structure used for this example, both course-wise-student report ( a report showing all students enrolled for each course) and student-wise-course report (a report showing all courses taken by each student) can be produced easily. For example, it is easy to tell from the figure that in this semester, the students enrolled for Mathematics course are Seeta, Geeta, Ram, and Sohan; and Geeta has taken three courses Hindi, Mathematics, and Computer Science.

### Classic Hierarchical Model



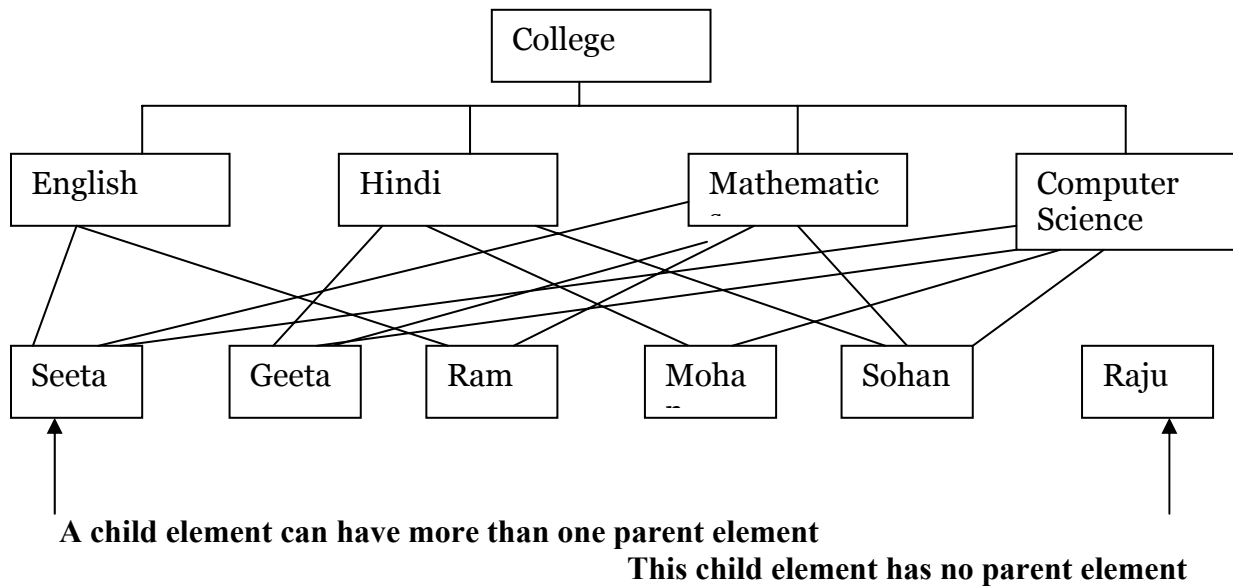
(a)



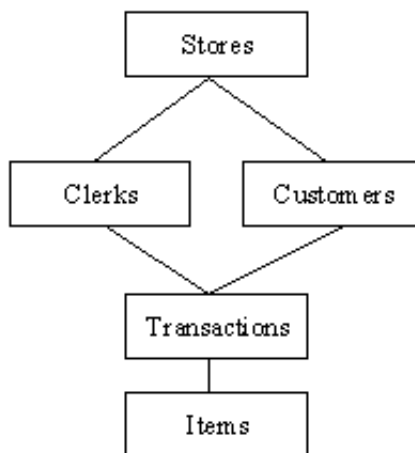
(b)

**Fig 4.7 Hierarchical Model**

The example also shows a child element that has no parent element (student named Raju - he might be a research student who has not taken any course in this semester).



**Fig 4.8 An example of a network database**



**Fig 4.9 Network Model**

#### **4.3.4.3 Relational Model**

A database based on the relational model developed by E.F. Codd. A **Relational database** allows the definition of data structures, storage and retrieval operations and integrity constraints. In such a database the data and relations between them are organized in tables. A table is a collection of records and each record in a table contains the same fields.

Relational databases (RDBMS) are entirely unique when compared to the aforementioned models as the design of the records is organized around a set of tables (with unique identifiers) to represent both the data and their relationships. The fields to be used for

matching are often indexed in order to speed up the process and the data can be retrieved and manipulated in a number of ways without the need to reorganize the original database tables. Working under the assumption that file systems (which often use the hierarchical or network models) are not considered databases, the relational database model is the most commonly used system today. While the concepts behind hierarchical and network database models are older than that of the relational model, the latter was in fact the first one to be formally defined.

#### Properties of Relational Tables:

- Values Are Atomic
- Each Row is Unique
- Column Values Are of the Same Kind
- The Sequence of Columns is Insignificant
- The Sequence of Rows is Insignificant
- Each Column Has a Unique Name

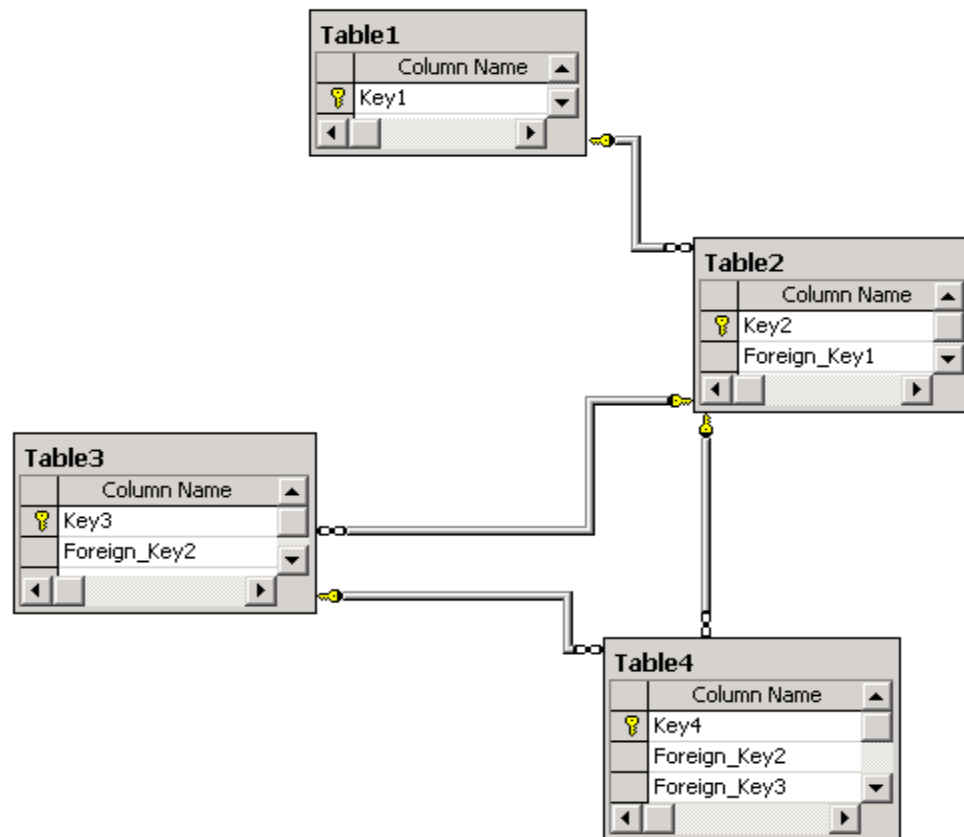


Fig 4.10 Relational Model

#### 4.3.4.4 Object-Oriented Model

After the relational DBMS soared to popularity, the most recent development in DMBS technology came in the form of the **object-oriented database model**, which offers more flexibility than the hierarchical, network and relational models put together. Under this

model, data exists in the form of objects, which include both the data and the data's behavior. Certain modern information systems contain such convoluted combinations of information that traditional data models (including the RDBMS) remain too restrictive to adequately model this complex data. The object-oriented model also exhibits better cohesion and coupling than prior models, resulting in a database which is not only more flexible and more manageable but also the most able when it comes to modeling real-life processes. A major benefit of this approach is the unification of the application and database development into a seamless data model and language environment. As a result, applications require less code, use more natural data modeling, and code bases are easier to maintain. Object developers can write complete database applications with a modest amount of additional effort.

However, due to the immaturity of this model, certain problems are bound to arise, some major ones being the lack of an SQL equivalent as well as lack of standardization. Furthermore, the most common use of the object oriented model is to have an object point to the child or parent OID (object I.D.) to be retrieved; leaving many programmers with the impression that the object oriented model is simply a reincarnation of the network model at best. That is, however, an attempt at the over-simplification of an innovative technology.

In contrast to a relational DBMS where a complex data structure must be flattened out to fit into tables or joined together from those tables to form the in-memory structure, object DBMSs have no performance overhead to store or retrieve a web or hierarchy of interrelated objects. This one-to-one mapping of object programming language objects to database objects has two benefits over other storage approaches: it provides higher performance management of objects, and it enables better management of the complex interrelationships between objects. This makes object DBMSs better suited to support applications such as financial portfolio risk analysis systems, telecommunications service applications, World Wide Web document structures, design and manufacturing systems, and hospital patient record systems, which have complex relationships between data.

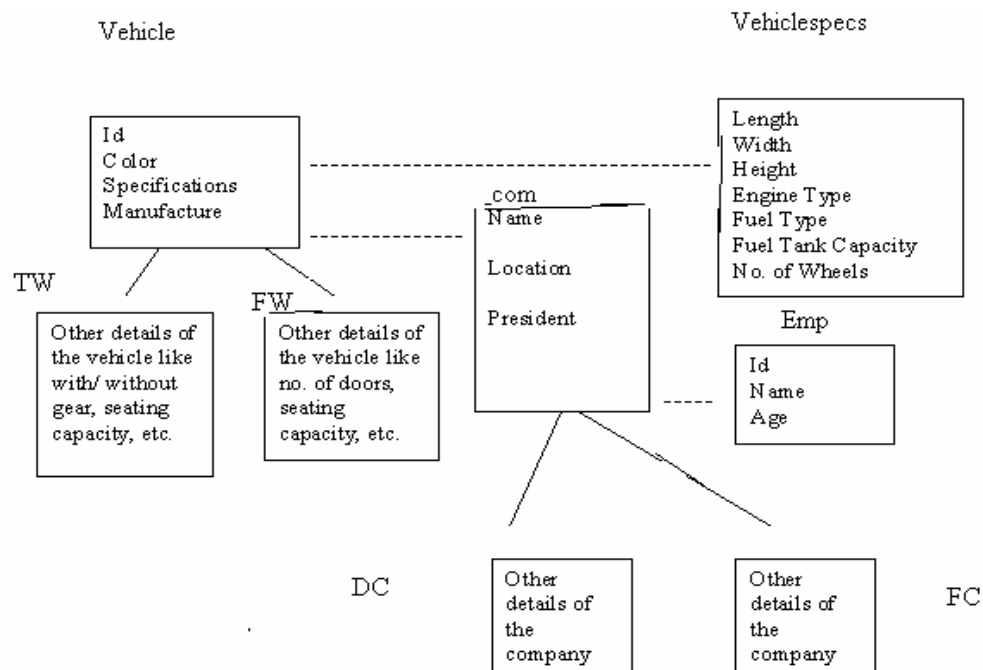
These applications include computer aided design (CAD), computer-aided engineering (CAE), computer-aided manufacturing (CAM), computer-aided software engineering (CASE), expert systems, and multimedia systems. Some key features required for effective modeling of these applications, that are absent in conventional database models, are:

1. Ability to model complex nested entities, such as design and engineering objects, and multimedia documents. Conventional database models do not provide mechanisms, such as configuration management, to represent and manage such entities.
2. Support for general data types found in object-oriented programming languages. Database management systems based on conventional database models support only a limited set of atomic data types, such as integer, string, etc. They do not even allow storage and retrieval of long unstructured data, such as images, audio, and textual documents.
3. Support for proper match between object-oriented programming languages and database languages. A database application is normally implemented by using some conventional programming language (such as COBOL, PASCAL, C, or C++), and some database

languages (data definition language, data manipulation language, query language) that are part of database management system. With popularity of object-oriented paradigm, use of object-oriented programming languages for implementing applications has become a common practice. However, database languages used in database management systems for conventional database models do not use object-oriented concepts for implementing applications. This mismatch between object-oriented programming languages and database languages used in database management systems for conventional database models makes database implementation of many applications inconvenient.

Object-oriented database model was introduced to overcome these shortcomings of conventional database models. An **object-oriented database** is a collection of objects whose behavior, state, and relationships are defined in accordance with object-oriented concepts (such as object, class, class hierarchy, etc.). An object-oriented database management system allows definition and manipulation of an object-oriented database.

Figure 4.11 shows an example of an object-oriented database structure. Class Vehicle is root of a class composition hierarchy including classes Vehiclespecs, Company, and Employee. Class Vehicle is also root of a class hierarchy involving classes Two Wheeler and Four Wheeler. Class Company is, in turn, root of a class hierarchy with subclasses Domestic Company and Foreign Company. It is also root of a class-composition hierarchy involving class Employee.



**Fig 4.11 An example of an object-oriented database structure**



Class/subclass link	Attribute/domain link
TW	Two Wheeler
FW	Four Wheeler
DC	Domestic Company
FC	Foreign Company
Com	Company
Emp	Employee

### 4.3.5 Main Components of a DBMS

A DBMS allows users to organize, process, and retrieve selected data from a database, without any need to know about underlying database structure (organization and location of data). Four major components of a DBMS are:

1. Data Definition Language (DDL)
2. Data Manipulation Language (DML)
3. Query Language
4. Report Generator

These are described below.

#### 4.3.5.1 Data Definition Language (DDL)

**Data definition language (DDL)** is used to define the structure of a database. Database structure definition (also known as *database schema*) typically includes the following:

1. Definition of all data elements to be included in the database.
2. Organization of data elements (fields) into records (or tuples), tables, etc.
3. Definition of field name, field length, and field type for each data element. Field name is used to refer to a data element while accessing it. Field length is used to define maximum size of a data element (such as employee-name field may have a maximum size of 30 characters). Common field types are:
  - **Numeric:** Can contain numbers formed with digits 0 to 9, a decimal point, and a + or – sign
  - **Alphanumeric:** Can contain a combination of alphabetic characters, special symbols, and digits
  - **Logical:** Can contain one of two possible values - Yes/No or True/False
  - **Date/time:** Can contain a single date, time, or date-time value
  - **Memo:** Can contain any type of data that user might like to type Binary: Can contain binary data
4. Definition of controls for fields that can have selective values only. For example, in an employee database, sex field can have controls to accept values M or F only. Similarly, age field can have controls to accept values 18 or more and less than 70 only. Such controls ensure correctness of entered data to some extent.
5. Definition of access controls to various tables, records, and fields for different

- categories of users to protect sensitive data items from unauthorized users.
6. Definition of logical relationships among various data elements of database.

In short, virtually everything about a database structure is included in its schema. It is possible to generate a complete description of a database from its schema. Systems analysts use this description for defining new applications on the database.

Database systems are installed and coordinated normally by individuals called **database administrators**. They are responsible for following aspects of database administration

1. Establish and control data definitions and standards.
2. Determine relationships among data elements.
3. Design database security system to guard against unauthorized use of data in the database.
4. Train and assist applications programmers in use of database.

A **data dictionary** is developed and used in a database to document and maintain data definitions. It is created/updated automatically by DDL module of DBMS as database schema is defined / changed.

#### **4.3.5.2 Data Manipulation Language (DML)**

Once structure of a database (database schema) has been defined, it is ready for entry and manipulation of data. **Data manipulation language (DML)** includes commands to enable users to enter and manipulate data. With these commands, users can add new records to database, navigate through existing records, view contents of various fields of a record, modify contents of one or more fields of a record, delete an existing record, and sort records in desired sequence.

In some DBMS, data definition language and data manipulation language are combined together, while in others, they are supported as separate DBMS components.

#### **Query Language**

Although it is possible to navigate through a database one record at a time to extract desired information from the database, this approach can be very inefficient and frustrating when there are thousands of records and several files in the database. Hence, all database management systems provide a **query language** enabling users to define their requirements as queries for extracting desired information from a database. For example, for an inventory database, a user may be interested in such information as "list item description and vendor name for all items whose current inventory level is less than 20 units", or "list stock number and item description for all items with a profit margin greater than 25%". A query language enables proper formulation of queries for extraction of such information from a database.

Earlier, each database management system had its own query language. In this approach, queries developed for one DBMS could not be used with other DBMSs. However, eventually one query language, called SQL (pronounced "S-Q-L"), emerged as an industry standard. It was originally developed by IBM and was based on an earlier query language called SEQUEL, an acronym for "Structured English QUery Language". Today, SQL is

the standard Structured Query Language used in many DBMSs.

A query language can be easily learnt by a non-programmer. This enables normal users of a database to obtain desired information from the database without the help of any programmer

### **Report Generator**

A **report** is presentation of information extracted from a database. **Report generators** enable users of a database to design the layout of a report in desired format. This means that that users can specify proper spacing between data items to be presented in a report, and can also include suitable report titles and subtitles, column heading, page numbers, separation lines, and other elements making a report more readable and presentable. Report generators can also be instructed to perform arithmetic operations (such as calculating subtotals and totals) on data found in numeric fields to make a report more meaningful and useful.

## **4.3.6 Creating and Using a Database**

In this section, we will take a closer look at how a database is created and used. Large databases on large computer systems are created and maintained normally by professional programmers. Users of these databases, however, need not be programmers. They can be used easily by non-programmers to access data and produce reports. On the other hand, many database management systems, designed for personal computer systems, enable nonprogrammers to not only use, but even tolerate their own databases. These databases normally are simple in structure and small in size.

### **4.3.6.1 Creating a Database**

Creation of a database is a three steps process:

1. Defining its structure (schema)
2. Designing forms (custom screens) for displaying and entering data
3. Entering data into it

These steps are described below

#### **Schema Definition**

First thing we do to set up a database is to define its structure (schema definition). This is done by identifying characteristics of each field in it. A good way to begin defining schema of a database is to list down on paper all fields to be included in the database, and then to determine the name, type, and size of each field. This information is then captured into the system by using a tool called *schema builder*. Schema builder enables a user to define a database schema interactively by prompting the user to enter name, type, size, etc. for each field.

While defining the schema of a database, it is important to consider possible future needs and needs of all types of users of the database. That is, all possible fields that may be needed should be included in database structure while defining it. Although it is possible to modify database structure at any time, making such modifications is a time-consuming process. Hence, it is always better to carefully design a database in first instance, and minimize need to modify its structure later.

### EMPLOYEE DATABASE DATA ENTRY FORM

EMPLOYEE ID:	856392	SEX:	M	AGE:	48
--------------	--------	------	---	------	----

EMPLOYEE NAME:	LAST NAME:	SINHA
	FIRST NAME:	PUNIT
	MIDDLE NAME:	KUMAR

CONTACT ADDRESS:	ADDRESS1:	F/8, ANAND PARK
	ADDRESS2:	SOCIETY, AUNDH
	CITY:	PUNE
	STATE:	MH
	POSTAL CODE:	411007

TELEPHONE NO.:	(020) 5680-4892
----------------	-----------------

ANY OTHER INFORMATION:	IS FLUENT IN JAPANESE LANGUAGE
------------------------	--------------------------------

**Fig 4.12 A typical database form used for data entry**

## Designing Forms

After defining the structure of a database, next step is to design forms (custom screens) for convenient data entry. Each form displays a set of fields of database structure with appropriate amount of blank spaces against each to enable data entry in those fields. Figure 4.12 shows such a form.

To facilitate easier data entry, often forms are designed with several fancy features, such as:

1. A list-box for a field listing the options from which users can select a choice. For example, in Figure 4.10, SEX field may have a list-box listing options "Male" and "Female," and users simply select appropriate option for an employee. Depending on a user's selected option, system enters "M" or "F" automatically in SEX field. Similarly, STATE field may have a list-box listing all states, from which users can select appropriate option for an employee's address.

2. Simple validation checks defined for a field to ensure correctness of entered data to some extent. For example, in Figure 4.10, a validation check may be defined for POSTAL CODE field to accept only six numeric characters. With this, the field will not accept less than or more than six characters, and will also not accept alphabetic or special characters. Similarly, a validation check may be defined for AGE field-to accept values in the range 18 to 70 only (both inclusive). Validation checks can be used also to force a certain character position of a field to be a letter or numeral.

3. Automatic conversion of typed characters to upper-or lower-case. For example, in Figure 4.10, this feature may be used with STATE field. Hence, the system will accept "mh","Mh";"mH" or "MH"; for state code of Maharashtra, and will convert the entry to "MH" automatically. This feature greatly eases data entry and ensures uniformity of data.

4. Automatic formatting of certain fields. For example, in Figure 4.10, this feature can be used with TELEPHONE NO field to display the value of this field automatically in specified format (with parentheses, space, and hyphen). That is, to enter telephone number "(020) 5680-4892", user only needs to type "02056804892", and the system displays "(020) 5680-4892" in that field automatically.

## Entering Data

After forms have been designed, the database is ready for entry of data. Data is entered one record at a time. To enter data, a user issues a command that calls up and displays appropriate form with blank fields. The user then keys in data for each field in appropriate spaces. In this manner, the user enters data for first record, then for second record, and so on. In most database systems, records are assigned a number automatically as they are entered.

While entering data into fields, the *Tab* or *Enter* key is used usually to move to next field. Pressing *Enter* or *Tab* key in last field of the form saves the record in database and moves to a new, blank form for next record's data entry. In addition to using the *Tab* or *Enter* key

to move forward through fields one can call directly go to any field on the form by clicking on it with mouse.

#### 4.3.6.2 Viewing, Modifying, Deleting and Adding Records

All database systems provide commands to add, delete, view, or modify records of a database. Command for viewing a record only enables users to display data in various fields of a record in same screen format as that used for data entry. Users can specify a record to be displayed by specifying its key field value. Database systems usually also provide flexibility to users to move between records for viewing different records, such as "go to first record", "go to previous record", "go to next record", and "go to last record".

Many database systems also provide facility to set up **filters**, which allow users to browse through and view those records only that meet some criterion. For example, in employee database created by using the form of Figure 4.10 if a user wants to view records of female employees only, the user can set a filter for "Sex" field, and only records containing "F" in that field will be displayed. Note that while a filter is set, the user cannot access records that do not meet the filter criteria. Filters provide a quick and convenient way to narrow down the number of records with which users have to work.

Command for modifying a record enables users to not only view, but also update data in various fields of a record. To modify contents of a particular field of a record, the record is displayed first, then cursor is positioned in the field at appropriate character position where change is to be made by clicking mouse there, and then contents of the field is edited appropriately. Data in any other field of the record can be edited similarly. Finally, *Enter* key has to be pressed for changes to take effect. Some database systems may prompt the user to confirm the changes made, before effecting the changes and allowing the user to move to another record.

Command for deleting a record enables users to remove records from a database. To delete a record, a user first selects the record, either by specifying its key field value, or by using the facility to move between records just as is done in case of viewing a record. The user then uses delete command, to delete the record. Most database systems prompt the user to confirm deletion of the selected record before deleting it. This feature prevents deletion of a record by mistake.

Command for adding a record enables users to add new records to a database. When this command is enabled, the system displays a blank form and waits for a user to enter data. The user then keys in data for each field in appropriate spaces, and finally presses **Enter or Tab** key, after keying data in last field to save the record. On doing this, the system displays a new blank form for next record's data entry. If no more records are to be added, the user uses mouse to select the option to terminate the process for adding new records.

### 4.3.6.3 Searching for Desired Information

A database management system enables its users to quickly search for desired information from large volume of data stored in a database with great ease. Features supported commonly in modern database systems for this are:

1. Find command
2. Query language
3. Query by Example (QBE)

These features are described below.

#### **Find Command**

**Find** command is used for simple database queries, like searching for records having a particular string pattern in a field. For example, in employee database created by using the form of figure 4.10, Find command may be used to list records of all employees whose last name is "SINHA". Similarly, it may be used to list records of all employees who belong to the city of "PUNE".

To use **Find**, a user has to type the string pattern to be searched and then has to indicate which field to search in. For instance, in the example above, user has to type "SINHA" and indicate that this string has to be searched in the "LAST NAME" field. User can specify either a single field or all fields.

**Find** command cannot be used for creating an elaborate set of criteria for complex queries. Furthermore, it can operate only on one table at a time, and a user cannot save a specified criterion for future use.

#### **Query Language**

For handling complex queries, all database systems support a query language. Most of these query languages conform to the SQL standard. In SQL, a user has to specify criteria for search along with the fields and table (or tables) with which to work with. Criteria for search can be built by using relational operators (= [equal to], > [greater than], < [less than], and combinations of these operators), and logical operators (AND, OR, and NOT). For example, to list names of all employees whose last name starts with letter "S", who belong to "PUNE", and whose age is more than 40 years, SQL query looks as follows:

```
SELECT [LAST NAME], [FIRST NAME], [MIDDLE NAME]  
FROM Employee
```

```
WHERE ([LAST NAME] = "S...") AND (CITY = "PUNE") AND ([AGE] > 40)
```

Keywords SELECT, FROM, and WHERE tell SQL engine how to interpret each part of the query statement. SELECT keyword tells SQL which fields are to be displayed for records that match the criteria. FROM keyword tells SQL which table(s) to work with. WHERE keyword tells SQL the criteria for selecting records (search criteria). Brackets [...]

around some field names are needed in the example above because these field names contain spaces, and brackets help the database to interpret each field name correctly.

A query language can be learnt and used easily even by a non-programmer, because complexity of a query language statement is more or less of same order as given in the SQL statement above. Furthermore, a query language uses a few keywords only that are easy to remember and use. In fact, SQL has a few dozen or so basic keywords only.

Other advantages of using a query language are that a query statement can be used for creating an elaborate set of criteria for complex queries, it can operate on multiple tables at a time, and specified criteria can be saved for future use.

### **Query By Example (QBE)**

Although query languages are easy to learn and use, many database developers further simplify the job of specifying search criteria. For this, they provide a simpler user interface (called front end) to query language. A database user specifies facts about a query by using this interface and a query language builder composes query language statements automatically from the facts. Front end usually consists of a form (called *QBE form*), and a user specifies a search criteria simply by inputting values into the fields of this form. Again values may be input either by typing them or by selecting an option from a set of options provided for a particular field, depending on how the front end has been designed to work.

QBE form is designed to collect all necessary information from a user for composing query language statement(s) for search criteria. Once the user completes the QBE form, QBE engine converts user inputs automatically into suitable query language statement(s) for search processing. Hence, the user is relieved of remembering query language keywords and using them with correct syntax to. Form queries. This front-end feature *is* called **query by example (QBE)**. It is very useful for many database users, especially beginners.

### **Creating Reports**

Users of a database system can use report generator to assemble output of a database query in desired format. For this, a user creates a report specifying the layout of display (or printout) of fields requested by the user in the query. Users can also specify titles and subtitles for a report, column headings for various fields, and other elements, to make the output appear more presentable. Furthermore, users can even specify sorting parameters to obtain sorted output with respect to one or more fields in the output. When sorting is on more than one field, a user has to specify the primary, secondary, and tertiary key fields. A user can save a created report and use it later for generating similar reports whenever required.



---

## 4.4 REVIEW QUESTIONS

---

1. Differentiate between various data processing systems?
2. What is a file management system?
3. Write a short notes on:
  - a) Hierarchical database mode;
  - b) INetwork database model;
  - c) Object-oriented database model.
4. What is query by example (QBE)? How does it make the job of querying a database simpler?
5. What is SQL? How it is useful?

---

## **DATA COMMUNICATIONS**

---

### **Structure**

#### 5.1 Introduction

#### 5.2 Basic Elements of a Communication System

##### 5.2.1 Data Transmission Modes

##### 5.2.2 Transmission Basics

#### 5.3 Types of Data Transmission Media

##### 5.3.1 Bounded Media

##### 5.3.2 Unbounded Media

#### 5.4 Modulation Techniques

##### 5.4.1 Modems

##### 5.4.2 Analog versus Digital Transmission

#### 5.5 Multiplexing

##### 5.5.1 Time Division Multiplexing (TDM)

##### 5.5.2 Frequency Division Multiplexing (FDM)

#### 6.6 Review Questions

---

## **5.1 INTRODUCTION**

---

The term Communication has a history as old as the existence of life on earth. The telegraph revolutionized long-distance communications almost everywhere, reducing the time taken to communicate across a country from days to hours or minutes, or from months to days between continents. The early telegraph was a very simple device; it used a direct current cell to operate an electromagnet.

At the time of the invention of the telephone, most effort was directed towards the development of a 'multiple' telegraph: one that could signal more than one code at a time. Despite digital communication getting a head start, voice telephony rapidly came to dominate the wide-area communications arena. It is only the last few decades that have seen the development of wide-area networks exclusively for data, and only in the last few years that this technology, in the form of ISDN, has become available to home subscribers. Until very recently, if one wished to communicate between a home computer and a remote site, one had no choice but to use a modem to convert the computer signals into a form suitable for a voice communications medium.

Frequently, however, data must be sent beyond the local circuitry that constitutes a computer. In many cases, the distances involved may be enormous. Unfortunately, as the distance between the source of a message and its destination increases, accurate transmission becomes increasingly difficult. This results from the electrical distortion of signals traveling through long conductors, and from noise added to the signal as it propagates through a transmission medium. Although some precautions must be taken for data exchange within a computer, the biggest problems occur when data is transferred to devices outside the computer's circuitry. In this case, distortion and noise can become so severe that information is lost.

Data Communications concerns the transmission of digital messages to devices external to the message source. "External" devices are generally thought of as being independently powered circuitry that exists beyond the chassis of a computer or other digital message source. As a rule, the maximum permissible transmission rate of a message is directly proportional to signal power and inversely proportional to channel noise. It is the aim of any communications system to provide the highest possible transmission rate at the lowest possible power and with the least possible noise.

---

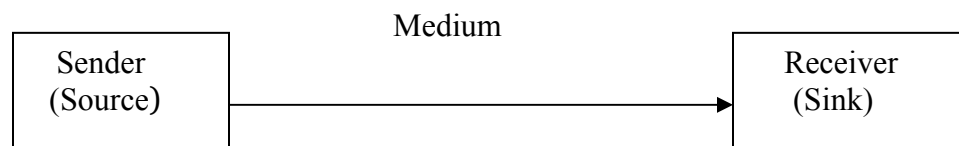
## 5.2 BASIC ELEMENTS OF A COMMUNICATION SYSTEM

---

Communication is the process of transferring messages and data from one point to another. The three basic elements of any communication process are:

- 1) A sender (source) which creates the message to be transmitted.
- 2) A medium which carries the message.
- 3) A receiver (Sink) which receives the message.

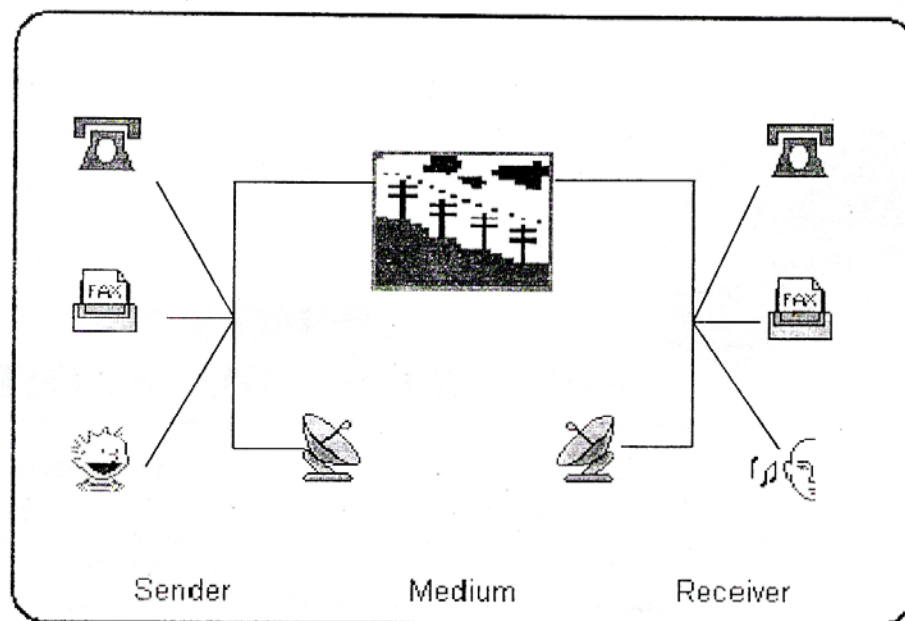
For example when we speak to our friend over telephone we are sender, the telephone line through which our voice is transmitted is a medium and our friend is a receiver. This is a simple example of voice communication. The same concept holds for the data communication also.



**Fig 5.1 Basic Elements of a Communication System**

### 5.2.1 Data Transmission Modes

Data transmission, whether analog or digital, may also be characterized by the direction in which the signals travel over the media.



**Fig 5.2 Means of communication**

### **1. Simplex:**

In cases where signals may travel in only one direction, the transmission is considered simplex.

#### **For example,**

A football coach calling out orders to his team through a megaphone is using simplex communication. In this example, the coach's voice is the signal, and it travels in only one direction—away from the megaphone's mouthpiece and toward the team. Simplex is sometimes called one-way, or unidirectional, communication.

### **2. Half Duplex**

In half-duplex transmission signals may travel in both directions over a medium but in only one direction at a time. Half-duplex systems contain only one channel for communication, and that channel must be shared for multiple nodes to exchange information. For example, an apartment's intercom system that requires you to press a "talk" button in order to allow your voice to be transmitted over the wire uses half-duplex transmission. If you visit a friend's apartment building, you press the "talk" button to send your voice signals to their apartment. When your friend responds, he presses the "talk" button in his apartment to send his voice signal in the opposite direction over the wire to the speaker in the lobby where you wait. If you press the "talk" button while he's talking, you will not be able to hear his voice transmission. In a similar manner, some networks operate with only half-duplex capability over their wires.

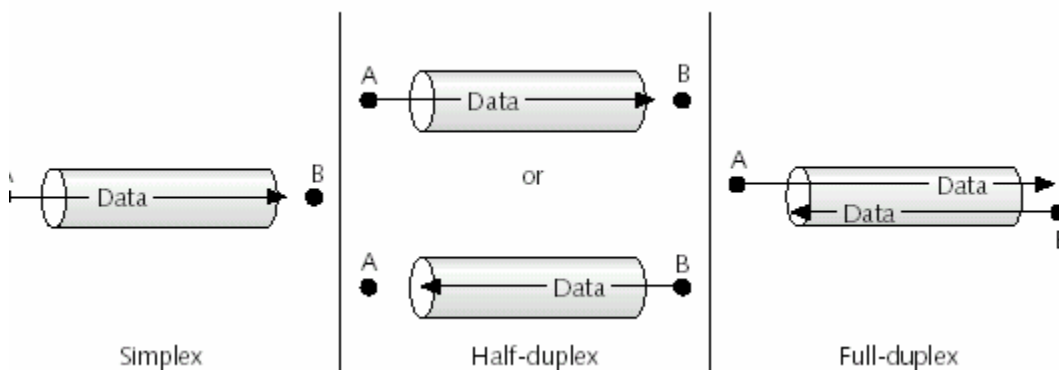
### 3. Full-Duplex

When signals are free to travel in both directions over a medium simultaneously, the transmission is considered full duplex. Full duplex may also be called bi-directional transmission or sometimes, simply duplex. When you call a friend on the telephone, your connection is an example of a full-duplex transmission, because your voice signals can be transmitted to your friend at the same time your friend's voice signals are transmitted in the opposite direction to you. In other words, both of you can talk and hear each other simultaneously.

Full-duplex transmission is also used on data networks. For example, modern Ethernet networks use full-duplex. In this situation, full-duplex transmission uses multiple channels on the same medium. A channel is a distinct communication path between two or more nodes, much as a lane is a distinct transportation path on a freeway. Channels may be separated either logically or physically.

An example of physically separate channels occurs when one wire within a network cable is used for transmission while another wire is used for reception. In this example, while each separate wire in the medium allows half-duplex transmission, when combined in a cable they form a medium that provides full-duplex transmission. Full-duplex capability increases the speed with which data can travel over a network. In some cases—for example, telephone service over the Internet—full-duplex data networks are a requirement. Many network devices, such as modems and NICs, allow you to specify whether the device should use half- or full-duplex communication. It's important to know what type of transmission a network supports before installing network devices on that network. If you configure a computer's NIC to use full duplex while the rest of the network is using half-duplex,

**For example**, computer will not be able to communicate on the network.



**Fig 5.3 Modes of Data Transmission**

#### 5.2.2 Transmission Basics

In data networking, the term transmission has two meanings. First, it can refer to the process of issuing data signals on a medium. It can also refer to the progress of data signals

over a medium from one point to another. Long ago, people transmitted information across distances via smoke or fire signals. Needless to say, many different types of data transmission have evolved since that time. The transmission techniques in use on today's networks are complex and varied.

### **Analog and Digital Signaling**

One important characteristic of data transmission is the type of signaling involved. On a data network, information can be transmitted via one of two signaling methods:

- i. **Analog**
- ii. **Digital**

Both types of signals are generated by electrical current, the pressure of which is measured in volts. The strength of an electrical signal is directly proportional to its voltage. Thus, when network engineers talk about the strength of an analog or digital signal, they often refer to the signal's voltage. The essential difference between analog and digital signals is the way voltage creates and sustains the signal.

#### **1. Analog Signaling**

In analog signals, voltage varies continuously. In digital signals, voltage turns off and on repeatedly, pulsing from zero voltage to a specific positive voltage. An analog signal's voltage appears as a continuous wave when graphed over time, because voltage is varied and imprecise in analog signals, analog transmission is more susceptible to transmission flaws such as noise than digital signals. To understand this concept, think of two tin cans connected by a wire. When you speak into one of the tin cans, you produce analog sound waves that vibrate over the wire until they reach the tin can at the other end. These sound waves are merely approximations of your voice, and they are significantly affected by the quality of the wire.

#### **For example,**

If you try the tin can experiment with a pure copper wire, your voice will arrive at the other end sounding clearer than if you used fishing line, because copper conducts sound better than plastic. Regardless of which medium you use, however, the sound waves will become distorted as they traverse the wire, arriving at the second tin can at least a little muddled. This vulnerability makes analog transmission less precise than digital transmission.

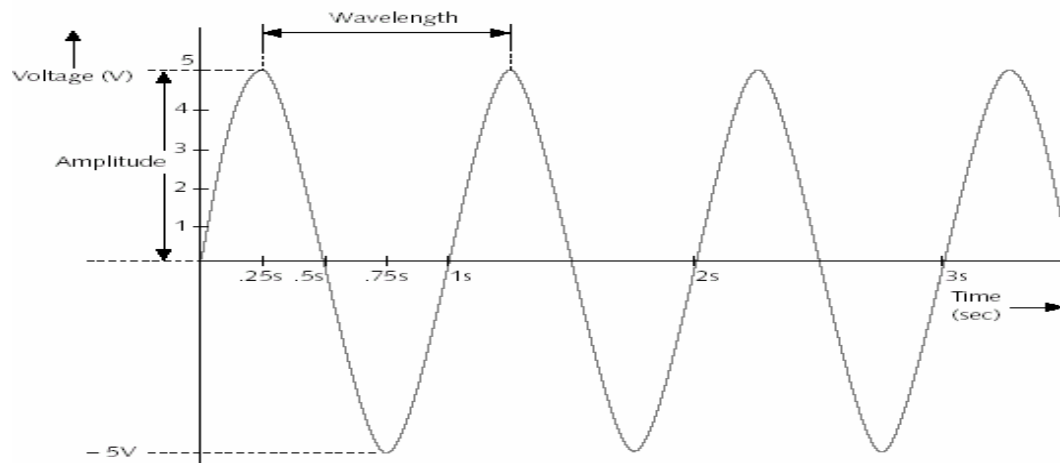
#### **2. Digital Signaling**

Unlike analog signals where there is a smooth curve, digital signals jump directly to the next value.

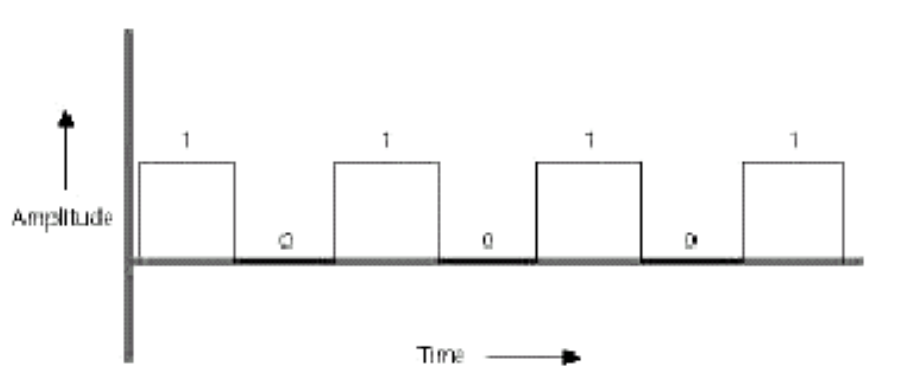
#### **For example,**

If the voltage changed from -5 V to 0 V, it would change instantly, not drop off with a curve. When digital signals can exist in only one of two values, they go directly to the next value, typically changing between 0 and 1. The jump from one value to another is known as a **transition**. In digital signaling, transitions give a notched appearance to the graph. Digital signals are synchronized in bits which can be clocked by either sending a separate clocking scheme across the network with the bits, or by using a guaranteed state-change

clocking scheme. Data rate is measured in **bits per second** (bps). Also known as *hertz* or **baud**, this rate is sometimes called **baud rate**. Encoding data in a digital signal can be done using several encoding types. The different encoding types can be described as either state-transition encoding or current-state encoding. *State-transition encoding* uses a change (or lack of a change) in a signal to represent a data value. One way this is done is to let a change in voltage represent a 1. Whenever the voltage changes this is translated to a 1; if the voltage remains the same, the value is a 0. State-transition could also allow that a change in voltage represents a specific value. When the voltages changes from high to low this represents a 1, while a change from low to high represents a 0.



**Fig 5.4 Analog Signal**



**Fig 5.5 Digital Signal**

**Data rate:** This is the rate, in bits per second (bps), at which data can be communicated.

**Bandwidth:** This is the maximum bandwidth of the transmitted signal as constrained by the nature of the transmission medium or transmission channel, expressed in cycles per second, or hertz (Hz).

**Noise:** The average level of noise over the communications path.

**Error rate:** The rate at which errors occur, where an error is the reception of a 1 when a 0 was transmitted or the reception of a 0 when a 1 was transmitted.

The problem we are addressing is this communications facilities are expensive, and, in general, the greater the bandwidth of the transmission facility, the greater the cost. Furthermore, all transmission channels of any practical interest are of limited bandwidth. The limitations arise from the physical properties of the transmission medium or from deliberate limitations at the transmitter on the bandwidth to prevent interference from other sources. Accordingly, we would like to make as efficient use as possible of a given bandwidth. For digital data, this means that we would like to get as high a data rate as possible at a particular limit of error rate for a given bandwidth. The main constraint on achieving this efficiency is noise.

---

## 5.3 TYPES OF DATA TRANSMISSION MEDIA

---

Data Transmission Media is divided into two types

- 1) Bounded Media
- 2) Unbounded Media

### 5.3.1 Bounded Media

It is also known as guided media. Bounded transmission media constrain and guide communication signals. These are made up of a central conductor (usually copper) surrounded by a jacket material. Bounded media are great for LANs because they offer high speed, good security, and low cost. However, sometimes they cannot be used due to distance limitations.

Cables differ by their properties. Depending on your needs, you may opt for one cable type over another because it has some characteristics that are more important to you.

**For example,** coaxial cable is fairly resistant to outside interference but cannot be used for some high-speed LANs. Some of the characteristics you will look at for each cable type include the following:

**Cost:** Cost can be an important consideration when deciding on a network cable. Only a few years ago, fiber-optic cable was extremely expensive, and almost no one could justify the cost to use it.

**Installation:** Using the example above, one reason fiber-optic cable was so expensive was due to the installation. Only highly skilled technicians were capable of installing this cable correctly. Obviously the best situation is having someone on staff that can install the cable. If you need to get an outside contractor, the installation cost may outweigh the actual cable cost.



**Capacity:** So you have gotten past the cost and installation issues, and now the question is, “How fast will it go?” Normally, cable speed is referred to as **bandwidth** and is an important characteristic of a media type. Bandwidth is usually measured in **bits per second**. For example, standard Ethernet cable is usually up to 10 Mbps, which is 10 mega bits per second (note the small *b* for bits, not *B* for Bytes).

**Attenuation (Maximum Distance):** Depending on what you need to network together, the maximum cable distance may also be another consideration.

**Immunity to Interference:** The last property is how well the cable holds up against interference, normally **electromagnetic interference**, or EMI. EMI could play a big part in which cable type you use, depending on the location. Suppose you needed to run a network into a manufacturing facility with a lot of heavy machinery that used electrical motors. An unshielded type of cable may not be the best choice in that situation.

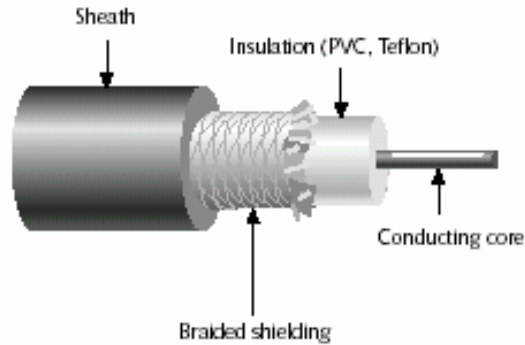
Three common types of bounded media are in use out in the world they are

- a) Coaxial
- b) Twisted pair
- c) Fiber optic

#### **a) Coaxial Cable**

Coaxial cable, called “coax” for short, was the foundation for Ethernet networks in the 1980s and remained a popular transmission medium for many years. Over time, however, twisted-pair cabling has replaced coax in most modern LANs. Coaxial cable consists of a central copper core surrounded by an insulator, a braided metal shielding, called braiding, and an outer cover, and called the sheath or jacket. The copper core carries the electromagnetic signal, and the braided metal shielding acts as both a shield against noise and a ground for the signal. The insulator layer usually consists of a plastic material such as polyvinyl chloride (PVC) or Teflon. It protects the copper core from the metal shielding, because if the two made contact, the wire would short-circuit. The jacket, which protects the cable from physical damage, may be PVC or a more expensive, fire-resistant plastic

Because of its insulation and protective braiding, coaxial cable has a high resistance to interference from noise. It can also carry signals farther than twisted-pair cabling before amplification of the signals becomes necessary, although not as far as fiber-optic cabling. On the other hand, coaxial cable is more expensive than twisted-pair cable because it requires significantly more raw materials (such as copper for the core, Teflon for the insulation, and so on) to manufacture. Coaxial cable is also less desirable than twisted-pair because it supports lower throughput.



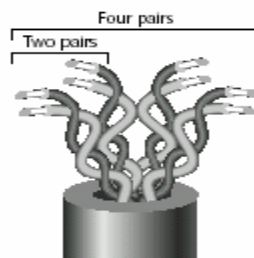
**Fig 5.6 Coaxial Cable**

### **b) Twisted-Pair Cable**

The most popular network cabling right now is *twisted pair*. It is lightweight, easy to install, inexpensive, and supports many different types of networks. It can also support speeds of up to 100Mbps.

Twisted-pair cabling is made up of pairs of solid or stranded copper twisted around each other. The twists are done to reduce the vulnerability to EMI and cross talk. The number of pairs in the cable depends on the type. The copper core of the cable is usually 22-AWG or 24-AWG, as measured on the **American Wire Gauge standard**.

Twisted-pair (TP) cable is similar to telephone wiring and consists of color-coded pairs of insulated copper wires, each with a diameter of 0.4 to 0.8 mm, or 22-24 AWG (American Wire Gauge) standard copper wires. The wires are twisted around each other to form pairs and all the pairs are encased in a plastic sheath. The twists in the wire help to reduce the effects of crosstalk. Crosstalk, which is measured in decibels (dB), occurs when signals traveling on nearby wire pairs infringe on another pair's signal. If you envision the wire pairs in a single cable as couples in an elevator, you can imagine how one couple speaking very loudly might impair the other couple's ability to converse. Because they are twisted around each other, the release of current from one wire cancels out the release of current from the adjacent wire. Another form of crosstalk, called alien crosstalk, can occur when signals from an adjacent cable (as opposed to adjacent wires) interfere with another cable's transmission. Alien crosstalk becomes a real threat when network administrators bundle more cables into smaller conduits.

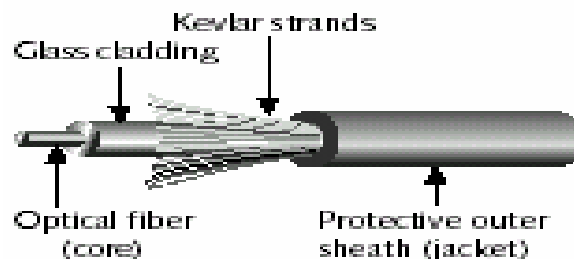


**Fig 5.7 Twisted-pair cable**

The more twists per inch in a pair of wires, the more resistant the pair will be to all forms of noise. Higher-quality, more expensive twisted-pair cable contains more twists per foot. The number of twists per meter or foot is known as the twist ratio. Because twisting the wire pairs more tightly requires more cable, however, a high twist ratio can result in greater attenuation. For optimal performance, cable manufacturers must strike a balance between crosstalk and attenuation reduction. Because twisted-pair is used in such a wide variety of environments and for a variety of purposes, it comes in hundreds of different designs.

### iii. Fiber-Optic Cable

Fiber-optic cable, or simply *fiber*, contains one or several glass fibers at its center, or core. Data are transmitted via pulsing light sent from a laser or light-emitting diode (LED) through the central fibers. Surrounding the fibers is a layer of glass called cladding. The cladding glass is a different density from the glass in the strands. It acts as a mirror, reflecting light back to the core in patterns that vary depending on the transmission mode. This reflection allows the fiber to bend around corners without diminishing the integrity of the light-based signal. Outside the cladding, a plastic buffer protects the glass cladding and core. Since it is opaque, it also absorbs any light that might escape. To prevent the cable from stretching, and to further protect the inner core, strands of Kevlar (an advanced polymeric fiber) surround the plastic buffer. Finally, plastic sheath covers the strands of Kevlar.

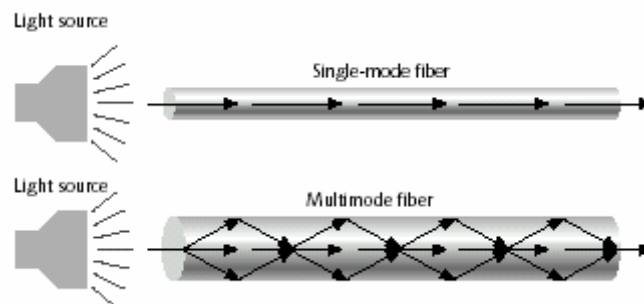


**Fig 5.8 A fiber-optic cable**

Like twisted-pair cable, fiber comes in a number of different types. Fiber cable variations fall into two categories: single-mode and multimode. Single-mode fiber uses a narrow core (less than 10 microns in diameter) through which light generated by a laser travels over one path, reflecting very little. Because it reflects little, the light does not disperse as the signal travels along the fiber. This continuity allows single mode fiber to accommodate high bandwidths and long distances (without requiring repeaters).

Single-mode fiber may be used to connect a carrier's two facilities. However, it costs too much to be considered for use on typical data networks. Multimode fiber contains a core with a larger diameter than single mode fiber (between 50 and 100 microns in diameter) over which many pulses of light generated by a light emitting diode (LED) travel at different angles. Because light is being reflected many different ways in a multimode fiber cable, the waves become less easily distinguishable the longer they travel. Thus, multimode fiber is best suited for shorter distances than single-mode fiber. It is commonly found on cables that connect a router to a switch or a server on the backbone of a network. Because

of its reliability, fiber is currently used primarily as a cable that connects the many segments of a network. Experts predict, however, that it will replace UTP as the primary means of bringing data to the desktop within the next decade. Fiber-optic cable provides the benefits of nearly unlimited throughput, very high resistance to noise, and excellent security. Because fiber does not conduct electricity like copper wire, it does not emit a current. As a result, the signals it carries stay within the fiber and cannot easily be picked up except at the destination node. Copper, on the other hand, generates a signal that can be monitored by taps into the network. Fiber can also carry signals for longer distances than can coax or twisted-pair cable. In addition, you can use longer lengths of fiber with fewer repeaters than on a copper-based network. Finally, fiber is widely accepted by the high-speed networking industry. Thus, industry groups are establishing standards to ensure that fiber-networking equipment from multiple manufacturers can be integrated without difficulty.



**Fig 5.9 Single-mode and multimode fiber-optic cables**

The most significant drawback to the use of fiber is its high cost. Another disadvantage is that fiber can transmit data in only one direction at a time; to overcome this drawback, each cable must contain two strands—one to send data and one to receive it. Finally, unlike copper wiring, fiber is difficult to splice, which means quickly repairing a cable in the field (given little time or resources) is difficult if not impossible.

### **5.3.2 Unbounded Media**

**Unbounded**, or wireless, media does not use any physical connectors between the two devices communicating. Usually the transmission is sent through the atmosphere, but sometimes it can be just across a room. Wireless media is used when a physical obstruction or distance blocks the use of normal cable media. Following are the types of unbounded media:

#### **1. Radio Waves**

- i. Short-wave
- ii. Very-high frequency (VHF) television and radio
- iii. Ultra-high frequency (UHF) television and radio
- Micro waves

#### **2. Microwaves**

- i. Terrestrial Microwaves
- ii. Satellite Microwaves

### 3. Infrared

- i. Point-to-point
- ii. Broadcast

### 1. Radio Waves

Radio waves have frequencies between 10 KHz and 1GHz. Radio waves include the following types:

- i. Short-wave
- ii. Very-high frequency (VHF) television and radio
- iii. Ultra-high frequency (UHF) television and radio

Most radio frequencies in the US and Canada are regulated. To gain permission to use a regulated frequency can take a long time and a large amount of money. The good news is that there are some frequencies that are not regulated and anyone can use.

The problem with unregulated frequencies is that they can get saturated. To ease this, there have been limits set on the amount of power that devices can broadcast in these frequencies. While letting more people use the frequencies, this cuts down on the usable range.

### 2. Microwaves

**Microwaves** travel at higher frequencies than radio waves and provide better throughput as a wireless network media. Microwave transmissions require the sender to be within sight of the receiver. These systems use licensed frequencies, which makes them more costly than radio wave systems. Microwaves are utilized on the following two types of communication systems:

#### i. Terrestrial Microwaves

Terrestrial microwave transmissions are used to transmit wireless signals across a few miles. These systems are often used to cross roads or other barriers that make cable connections difficult. Terrestrial systems require that direct parabolic antennas be pointed at each other. Relay towers can be used as repeaters to extend the distance of the transmission. These systems operate in the low giga hertz range and require licensed frequencies. Installation can be difficult because terrestrial microwave transmissions require that the antennas have a clear line of sight.

#### ii. Satellite Microwaves

*Satellite microwave* transmissions are used to transmit signals throughout the world. These systems use satellites in orbit about 50,000 kilometers (km) above the earth. Satellite dishes are used to send the signal to the satellite where it is then sent back down to the receiver's satellite. These transmissions also use directional parabolic antennas within line-of-site. The large distances the signals travel can cause propagation delays. These delays vary from under a second to several seconds. These delays are roughly the same for transmissions down the street as for transmissions across the world. This equipment is expensive and

quite complicated. Launching a satellite into orbit is a task beyond many organizations. These systems can provide average bandwidth but lack advanced security and protection from interference. These systems can provide a good bandwidth connection to link LANs across the world, but this capability comes with (literally) a hefty price.

### **3. Infrared**

*Infrared* frequencies are just below visible light. These high frequencies allow high-speed data transmissions. This technology is similar to the use of a remote control for a television. Infrared transmissions can be affected by objects obstructing the sender or receiver and by interference from light sources. These systems are immune to electromagnetic interference and can be used successfully where certain types of cable media fail. These transmissions fall into the following two categories:

#### **i. Point-to-point Infrared**

Point-to-point infrared transmissions utilize highly focused beams to transfer signals directly between two systems. Many laptop systems and **PDA**s (personal data assistants) use point-to-point transmissions. Point-to-point systems require direct alignment between devices. Point-to-point can provide an alternative to terrestrial microwave as well. If two buildings have direct line-of-site availability, point-to-point can utilize high-power infrared beams. This does not require an FCC license and is immune to EMI. These systems are susceptible to interference from anything that can block the path of the beam. This provides a high level of security, as any attempt to interfere with the beam would be noticeable. One must be careful when working with high-power laser beams, as they can cause damage to eye and skin tissue.

#### **ii. Broadcast**

Broadcast infrared transmissions use a **spread signal**, one broadcast in all directions, instead of a direct beam. This helps to reduce the problems of proper alignment and obstructions. It also allows multiple receivers of a signal. Some systems utilize a single broadcast transceiver to communicate with many devices. This type of system is easy to install. Broadcast infrared transmissions operate in the same frequencies as point-to-point infrared and are susceptible to interference from light sources. The drawback of this system is that the diffused signal reduces transmission rates to 1Mbps. This system overcomes some of the problems of point-to-point transmissions, but the trade-off is a decrease in speed.

---

## **5.4 MODULATION TECHNIQUES**

---

Data modulation is a technology used to modify analog signals in order to make them suitable for carrying data over a communication path. In modulation, a simple wave, called a carrier wave, is combined with another analog signal to produce a unique signal that gets transmitted from one node to another. The carrier wave has preset properties (including frequency, amplitude, and phase). Its purpose is merely to help convey information; in other words, it does not represent information. Another signal, known as the information or data wave, is added to the carrier wave. When the information wave is added, it modifies

one property of the carrier wave (for example, the frequency, amplitude, or phase). The result is a new, blended signal that contains properties of both the carrier wave and added data. When the signal reaches its destination, the receiver separates the data from the carrier wave.

Modulation can be used to make a signal conform to a specific pathway, as in the case of frequency modulation (FM) radio, in which the data must travel along a particular frequency. Modulation may also be used to issue multiple signals to the same communications channel and prevent the signals from interfering with one another. In frequency modulation, the frequency of the carrier signal is modified by the application of the data signal.

There are three forms of modulation- amplitude, frequency and phase modulation. They are described below:

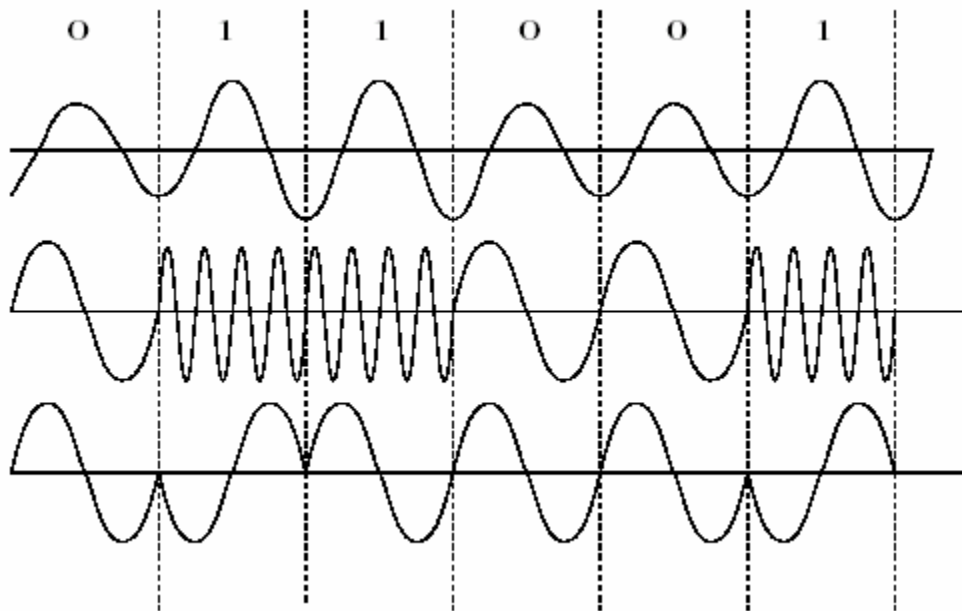
**1) Amplitude modulation (AM)** is a technique used in electronic communication, most commonly for transmitting information via a radio carrier wave. AM works by varying the strength of the transmitted signal in relation to the information being sent. It is a method of impressing data onto an alternating-current (AC) carrier waveform. The highest frequency of the modulating data is normally less than 10 percent of the carrier frequency. The instantaneous amplitude (overall signal power) varies depending on the instantaneous amplitude of the modulating data. For example, changes in the signal strength can be used to reflect the sounds to be reproduced by a speaker, or to specify the light intensity of television pixels.

**2) Frequency Modulation (FM)** In telecommunications, **frequency modulation (FM)** conveys information over a carrier wave by varying its frequency (contrast this with amplitude modulation, in which the amplitude of the carrier is varied while its frequency remains constant). In analog applications, the instantaneous frequency of the carrier is directly proportional to the instantaneous value of the input signal. Digital data can be sent by shifting the carrier's frequency among a set of discrete values, a technique known as frequency-shift keying.

It is a method of impressing data onto an alternating-current (AC) wave by varying the instantaneous frequency of the wave. This scheme can be used with analog or digital data. Examples; FM is also used at audio frequencies to synthesize sound. This technique, known as FM synthesis, was popularized by early digital synthesizers and became a standard feature for several generations of personal computer sound cards.

**3) Phase modulation (PM)** It is a form of modulation that represents information as variations in the instantaneous phase of a carrier wave.

Unlike its more popular counterpart, frequency modulation (FM), PM is not very widely used. This is because it tends to require more complex receiving hardware and there can be ambiguity problems in determining whether, for example, the signal has changed phase by  $+180^\circ$  or  $-180^\circ$ . This scheme can be used with analog or digital data.



**Fig 5.10 (a) Analog Source signal (b ) FM (c) PM**

### 5.4.1 Modems

The word "modem" is a contraction of the words **modulator-demodulator**. A modem is typically used to send digital data over a phone line.

The sending modem **modulates** the data into a signal that is compatible with the phone line, and the receiving modem **demodulates** the signal back into digital data. **Wireless modems** convert digital data into radio signals and back.



**Fig 5.11 Modem**

A **modem** is the peripheral used to transfer information between several computers over a wire transmission medium (e.g. telephone lines). Computers operate digitally using binary language (a series of zeros and ones), but modems are analogue. The digital signals pass from one value to another. There is no middle or half-way point. It is "**All or Nothing**" (one or zero). On the other hand, analogue signals do not move "in steps", but rather continuously.



Modems came into existence in the 1960s as a way to allow terminals to connect to computers over the phone lines. A typical arrangement is shown in Fig. 5.11.

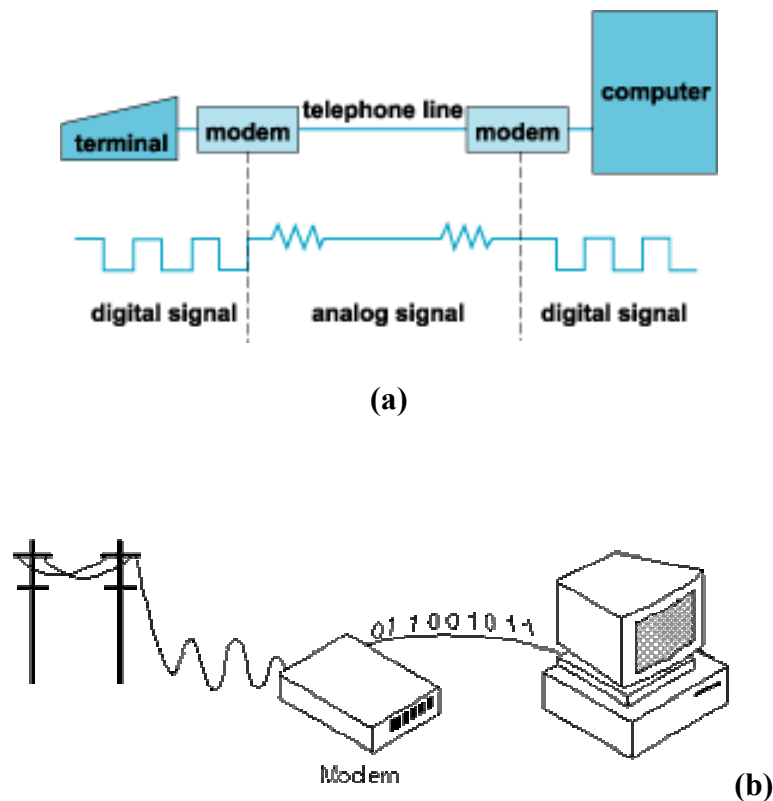


Fig 5.12 An Architecture of Modem

### 5.4.2 Analog versus Digital Transmission

As a technology, analog is the process of taking an audio or video signal (the human voice) and translating it into electronic pulses. Digital on the other hand is breaking the signal into a binary format where the audio or video data is represented by a series of "1"s and "0"s.

**Analog** is a transmission standard that uses electrical impulses to emulate the audio waveform of sound. When you use a phone, the variations in your voice are transformed by a microphone into similar variations in an electrical signal and carried down the line to the exchange.

A method of storing, processing and transmitting information through the use of distinct electronic or optical pulses that represent the binary digits 0 and 1 is known as **Digital Signal**

### **Advantages of Analog**

1. Uses less bandwidth
2. More accurate

### **Disadvantages of Analog**

1. The effects of random noise can make signal loss and distortion impossible to recover

### **Advantages of Digital**

1. Less expensive
2. More reliable
3. Easy to manipulate
4. Flexible
5. Compatibility with other digital systems
6. Only digitized information can be transported through a noisy channel without degradation
7. Integrated networks

### **Disadvantages of Digital**

1. Sampling Error
2. Digital communications require greater bandwidth than analogue to transmit the same information.
3. The detection of digital signals requires the communications system to be synchronized, whereas generally speaking this is not the case with analogue systems.

---

## **5.5 MULTIPLEXING**

---

A form of transmission that allows multiple signals to travel simultaneously over one medium is known as multiplexing. In order to accommodate multiple signals, the single medium is logically separated into multiple channels, or sub channels. In telecommunications and computer networks, **multiplexing** (also known as **mixing**) is a process where multiple analog message signals or digital data streams are combined into one signal over a shared medium. There are many different types of multiplexing, and the type used in any given situation depends on what the media, transmission and reception equipment can handle. The aim is to share an expensive resource. For each type of multiplexing, a device that can combine many signals on a channel, a multiplexer (mux), is required at the sending end of the channel. At the receiving end, a demultiplexer (demux) separates the combined signals and regenerates them in their original form.

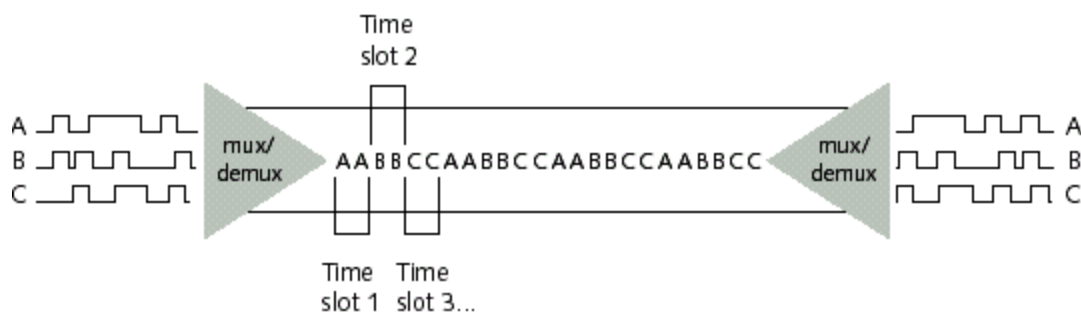
Multiplexing is commonly used on networks to increase the amount of data that can be transmitted in a given time span.

### **5.5.1 Time division multiplexing (TDM)**

**Time-Division Multiplexing (TDM)** is a type of digital or (rarely) analog multiplexing in which two or more signals or bit streams are transferred apparently simultaneously as sub-

channels in one communication channel, but are physically taking turns on the channel. The time domain is divided into several recurrent **timeslots** of fixed length, one for each sub-channel divides a channel into multiple intervals of time, or time slots. It then assigns a separate time slot to every node on the network and in that time slot, carries data from that node.

**For example**, if five stations are connected to a network over one wire, five different time slots would be established in the communications channel. Workstation A may be assigned time slot 1, workstation B time slot 2, workstation C time slot 3, and so on. Time slots are reserved for their designated nodes no matter whether the node has data to transmit or not. If a node does not have data to send, nothing will be sent during its time slot. This arrangement can be inefficient if some nodes on the network rarely send data.

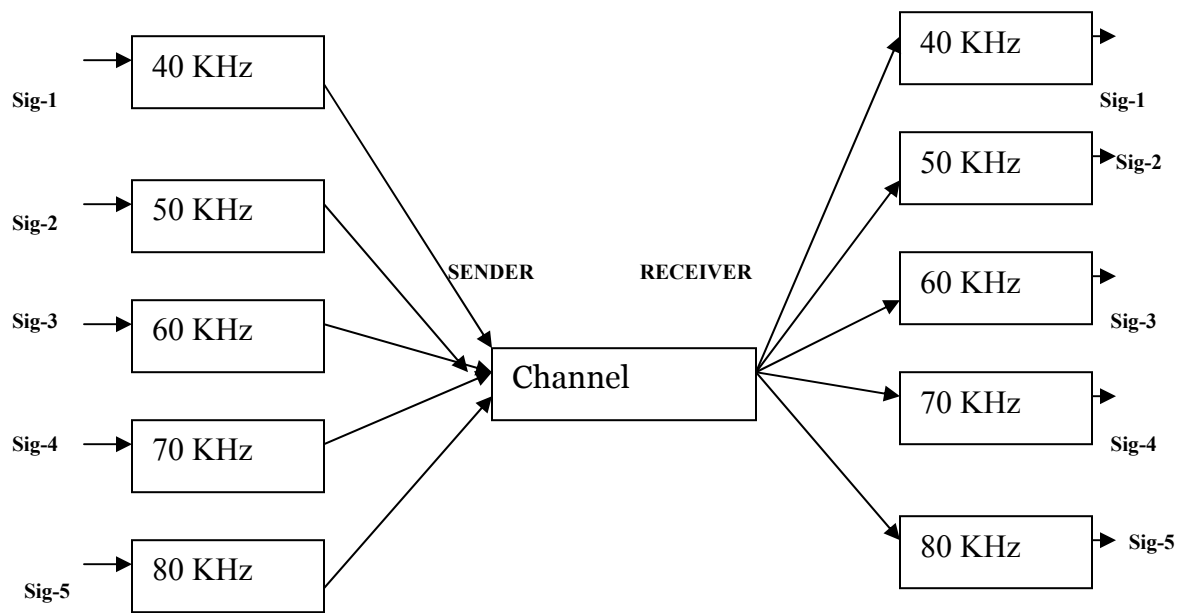


**Fig 5.13 Time division multiplexing**

### 5.5.2 Frequency Division Multiplexing (FDM)

In FDM, available bandwidth of a physical medium is divided into several smaller, disjoint logical bandwidths. Each component bandwidth is used as a separate communication line (channel). Figure 5.14 illustrates FDM process.

The best example of FDM is the manner in which multiple radio stations are supported simultaneously. Each radio station is assigned a frequency range within a bandwidth of radiofrequencies. Several radio stations may be transmitted speech signals simultaneously over physical channel “ether”. Note that the concept of “ether” an invisible, ever present, and un-provable medium was proposed to explain the theory of transmission of waves in space. The electromagnetic propagation of wave in space is now a more acceptable and proven concepts but the term “ether” has come to stay. A radio receiver antenna receives signals transmitted by all stations. Finally tuning dial in a radio set is used to isolate signals of the station tuned. In FDM, signals to be transmitted must be analog signals. Hence, digital signals must be converted to analog form, if they are to use FDM



**Figure 5.14 Illustrates FDM Process**

---

## 5.6 REVIEW QUESTIONS

---

1. Differentiate among simplex, half-duplex, and full-duplex modes of data transmission.
2. Explain the term bandwidth and baud.
3. What is an optical fiber? How it is used for data communication.
4. List the difference between FDM and TDM. Which method is suitable for communication between computers and why?
5. Write short note on:
  - a) Microwave system;
  - b) Coaxial cable; and
  - c) Modem.

---

## COMPUTER NETWORKS

---

### Structure

#### 6.1 Need for Computer Communication Networks

##### 6.1.1 Advantages of Networking

#### 6.2 Types of Network

#### 6.3 Network Topologies

#### 6.4 Network Protocol

##### 6.4.1 Key Features of Protocols

##### 6.4.2 Roles of Protocol

##### 6.4.3 Need for Protocol Architecture

#### 6.5 OSI and TCP/IP Model

##### 6.5.1 ISO and Other Models

##### 6.5.2 How the OSI Model Works

##### 6.5.3 Key Words and Concepts from the OSI Model

##### 6.5.4 The TCP/IP Model

##### 6.5.5 Internetworking With TCP/IP

#### 6.6 The Future of Internet Technology

#### 6.7 Internet Protocols

##### 6.7.1 Low Level Protocols

##### 6.7.2 High Level Protocols

#### 6.8 World Wide Web

#### 6.9 E-Mail

#### 6.10 Search Engines

##### 6.10.1 Types of Search Engines

#### 6.11 Review Questions

---

## 6.1 NEED FOR COMPUTER COMMUNICATION NETWORKS

---

**Definition:** A **computer network** is a collection of computers and devices connected to each other. The network allows computers to communicate with each other and share resources and information

**Need:** If your business has more than one computer, chances are you could benefit from networking them. A local area network (LAN) connects your company's computers, allowing them to share and exchange a variety of information. While one computer can be useful on its own, several networked computers can be much more useful. Resource sharing and communication are two principal reasons of building and using computer networks.

Here are some of the ways a computer network can help your business:

- **File sharing:** Have you ever needed to access a file stored on another computer? A network makes it easy for everyone to access the same file and prevents people from accidentally creating different versions.
- **Printer sharing:** If you use a computer, chances are you also use a printer. With a network, several computers can share the same printer. Although you might need a more expensive printer to handle the added workload, it's still cheaper to use a network printer than to connect a separate printer to every computer in your office.
- **Communication and collaboration:** It's hard for people to work together if no one knows what anyone else is doing. A network allows employees to share files, view other people's work, and exchange ideas more efficiently. In a larger office, you can use e-mail and instant messaging tools to communicate quickly and to store messages for future reference.
- **Organization:** A variety of scheduling software is available that makes it possible to arrange meetings without constantly checking everyone's schedules. This software usually includes other helpful features, such as shared address books and to-do lists.
- **Remote access:** Having your own network allows greater mobility while maintaining the same level of productivity. With remote access in place, users are able to access the same files, data, and messages even when they're not in the office. This access can even be given to mobile handheld devices.
- **Data protection:** You should know by now that it's vital to back up your computer data regularly. A network makes it easier to back up all of your company's data on an offsite server, a set of tapes, CDs, or other backup systems. Of course, another aspect of data protection is data security.

### 6.1.1 Advantages of Networking

**Speed:** Networks provide a very rapid method for sharing and transferring files. Without a network, files are shared by copying them to floppy disks, then carrying or sending the disks from one computer to another. This method of transferring files in this manner is very time-consuming.

**Cost:** The network version of most software programs are available at considerable savings when compared to buying individually licensed copies. Besides monetary savings, sharing a program on a network allows for easier upgrading of the program. The changes have to be done only once, on the file server, instead of on all the individual workstations.

**Centralized Software Management:** One of the greatest benefits of installing a network is the fact that all of the software can be loaded on one computer (the file server). This eliminates that need to spend time and energy installing updates and tracking files on independent computers throughout the building.

**Resource Sharing:** Sharing resources is another area in which a network exceeds stand-alone computers. Most companies cannot afford enough laser printers, fax machines, modems, scanners, and CD-ROM players for each computer. However, if these or similar peripherals are added to a network, they can be shared by many users.

**Flexible Access:** Networks allow employees/students to access their files from computers throughout the company/college. Students can begin an assignment in their classroom, save part of it on a public access area of the network, and then go to the media center after college to finish their work.

**Security:** Files and programs on a network can be designated as "copy inhibit," so that you do not have to worry about illegal copying of programs. Also, passwords can be established for specific directories to restrict access to authorized users.

**Requires Administrative Time:** Proper maintenance of a network requires considerable time and expertise. Many companies have installed a network, only to find that they did not budget for the necessary administrative support.

**File Server May Fail:** Although a file server is no more susceptible to failure than any other computer, when the file server "goes down," the entire network may come to a halt. When this happens, the entire school may lose access to necessary programs and files.

---

## 6.2 TYPES OF NETWORK

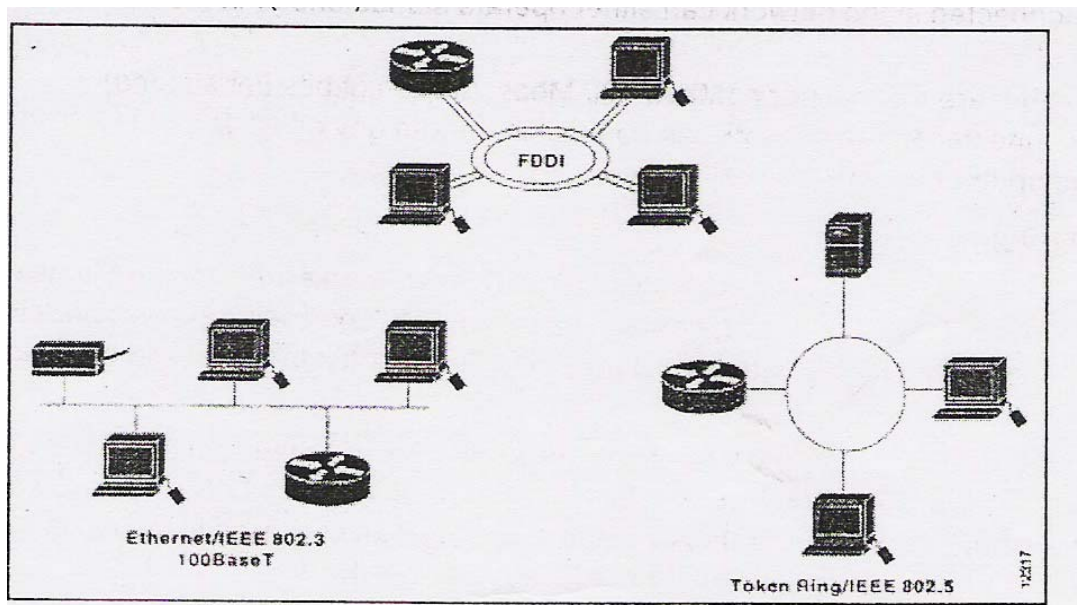
---

When we talk about computer networks apart from the communication media we are concerned with how computers are connected with each other. In the sense we are having basically following types of networks:

- LAN (Local Area Network)
- WAN (Wide Area Network)
- MAN (Metropolitan Area Network)

### **Local Area Network (LAN)**

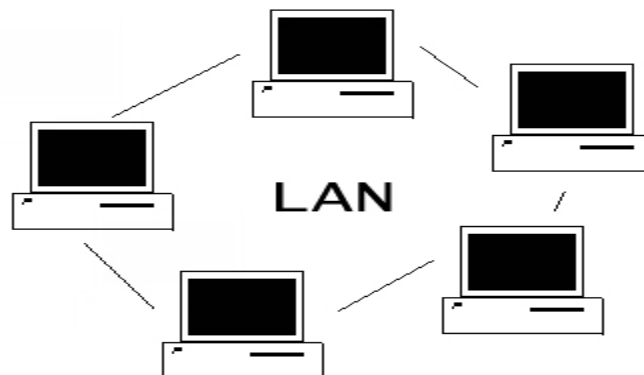
LAN stands for **Local Area Network**. It's a group of computers which all belong to the same organization, and which are linked within a small geographic area using a network, and often the same technology (the most widespread being Ethernet). This is a computer network covering a small physical area, like a home, office, or small group of buildings, such as a school, or an airport.



**Fig 6.1 Three most popular LAN implementations**

A local area network is a network in its simplest form. Data transfer speeds over a local area network can reach up to 10 Mbps (such as for an Ethernet network) and 1 Gbps (as with FDDI or Gigabit Ethernet). A local area network can reach as many as 100, or even 1000, users. By expanding the definition of a LAN to the services that it provides, two different operating modes can be defined:

- In a **"peer-to-peer"** network, in which communication is carried out from one computer to another, without a central computer, and where each computer has the same role.
- In a **"client/server"** environment, in which a central computer provides network services to users.



**Fig 6.2 LAN**



## Metropolitan Area Network (MAN)

A Metropolitan Area Network is a system of LANs connected throughout a city or metropolitan area. A **metropolitan area network (MAN)** is a network that connects two or more local area networks or campus area networks together but does not extend beyond the boundaries of the immediate town/city. Routers, switches and hubs are connected to create a metropolitan area network. MANs have the requirement of using telecommunication media such as voice channels or data channels. Branch offices are connected to head offices through MANs. Examples of organizations that use MANs are universities and colleges, grocery chains, and banks.

**Location:** Separate buildings distributed throughout a city. MAN takes over the rein in hand where LAN is not optimal feasible both technical and financially.

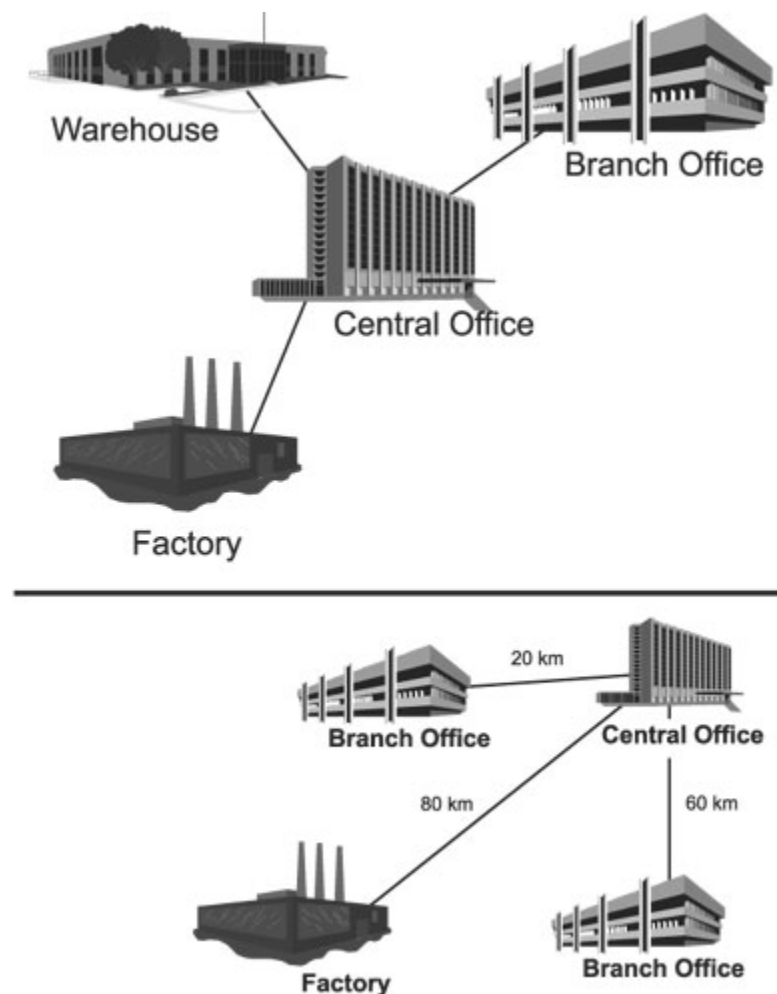


Fig 6.3 MAN

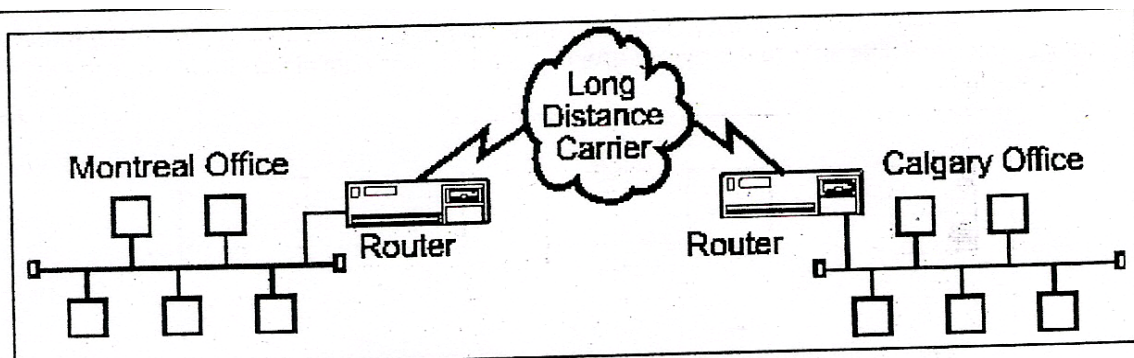
The main criterion for a MAN is that the connection between LANs is through a local exchange carrier (the local phone company).

### **WAN (Wide Area Network)**

As the term implies, a WAN spans a large physical distance. The Internet is the largest WAN, spanning the Earth. A WAN is a geographically-dispersed collection of LANs. A network device called a router connects LANs to a WAN. In IP networking, the router maintains both a LAN address and a WAN address.

A WAN differs from a LAN in several important ways. Most WANs (like the Internet) are not owned by any one organization but rather exist under collective or distributed ownership and management.

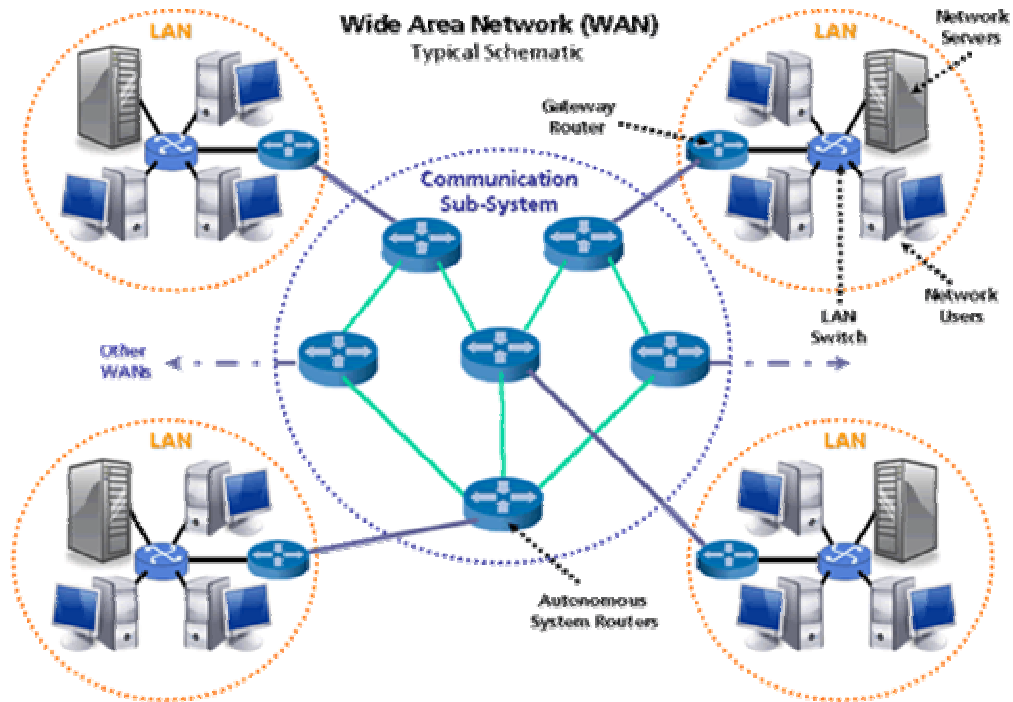
A Wide Area Network is a network system connecting cities, countries, or continents together. WANs are connected together using one of the telecommunications media. The main difference between a MAN and a WAN is that the WAN uses Long Distance Carriers. Otherwise the same protocols and equipment are used a MAN.



**Fig. 6.4 WANs use Long Distance Carriers**



(a)



(b)

**Fig 6.5 Examples of WAN**

They may link the computers by means of cables, optical fibers, or satellites, but their users commonly access the networks via a modem (a device that allows computers to communicate over telephone lines). The largest wide – area network is the Internet, a collection of networks and gateways linking millions of computer users on every continent.

---

### 6.3 NETWORK TOPOLOGIES

---

Topology of a network refers to the way in which the network's nodes (computers or other devices that need to communicate) are linked together. It determines the various data paths available between any pair of nodes in the network. Choice of a topology for a computer network depends on a combination of factors such as:

1. Desired performance of the system
2. Desired reliability of the system
3. Size (number of nodes and their geographical distribution) of the system.
4. Expandability of the system
5. Cost of components and services required to implement the network.
6. Availability of communication lines.
7. Delays involved in routing information from one node to another.

Network topologies are categorized into the following basic types:

1. Bus Topology;
2. Ring Topology;
3. Star Topology;
4. Tree Topology;
5. Mesh Topology.

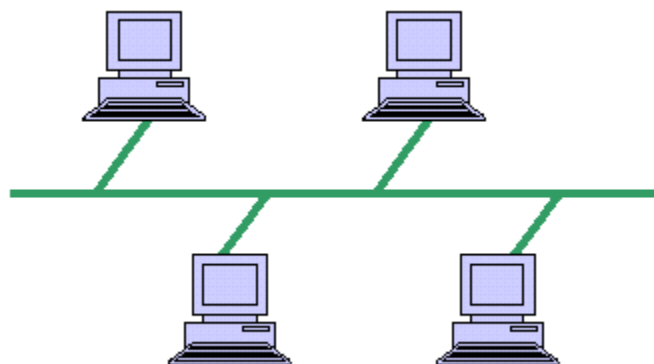
**Bus Topology:** Bus networks (not to be confused with the system bus of a computer) use a common backbone to connect all devices. A single cable, the backbone functions as a shared communication medium that devices attach or tap into with an interface connector. A device wanting to communicate with another device on the network sends a broadcast message onto the wire that all other devices see, but only the intended recipient actually accepts and processes the message. Ethernet bus topologies are relatively easy to install and don't require much cabling compared to the alternatives

#### **Benefits of Bus Topology**

1. Cabling costs are minimized because of the **common trunk**.
2. Failure of a node does not affect communication among other nodes in the network
3. Addition of new nodes to the network is easy.

#### **Disadvantages of Bus topology**

1. Difficult to trouble shoot because no central distribution points exist.
2. Cable breaks can disable the entire segment because they remove the required termination from each of the two cable fragments.



**Fig 6.6 Bus Topology**

**Ring Topology:** In a ring network, every device has exactly two neighbors for communication purposes. All messages travel through a ring in the same direction (either "clockwise" or "counterclockwise"). A failure in any cable or device breaks the loop and can take down the entire network.

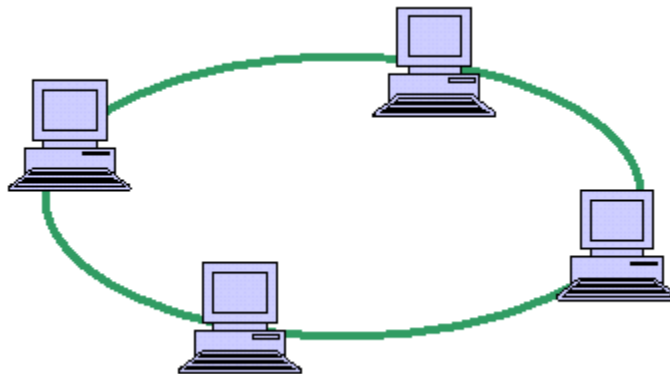
Ring topologies are found in some office buildings or school campuses.

### **Benefits of Ring Topology**

1. Each repeater duplicates the data signals so that very little signal degradation occurs.
2. Ring network works well where there is no central node for making routing decisions.
3. It is more reliable because communication is not dependant on a single central node. If a link between any two nodes fails, or if one of the nodes fails, alternate routing is possible.

### **Disadvantages of Ring topology**

1. A break in the ring can disable the entire network. Many ring designs incorporate extra cabling that can be switched in if a primary cable fails.
2. Because each node must have the capability of functioning as a repeater, the networking devices tend to be more expensive.
3. It requires more complicated control software



**Fig 6.7 Ring Topology**

**Star Topology:** Many home networks use the star topology. A star network features a central connection point called a "hub" that may be a hub, switch or router. Devices typically connect to the hub with Unshielded Twisted Pair (UTP) Ethernet. The star topology is a popular method of connecting the cabling in a computer network. In a star, each device connects to a central point via a point-to-point link. Depending on the logical architecture used, several names are used for the central point including the following:

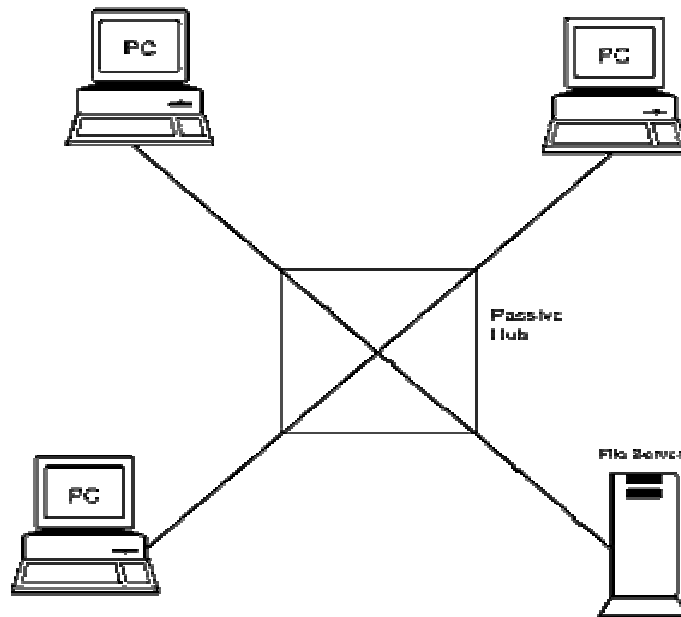
- Hub
- Multipoint Repeater
- Concentrator
- Multi-Access Unit (MAU)

Compared to the bus topology, a star network generally requires more cable, but a failure in any star network cable will only take down one computer's network access and not the entire LAN. (If the hub fails, however, the entire network also fails).

### **Benefits of Star Topology**

1. Each device is isolated on its own cable. This makes it easy to isolate individual devices from the network by disconnecting them from the wiring hub.
2. All data goes through the central point, which can be equipped with diagnostic devices that make it easy to trouble shoot and manage the network.

3. Hierarchical organization allows isolation of traffic on the channel. This is beneficial when several, but not all, computers place a heavy load on the network. Traffic from those heavily used computers can be separated from the rest or dispersed throughout for a more even flow of traffic.
4. It has minimal line cost because only  $n-1$  lines are required for connecting  $n$  nodes.



**Fig 6.8 Star Topology**

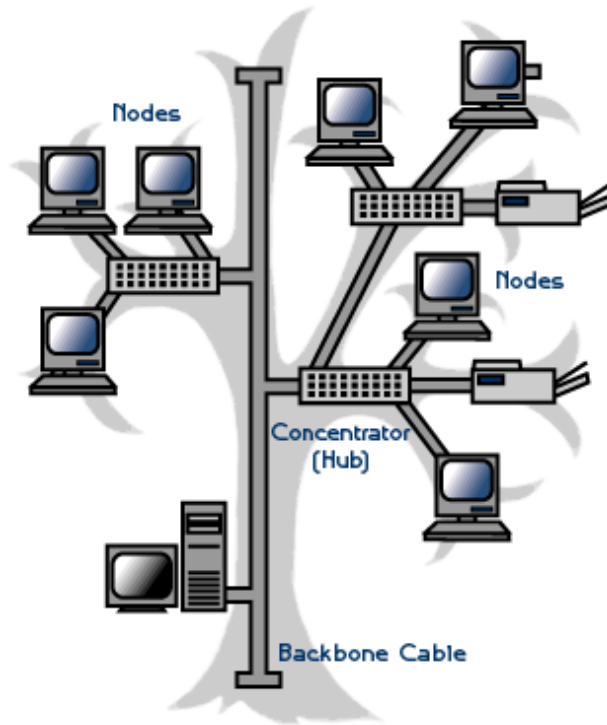
#### **Disadvantages of Star topology**

1. Because point-to-point wiring is utilized for each node, more cable is required.
2. Hub failures can disable large segments of the network.

**Tree Topology:** Tree topologies integrate multiple star topologies together onto a bus. In its simplest form, only hub devices connect directly to the tree bus and each hub functions as the "root" of a tree of devices. This bus/star hybrid approach supports future expandability of the network much better than a bus (limited in the number of devices due to the broadcast traffic it generates) or a star (limited by the number of hub connection points) alone.

#### **Benefits of Tree Network topology**

1. A Tree Topology is supported by many network vendors and even hardware vendors.
2. A point to point connection is possible with Tree Networks.
3. All the computers have access to the larger and their immediate networks.
4. Best topology for branched out networks.



**Fig 6.9 Tree Topology**

#### **Disadvantages of Tree Topology**

1. In a Network Topology the length of the network depends on the type of cable that is being used.
2. The Tree Topology network is entirely dependant on the trunk which is the main backbone of the network. If that has to fail then the entire network would fail.
3. Since the Tree Topology network is big it is difficult to configure and can get complicated after a certain point.

**Mesh Topology:** Mesh topologies involve the concept of routes. Unlike each of the previous topologies, messages sent on a mesh network can take any of several possible paths from source to destination. (Recall that even in a ring, although two cable paths exist, messages can only travel in one direction.) Some WANs, most notably the Internet, employ mesh routing.

A mesh network in which every device connects to every other is called a full mesh. As shown in the Fig 6.10 below, partial mesh networks also exist in which some devices connect only indirectly to others.

#### **Benefits of Mesh Topology**

1. Provides redundant paths between devices.
2. The network can be expanded without disruption to current users.

3. It is fault tolerant; since there is no gateway, nodes can connect to each other with no regard to the state of the rest of the network. In addition, nodes can create their own paths through the network because there is no gateway computer.

### Disadvantages of Mesh Topology

1. Requires more cable than the other LAN topologies
2. Complicated implementation
3. Setup time can be quite time consuming.

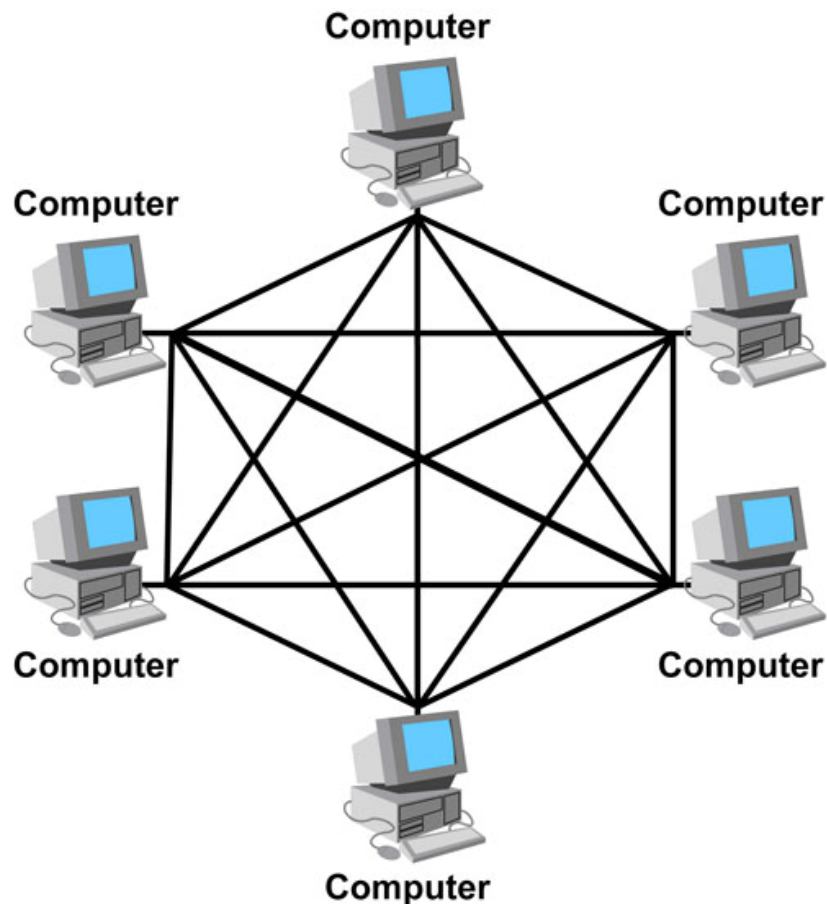


Fig 6.10 Mesh Topology

---

## 6.4 NETWORK PROTOCOL

---

A **protocol** is the formal code of behavior for a system, or to be more precise the set form in which data must be presented for handling by a particular computer configuration. A protocol defines the set of rules governing the exchange of data between two entities such as user application programs, file transfer packages, email etc.

### 6.4.1 Key Features of Protocols

- a) **Syntax.** This is concerned with the format of the data blocks;
- b) **Semantics.** This includes control data for co-ordination and error handling;



- c) **Timing.** This allows for speed matching and sequencing.

#### 6.4.2 Roles of Protocol

In any computer network, data communication software normally performs the following functions for the efficient and error free transmission of data:

- i. **Data sequencing:** It refers to breaking a long transmission into blocks and maintaining control that is along message is split up into smaller packets of fixed size. These packets are further fragmented into data frames, this techniques is widely used in conjunction with error control techniques to reduce the amount of data that must be retransmitted in case of a detected error.
- ii. **Data routing:** Routing algorithms are designed to find the most efficient paths between sources and destinations. They can handle varying degree of traffic on the present network configuration with optimum time utilization. Normally, they are dynamic enough to accommodate network changes and growth.
- iii. **Flow control:** A communication protocol also prevents a fast sender from overwhelming a slow receiver. It ensures resources sharing and protection against congestion by regulating the flow of data on the communication lines.
- iv. **Error control:** Error detecting and recovering routines are also important elements of communication protocols. The most common methods for correcting errors are to retransmit a block. This method requires coordination of the two stations that the block having error is discarded by the receiving station and is repeated by the transmitting station.
- v. **Precedence and order of transmission:** There are well defined rules to condition all stations about when to transmit their data and when to receive data from other stations. It is ensured that all stations get a chance to use the communication lines and other resources of the network depending upon the priorities assigned to them.
- vi. **Connection establishment:** When two stations of a network want to communicate with each other, the communication protocol establishes and verifies a connection between the two.
- vii. **Data security:** Providing data security and privacy is also built into most communication software packages it prevents access of data by unauthorized users because it is relatively easy to tap a data communication line.
- viii. **Log information:** Data communications software's can also develop log information which consists of all jobs and data communications tasks that taken place. Such information is normally used for financial purposes and the various users of the network are charged accordingly.

### 6.4.3 Need for Protocol Architecture

When any two computer based entities wish to exchange data there must exist more than just a physical data path between the two communicating devices. There has to be some amount of co-operation between the two devices to enable the data transfer to take place. Some typical tasks that need to be performed for the data transfer to take place are:

- i. The source system must set up the communication path or inform a remote network of the identity of the system it wishes to communicate with.
- ii. The source system must determine whether the remote system is ready to accept data.
- iii. The file transfer application on the source system must make sure that the file management program within the remote system is ready to accept the data from the source.
- iv. If there is any incompatibility between the two system's file formats, one of the systems must perform a format translation.
- v. If data are lost, there must be some recovery system.
- vi. When the data transfer is complete, the systems must inform each other of their readiness to break the connection.
- vii. The tasks described above are a highly simplified view of the process that actually takes place and the logic to implement this co-operation is too complex to be installed as a single module. Instead, this logic is broken down into a set of sub-tasks, each of which is implemented separately.
- viii. In protocol architecture, the logic modules are arranged in a vertical stack. Each layer of this stack performs a subset of the entire logic necessary to communicate with a remote system. Layers should be designed so that changes in one layer do not affect any higher or lower layers.
- ix. This stack of logic modules must be implemented in both of the machines that wish to communicate. Communication is achieved by corresponding, or peer levels in both machines communicating with each other. Each of these peer levels communicate according to a set of rules or conventions that are known as a protocol.

---

## 6.5 OSI AND TCP/IP MODEL

---

### 6.5.1 ISO and Other Models

Figure 6.11 shows the reference model of the Open Systems Interconnection (OSI), which has been developed by the International Standards Organization (ISO). We will briefly define the functions and operation of each layer of this architecture in turn.

#### Layer 1: the Physical Layer

This layer is concerned with transmitting an electrical signal representation of data over a communication link. Typical conventions would be: voltage levels used to represent a “1” and a “0”, duration of each bit, transmission rate, mode of transmission, and functions of pins in a connector. An example of a physical layer protocol is the RS-232 standard.

#### Layer 2: the Data Link Layer

This layer is concerned with error-free transmission of data units. The data unit is an abbreviation of the official name of *data-link-service-data-units*; it is sometimes called the *data frame*. The function of the data link layer is to break the input data stream into data frames, transmit the frames sequentially, and process the acknowledgement frame sent back by the receiver. Data frames from this level when transferred to layer 3 are assumed to be error free.

#### Layer 3: the Network Layer

This layer is the *network control* layer, and is sometimes called the *communication subnet layer*. It is concerned with intra-network operation such as addressing and routing within the subnet. Basically, messages from the source host are converted to *packets*. The packets are then routed to their proper destinations.

#### Layer 4: the Transport Layer

This layer is a *transport end-to-end control layer* (i.e. source-to-destination). A program on the source computer communicates with a similar program on the destination computer using the message headers and control messages, whereas all the lower layers are only concerned with communication between a computer and its immediate neighbors, not the ultimate source and destination computers. The transport layer is often implemented as part of the operating system. The data link and physical layers are normally implemented in hardware.

#### Layer 5: the Session Layer

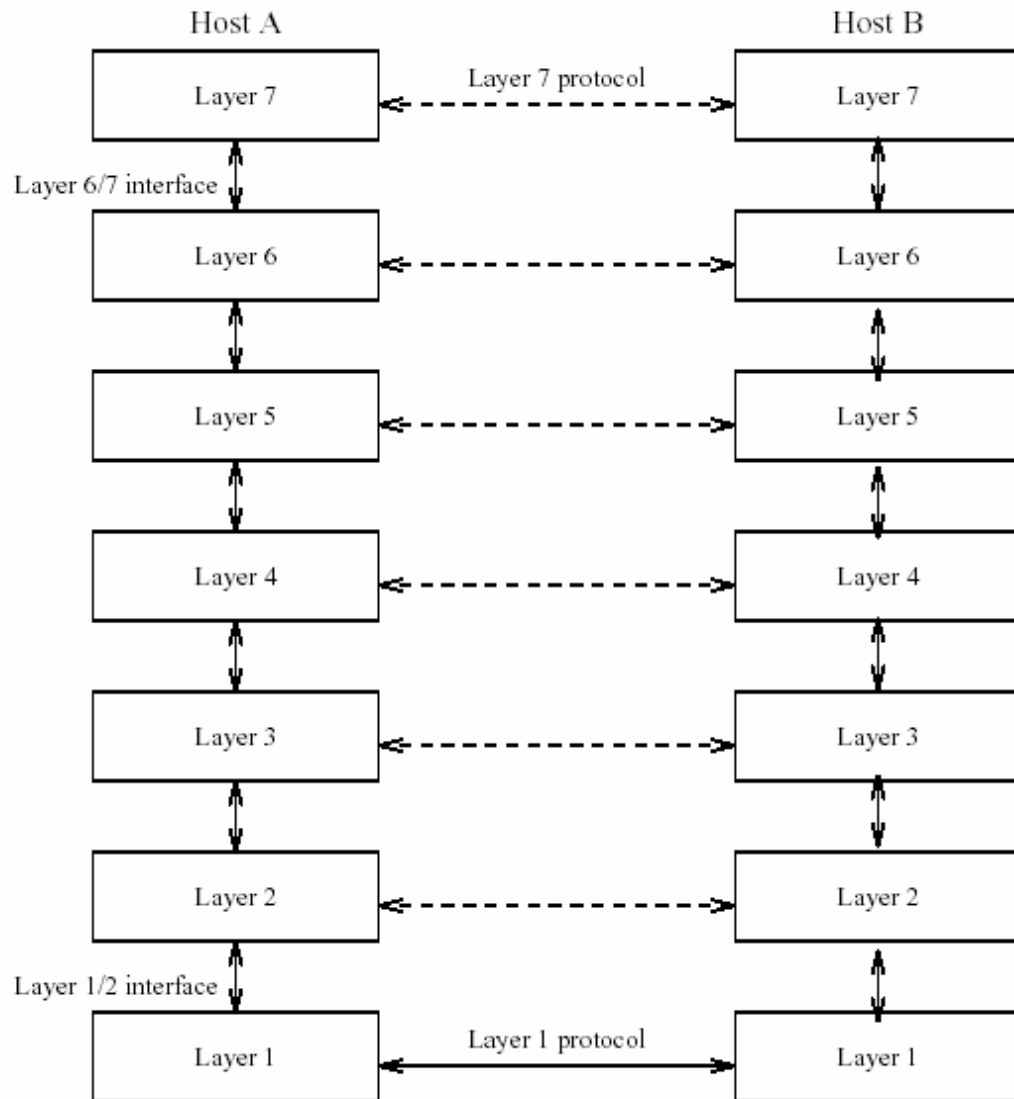
The session layer is the user’s interface into the network. This layer supports the dialogue through session control, if services can be allocated. A connection between users is usually called a *session*. A session might be used to allow a user to log into a system or to transfer files between two computers. A session can only be established if the user provides the remote addresses to be connected. The difference between session addresses and transport addresses is that session addresses are intended for users and their programs, whereas transport addresses are intended for transport stations.

**Layer 6: the Presentation Layer**

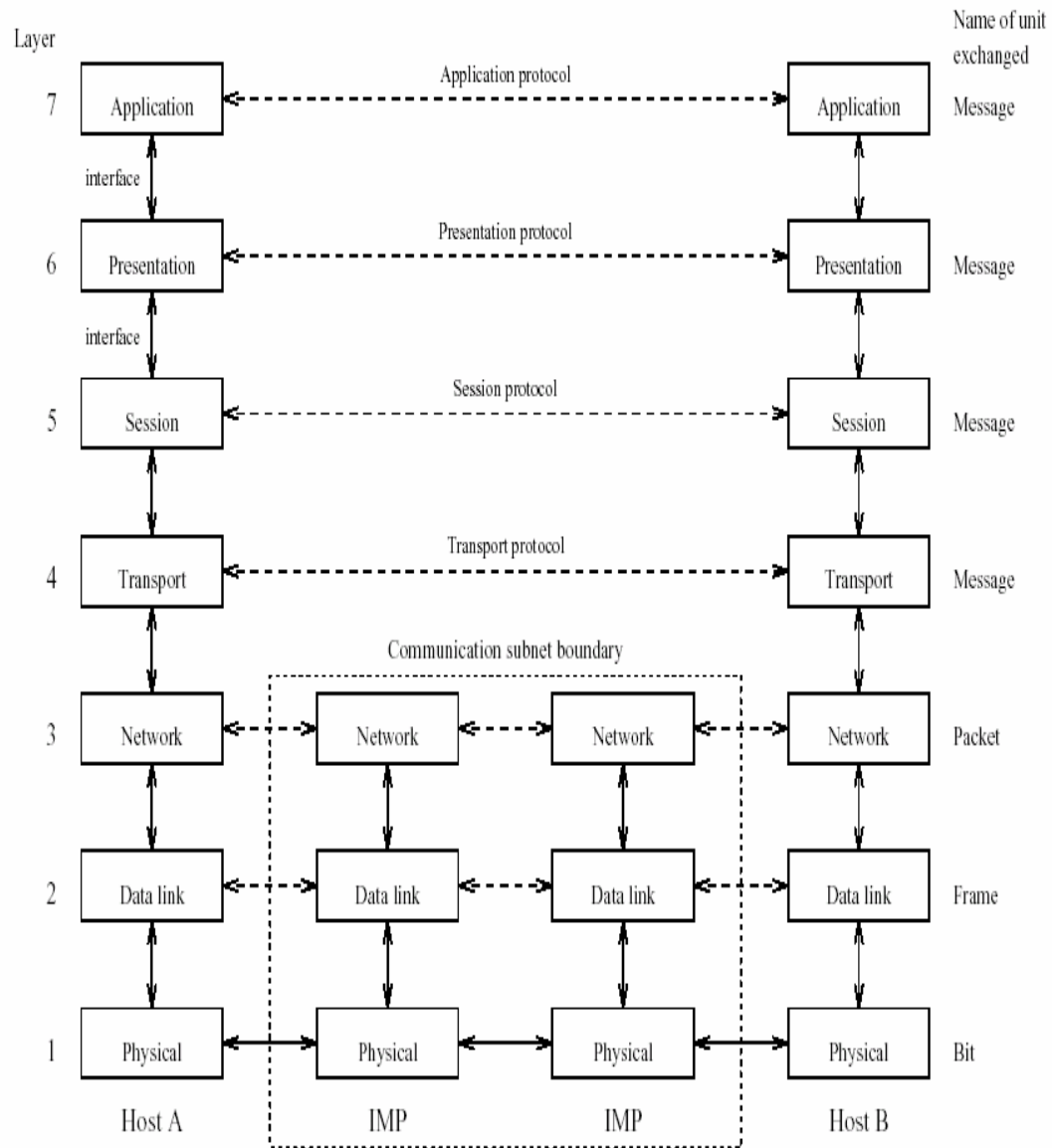
This layer is concerned with transformation of transferred information. The controls include message compression, encryption, and peripheral device coding and formatting.

**Layer 7: the Application Layer**

This layer is concerned with the application and system activities. The content of the application layer is up to the individual user.



**Fig 6.11 Layers, Protocols & interfaces**



**Fig. 6.12 The OSI model**

### 6.5.2 How the OSI Model Works

At the top of the model in the application layer are the actual programs operated by the computer users, such as email clients or web browsers. On the bottom is the physical layer comprised of the network media that makes the actual physical connection between computers. In between lie all the layers that make the actual communication occur.

Each computer on a network needs to have a protocol stack, sometimes called a **protocol suite**, which provides the software necessary for the computer to communicate on the network. TCP/IP is the most common protocol suite. These stacks are comprised of

several different protocols that perform the functions of the various layers of the OSI Reference Model.

When an application sends information from one computer to another, the data is passed down through the protocol stack on the sending computer, across the network, and then up through the protocol stack on the receiving computer. At each level of the process, information is attached to the data as it is sent. On the receiving end, this information is stripped off until the original data is finally available to the receiving application.

### **6.5.3 Key words and concepts from the OSI model**

#### **Application – Layer 7**

E-mail  
FTP  
Client/Server  
TCP

#### **Presentation – Layer 6**

Encryption/decryption  
ASCII to EBCDIC  
TCP

#### **Session – Layer 5**

Traffic Light or mediator  
Maintains order  
TCP

#### **Transport – Layer 4**

Checks for lost or incomplete transmissions  
End to end validity  
TCP

#### **Network – Layer 3**

WAN  
Node to node transmission  
CSU/DSU  
Switching functions  
IP, IPX, SNA, AppleTalk

#### **Data Link – Layer 2**

LAN  
Checks integrity of transmissions  
Router functions  
LAN types:  
Bus- Ethernet  
Ring-Token Ring, Sonet, FDDI

Star-Mainframe, Switched Ethernet  
MAC addressing  
CSMA/CD  
ATM

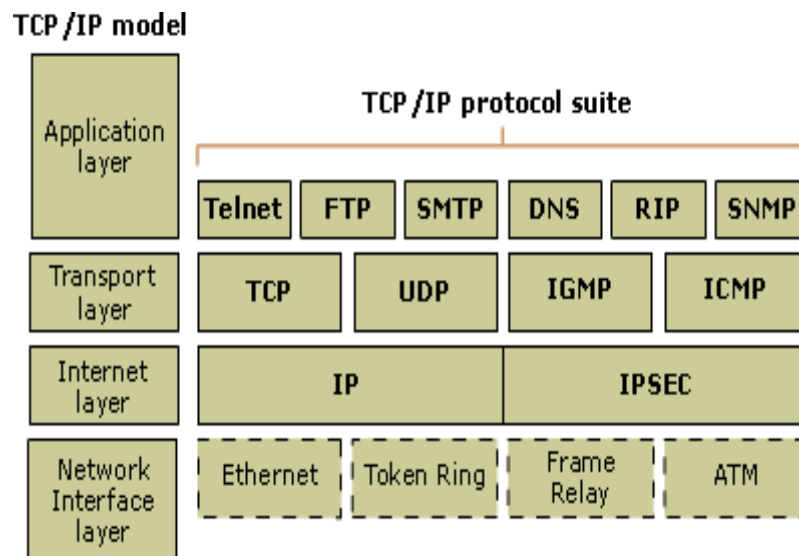
### Physical – Layer 1

Plugs and connectors (RJ-11: telephone use; RJ-45: Ethernet use)  
Sonet  
Wiring  
Unshielded vs. Shielded Twisted Pair (Cat 3, Cat 5, 10baseT)  
Thin-net vs. thick-net Coax (Ethernet)  
Single-mode Vs Multimode Fiber

## 6.5.4 The TCP/IP model

TCP/IP is based on a four-layer reference model. All protocols that belong to the TCP/IP protocol suite are located in the top three layers of this model.

As shown in the following figure, each layer of the TCP/IP model corresponds to one or more layers of the seven-layer Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) reference model proposed by the International Standards Organization (ISO).



**Fig 6.13 TCP/IP Model**

The types of services performed and protocols used at each layer within the TCP/IP model are described in more detail in the following table.

Layer	Description	Protocols
<b>Application</b>	Defines TCP/IP application protocols and how host programs interface with transport layer services to use the network.	HTTP, Telnet, FTP, TFTP, SNMP, DNS, SMTP, X Windows, other application protocols
<b>Transport</b>	Provides communication session management between host computers. Defines the level of service and status of the connection used when transporting data.	TCP, UDP, RTP
<b>Internet</b>	Packages data into IP datagram, which contain source and destination address information that is used to forward the datagram between hosts and across networks. Performs routing of IP datagram.	IP, ICMP, ARP, RARP
<b>Network interface</b>	Specifies details of how data is physically sent through the network, including how bits are electrically signaled by hardware devices that interface directly with a network medium, such as coaxial cable, optical fiber, or twisted-pair copper wire.	Ethernet, Token Ring, FDDI, X.25, Frame Relay, RS-232, v.35

#### Note

- The OSI reference model is not specific to TCP/IP. It was developed by the ISO in the late 1970s as a framework for describing all functions required of an open interconnected network. It is a widely known and accepted reference model in the data communications field and is used here only for comparison purposes.

### 6.5.5 Internetworking with TCP/IP

In today's computing environment, the hierarchical, terminal-based networks of the past are becoming less important. Modern computer networking technologies allow organizations to construct flexible enterprise inter networks that permit intelligent computing devices of all types to be interconnected to solve business problems. TCP/IP, which is an acronym for **Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol**, represents a particularly important form of internetworking technology that allows organizations to extend the reach of their computing systems.

The term TCP/IP refers to a set of protocols, or a **protocol suite**, that defines the rules governing how messages are exchanged in a computer network. The TCP/IP protocol suite



grew out of a research project that began in 1969 and was funded by the U. S. Department of Defense. The TCP/IP protocols are based on the packet-switching ideas developed for an early research computer network called the *ARPANET*, whose acronym was based on the name of the *Advanced Research Projects Agency* (ARPA) that funded its development. ARPA is now known as the *Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency* (DARPA). The early ARPANET tied together a number of research computers using conventional leased telecommunications lines.

The original idea behind the TCP/IP protocol suite was to define a standard set of procedures to allow individual computer networks to be connected to the ARPANET. Today, the main purpose of the TCP/IP protocol suite is to allow diverse types of physical networks to be tied together so that any networked computer can talk to any other computer. The TCP/IP protocols allow the interconnected individual networks to give the appearance of a single, unified network-called an *internet-in* which all computers can freely exchange data as if they were all directly connected. The TCP/IP protocols make it appear to a system that there is a simple point-to-point connection to any other system in the internet, even though data might have to follow a quite complex path in traveling from one system to another.

---

## 6.6 THE FUTURE OF INTERNET TECHNOLOGY

---

From the humble beginning in the late 60s, today internet spans the whole world with hundreds of millions of computers connected to it (500 million in 2004 estimated). The remarkable achievement of the internet technology is that it has been able to accommodate exponential growth (i.e., doubling each year) of the number of computers connected to it. Also the speed of computers has been doubling every year and there are a variety of computers connected to the internet. Individual LANs in an organization may use one of a variety of interconnections and local protocols for communication. The physical connection between computers may range from fast gigabit fiber optics to slower wireless. In spite of this variety of technologies and speeds internet still works effectively. The reason for this is the universal adoption of TCP/IP as the standard protocol which has proved very robust in spite of rapid changes in technology. TCP/IP protocol emerged as a result of cooperative effort in which a large number of persons participated and experimented before accepting any version. The internet protocol accommodates a variety of hardware and a variety of network speeds as it makes no assumptions regarding the underlying network hardware. Packet switching ensures efficient and fault tolerant routings of packets. TCP ensures reliable receipt of all packets sent by a sender to a receiver. It continuously monitors traffic conditions on the internet and automatically adapts when there is congestion in the network.

The only major problems currently faced by the internet are:

1. IP addresses are limited to 32 bits and the number of requests for addresses will exceed this limit soon.
2. Originally the major traffic on the internet was e-mail and character files. Now multimedia use has increased and one expects to send audio and video files in real

time for which internet was not designed.

To meet these demands a new generation internet protocol called IPv6 has been proposed which is expected to replace IPv4, the current protocol. Currently extensive research and experiments are in progress to test IPv6. Thus IPv6 may slowly replace the current protocol (IPv4) over the next few years. The major new features proposed in IPv6 are:

1. 128 bit addresses for source and destination in place of 32 bits which is the current address size. This address size will allow a huge increase in allowed devices to be connected to the internet.
2. The packet lengths can go upto 64 KB. This will allow easy transfer of multimedia data, particularly voice.
3. The protocol has a feature to specify the kind of data being transmitted and will permit real-time multimedia data to be given priority in transmission.
4. The proposed protocol improves security of data being sent over the internet.

It is thus clear that internet has come to stay and will continue to grow in the coming years. With increasing use of wireless and mobile systems one may see even ordinary household systems such as refrigerators, ovens, etc., connected to the internet and controlled remotely.

---

## 6.7 INTERNET PROTOCOLS

---

Let us try to find the meaning of protocols in real life. In our day-to-day life, protocols are a set of procedures and customs that aid in communication and relationships between people. Many times the term is used in governmental foreign relations and other similar human dialogue. When used in the context of computer networking, a protocol has a similar meaning, but is more specific. A network protocol is the set of very detailed rules, sequences, message formats, and procedures that computer systems use and understand when exchanging data with each other.

In other words, a network protocol (which includes all of the Internet protocols) is the term used to describe how computer systems communicate with each other at the bit and byte level. Network protocols are layered on top of each other, with each layer providing additional capabilities, but using the facilities provided by the lower layer.

Depending upon their capabilities, we can divide the Internet Protocols in two categories:

### 6.7.1 Low Level Protocols

Let's start with the lowest-level Internet protocol, and gradually move upwards to the higher levels.

**IP:** The most fundamental protocol is called IP, i.e. '**Internet Protocol**'. IP is responsible only for transmitting each chunk of data from one system to another. It needs to know only the network location of source and destination computer in which data is to be sent back and forth.

The common term for a network location is 'address', and each system on the Internet has an address. This address is called **an IP address**, and there are two formats for an IP address.

Internally, each computer system uses an IP address that is composed of four numbers, usually written for humans with dots between each number. An example IP numeric address is '178.127.201.1'. However, since it's easier for humans to remember names instead of numbers, most IP addresses have corresponding English-like names, also separated with dots. The previous address can be written as a name as 'halcon.com'.

Scattered throughout the Internet are systems with the responsibility of translating Internet name addresses into the IP address numeric form. These systems are called 'name servers'. In general, it is better to use an Internet name address rather than the IP numeric address. This is because IP numeric addresses can sometimes change for a given location, and the change will be transparent if you are using the Internet name address rather than the IP numeric address. However, the name servers have to be updated.

Occasionally you do need to use the numeric form of an Internet address, and most Internet applications allow you to enter either format. Another term used in conjunction with Internet name addresses is 'host name', because every Internet address must correspond to a computer system (a 'host') somewhere on the Internet. The systems that provide IP name to number translation are called 'Domain Name Servers', or DNS.

**TCP and UDP:** We have just seen how systems communicate at a very low level, using IP addresses in either a numeric or name form to identify each other. The IP layer doesn't provide many capabilities other than sending chunks of data back and forth. Much more is needed than that, which is where TCP and UDP come in.

TCP, which is an abbreviation for '**Transmission Control Protocol**', is very common on the Internet, and is almost always mentioned together with IP, making the acronym TCP/IP (TCP running on top of IP).

The TCP protocol provides a virtual connection between two systems, along with certain guarantees on the data chunks (called 'packets') that are passed between the systems. Two guarantees are retransmission of packets that are dropped (because of some network problem), and ensuring that the packets are received in the same order that they are sent (there can be multiple routes that a packet can take while traversing the Internet).

A third guarantee is that each packet received by the application has exactly the same content as when it was sent. If a bit has changed or been dropped for some reason, TCP will detect it and cause the packet to be re-transmitted.

Some applications use a different protocol running on top of IP called UDP ('**User Datagram Protocol**'). UDP sends data one chunk at a time (called a 'datagram') to the other system and doesn't provide a virtual connection like TCP does. UDP also doesn't provide the same guarantees that TCP does, which means that datagram may be lost or

arrive out of sequence. Each received datagram is checked for internal integrity (like TCP), but if it has been corrupted it is dropped, rather than re-transmitted (as TCP does).

You might be wondering why UDP is used instead of TCP since UDP is not as reliable as TCP. To provide the extra guarantees, TCP has a lot of overhead compared to UDP, which makes TCP slower than UDP. For applications where performance is more important than reliability, UDP makes more sense. Some examples include audio and video streaming over the Internet, and Internet phone applications.

**SLIP and PPP:** Many people are now connecting to the Internet (through an Internet Service Provider, commonly abbreviated as ISP) by dialing up through a modem. Since IP wasn't designed to be used over dial-up lines, this requires yet another protocol.

SLIP and PPP both allow IP data to be sent over dial-up lines. SLIP is an abbreviation for '**Serial Line IP**' and PPP is short for '**Point-to-Point Protocol**'. Both take IP data and package it up so that it can be sent over modem dial-up lines. PPP is considered to be newer and better than SLIP, although many Internet providers continue to support SLIP dial-up access.

While connected to an ISP using SLIP or PPP, your system is now another location on the Internet, with its own IP address. Your account with the ISP may assign you a permanent, fixed IP address and name, or it may provide what is called a 'dynamic' IP address. Since at any given time only a subset of dial-up lines are in use for an ISP, the provider may assign an IP number (and also typically an IP name) from a pool of available addresses.

### **6.7.2 High Level Protocols**

At this point we know a little bit about how different systems communicate with each other on the Internet at the lower protocol levels. Your workstation or PC is most likely on a LAN that is connected to the Internet, or using PPP or SLIP to dial-up to an ISP. TCP/IP or UDP/IP is used to send packets of information back and forth from your system to a remote system somewhere on the Internet. Now let's discuss the higher-level applications that are using a client / server relationship to send information back and forth. These higher-level applications are actually the things used on the Internet. That is why high-level protocols are also known as Internet Application Protocols.

**FTP and Telnet:** FTP ('**File Transfer Protocol**') is a way to upload and download files on the Internet. Downloading and uploading are two basic processes used on the Internet. Downloading is the process of transferring the data from the Internet to the local computer, while uploading is the reverse process i.e. transferring the data from the local computer to the Internet.

Typically a site on the Internet stores a number of files (they could be application executables, graphics, or audio clips, for example), and runs an FTP server application that waits for transfer requests. To download a file to your own system, you run an FTP client application that connects to the FTP server, and request a file from a particular directory or folder. Files can be uploaded to the FTP server, if appropriate access is granted. FTP

differentiates between text files usually ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange), and binary files (such as images and application executables), so care must be taken in specifying the appropriate type of transfer.

When an Internet site makes files available to the general public, this is called 'anonymous' FTP. A password does not need to be supplied, although the user e-mail address is typically requested. Some sites have confidential files or directories, and an FTP login and password is needed to download or upload.

**Telnet** is a way to remotely login to another system on the Internet. The Telnet allows you to remotely connect into other computers and access them just as if you were sitting directly in front of them. A telnet server must be running on the remote system, and a telnet client application is run on the local system. When you are logged in to a system using telnet, it is as if you were logged in locally and using the operating system command line interface on the telnet server system. Typical operating systems for telnet servers are UNIX, Windows NT, and VMS.

**HTTP:** HTTP stands for '**HyperText Transfer Protocol**'. It is the primary protocol of the World Wide Web (WWW). When a Web browser (such as Internet Explorer or Netscape) connects to a Web server, it uses HTTP to request Web pages. A Web browser is an Internet client application, and the Web server is an Internet server application.

HTTP has the ability to transfer Web pages, graphics, and any other type of media that is used on the Web. HyperText Markup Language (HTML) the internal format of Web pages. HTML consists of a set of tags and internal commands that are embedded inside Web pages to control the appearance and layout of Web pages, as well as links to other Web pages.

---

## 6.8 WORLD WIDE WEB

---

Since we have learnt about the Internet advantages and the famous tools available with the Internet, it is the time now to look at a very interesting topic i.e. **World Wide Web (WWW)**. World Wide Web is a system of Internet servers that uses HTTP to transfer specially formatted documents. The documents are formatted in a language called HTML (HyperText Mark-up Language) that supports links to other documents, as well as graphics, audio, and video files.

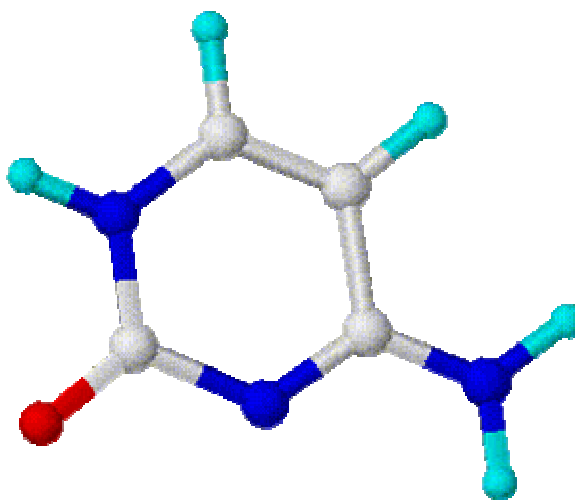
Hypertext refers to a computer-based document in which words or phrases are cross-referenced and a user can easily jump between these cross-references by selecting the highlighted word. For example, the word web here is highlighted, indicating that it is a hypertext link to another document.

A related term is **hypermedia**, which means that graphics, audio and video are also used as cross-referenced items. One can jump from one document to another simply by clicking on hyperlinks.

Here are some of the advantages of WWW:

- **Standard Interface:** Because the web presents a standard interface to FTP, News, e-mail, gopher and other Internet tools, as well as a standard way of accessing information through web pages and databases through forms, the web has become an invaluable tool for simple access to the net.
- **Formatted Output:** The Web supports formatted text. You can have:
  - ❖ **Headings of a number of sizes...**  
while normal text can be formatted in a number of ways, including: **bold**, *italicized*, <sup>super</sup> or <sub>sub</sub>-scripted. You can also have lists and tables.
  - ❖ **Hypertext:** As mentioned above, web pages use hypertext links to provide a very easy and straightforward way to navigate around the net. Hypertext links can be within a document, between web pages on the same computer or between web pages on different computers. Hypertext links can also be between graphics, audio and video.
  - ❖ **Multimedia:** One of the big advantages the web over earlier systems such as telnet-based programs and gopher is that it is multimedia capable.

Any of the graphical browsers (like Internet Explorer and Netscape Navigator) can display formatted text, as well as GIF images. Some browsers can also handle JPEG images. You can also have images embedded in your web page, like this structure:



If you want to view a file that your browser can't read, then you can easily configure your browser to call up another program to view the file. This means that you can send any type of data file across the web: MPEG or QuickTime movies, WAV sound files, Excel spreadsheets, PhotoCD photos, postscript files... the list is endless. The best solution of this type is a plug-in, which is installed as part of your browser. We will study about browsers and plug-ins in more details later in the chapter. However you can configure your browser to

feed files with a specific extension to a particular program. Excel files, for example, with a .xls extension would open up MS Excel.

- ❖ **Interactive Pages:** With **forms**, users can interact with web pages to obtain dynamic or customized information. A typical example of form is the registration form that you have to fill up while registering for an email account.

The image shows the Yahoo! Mail registration page. At the top, there's the Yahoo! Mail logo and a link to 'Yahoo! - Help'. Below this is a blue banner with the text 'Sign up for your Yahoo! ID with Mail' and a link 'Already have an ID? Sign In'. Under the banner, it says 'Get a Yahoo! ID and password for access to Yahoo! Mail and all other personalized Yahoo! services.' The form itself has several sections: 'Yahoo! ID:' with a text box and '@yahoo.com' suffix, with examples 'dairyman88' or 'free2rhyme'; 'Password:' with a text box and a note 'Must be six characters or more'; 'Re-type Password:' with a text box; 'Choosing your ID' with explanatory text; 'Security Question:' with a dropdown menu; 'Your Answer:' with a text box; 'Birthday:' with a dropdown menu and a date input field (Month DD, YYYY); 'Current Email (Optional):' with a text box; and 'Recalling your password' with explanatory text. At the bottom, there's a note: 'Account notices will be sent to this email address, including new password requests.'

**Fig 6.14 Registration Form for an email account**

---

## 6.9 E-Mail

---

E-mail is an abbreviation for **Electronic Mail**. It is a way of sending messages from one computer user to another computer user. The mail could be sent between two people using the same computer or between two people on different sides of the world.

### Advantages of E-Mail

- ❖ **Speed:** Because e-mail is based around computer networks, it is fast - much faster than standard mail (otherwise known as snail mail). An e-mail message that you send to someone in Finland or Brazil could take only a few seconds to reach them.
- ❖ **Cost:** Depending on how you have obtained your Internet access, e-mail is free or very cheap, much cheaper than the 45 cents it takes to send a standard letter within Australia.
- ❖ **Flexibility:** With the new MIME e-mail system being used today, you aren't limited to text in your e-mail messages. You can include pictures, sound files, movies, data files from your favorite spreadsheet program, etc.

---

## 6.10 SEARCH ENGINES

---

Search engines are automated computers owned by companies such as Google, AltaVista, Yahoo etc that spend all of their time day and night surfing the Internet.

A search engine helps you find information on the Internet. To use a search engine, you must enter a word (or words) that you expect will be in the Web pages or newsgroup messages you're looking for, then click a Search button. The search engine will look through its collection of documents for Web pages and newsgroup messages containing these keywords.

Search engines can be used to find Web sites in many languages. Your computer's ability to process accented letters and other characters will determine whether you can search for French sites, or sites in any other language.

### **Advantages of using a search engine**

- They are very comprehensive
- The flexibility of indexing every word gives users complete search control

### **Disadvantage**

- Submitting queries to search engines can result in millions of results

### **6.10.1 Types of Search Engines**

- **Crawler-Based Search Engines:** Crawler-based search engines, such as Google, create their listings automatically. They "crawl" or "spider" the web, then people search through what they have found. If you change your web pages, crawler-based search engines eventually find these changes, and that can affect how you are listed. Page titles, body copy and other elements all play a role.
- **Human-Powered Directories:** A human-powered directory, such as the Open Directory, depends on humans for its listings. You submit a short description to the directory for your entire site, or editors write one for sites they review. A search looks for matches only in the descriptions submitted. Changing your web pages has no effect on your listing. Things that are useful for improving a listing with a search engine have nothing to do with improving a listing in a directory. The only exception is that a good site, with good content, might be more likely to get reviewed for free than a poor site.
- **Hybrid Search Engines:** In the web's early days, it used to be that a search engine either presented crawler-based results or human-powered listings. Today, it is extremely common for both types of results to be presented. Usually, a hybrid search engine will favor one type of listings over another. For example, MSN Search is more likely to present human-powered listings from LookSmart. However, it does also present crawler-based results, especially for more obscure queries.



---

## 6.11 REVIEW QUESTIONS

---

1. What is a LAN? What are its main objectives?
2. Describe layering concepts in the OSI model of network architecture with functions of each layer.
3. Who actually controls the internet?
4. What are the advantages and disadvantages of Internet?
5. Why High-level protocols are called Application protocols?
6. What are the differences between Low-level and high-level Internet Protocols?
7. What are E-Mail Etiquettes? Discuss.

---

## OFFICE AUTOMATION SYSTEMS - PART I

---

### Structure

#### 7.1 MS Word –I

- 7.1.1 What Is Word Processor
- 7.1.2 Starting Microsoft Word
- 7.1.3 Key Terminologies
- 7.1.4 Opening and Formatting Documents
- 7.1.5 Formatting Page
- 7.1.6 Inserting a Table
- 7.1.7 Inserting a Picture
- 7.1.8 Inserting Page Numbers and Date/Time

#### 7.2 MS Word – II

- 7.2.1 Autocorrect Facility
- 7.2.2 Spelling and Grammar
- 7.2.3 Macros
- 7.2.4 Mail-Merge in Microsoft Word 2000
- 7.2.5 Create a Template
- 7.2.6 Style

#### 7.3 MS-Excel-I

- 7.3.1 Working with Worksheet

#### 7.4 MS Excel-II

- 7.4.1 Using Excel's Built-In Functions
- 7.4.2 What-if Analysis
- 7.4.3 Data Table sorting

#### 7.5 MS-Excel-III

- 7.5.1 Graphs and Charts

#### 7.6 Review Questions

---

### 7.1 MS WORD – I

---

Over the centuries, we as human beings have always felt the need to communicate and share our ideas and thoughts. The written word has always remained the best and the most effective way of interaction irrespective of the place and nature of job of the person. Sometimes, writing a note comes more easily to us than conveying it verbally. We often prefer to talk to our distant friends and relatives by way of writing only. At times, it is far

easier to express our feelings by setting them down on paper rather than saying them orally. Any kind of formal or informal message can be best sent across by penning it down.

Once the whole work of writing is done, you would be very anxious to read it through to check for any grammatical errors or spelling mistakes. If there are any, then imagine the disappointment you will have to face because then it will demand the pains of writing the whole document again. Similar kinds of problems are faced with our old conventional typewriter also. A small change in the typewritten text would involve retyping the entire text again. Now, as and when the work of writing the whole document is over, we must concentrate our attention at the final look of the document. The document has to be made attractive with text neatly and properly organized within margins. Paragraphs are required to be indented with reasonable spacing between lines. Finally, the document should be free from all kinds of spelling mistakes and grammatical errors. This is a universal truth that a neatly organized and well formatted document is definitely more appealing to the reader's eye.

The following things are to be kept in mind while giving a neat and formal look to your document.

- ❖ A long document should be broken down into small paragraphs. Proper line spacing should be given.
- ❖ The words at the end of the line should not be incomplete.
- ❖ The important words and headings should be highlighted either by way of underlining them or by putting them in different font and size.
- ❖ There should not be any grammatical and spelling mistakes. The text should be placed properly between margins.
- ❖ In spite of taking all the efforts and precautions, we cannot keep track of all the above mentioned requirements. Now, for easing our job, software called '**Word Processor**' has come to our rescue. A Word Processor can do all of these things without any hassle.

### 7.1.1 What Is Word Processor

Word processing includes typing in text and manipulating it so as to give a very systematic and organized look to your document, which enables easy reading. The application software or program, which helps us in processing the text, is called '**Word Processing Software**' or simply a '**Word Processor**'.

So, you can say that a word processor is nothing but a computer program that helps you to: type your text, correct spelling mistakes and grammatical errors align text within margins offer a variety of font styles and font sizes see a preview of the text that you have typed in. The commonly used word processing packages are:

- MS-WORD,
- Word Star
- Word Perfect
- Professional Write

Normally, a word processor can accomplish the following tasks:

- ❖ Brochures
- ❖ Newsletters
- ❖ Reports
- ❖ Advertisements
- ❖ Resumes and Cover letters
- ❖ Books
- ❖ Directories
- ❖ World Wide Web Pages

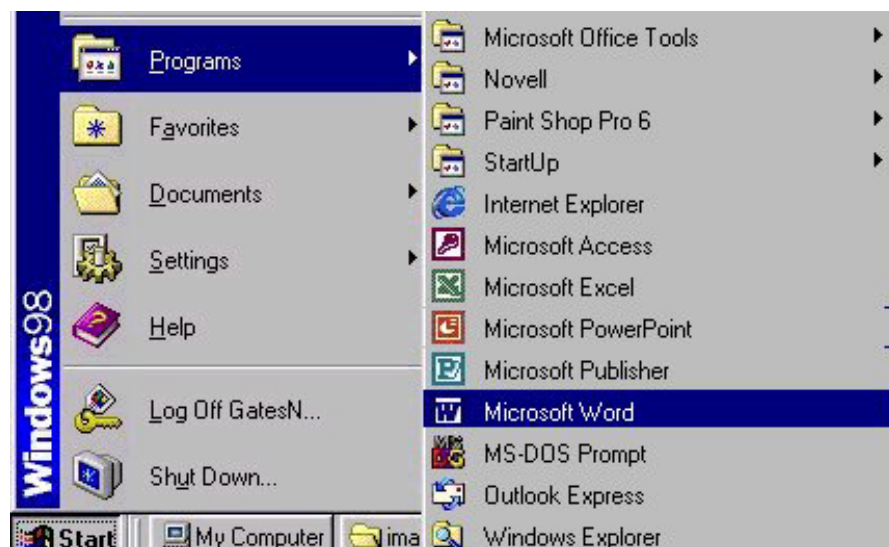
There is absolutely no end to what a word processor can do. By now you must have realized that the word processing applications have become much more sophisticated than before.

### 7.1.2 Starting Microsoft Word

1. Double click on the Microsoft Word icon on the desktop.



2. Click on Start --> Programs --> Microsoft Word



**Fig 7.1**

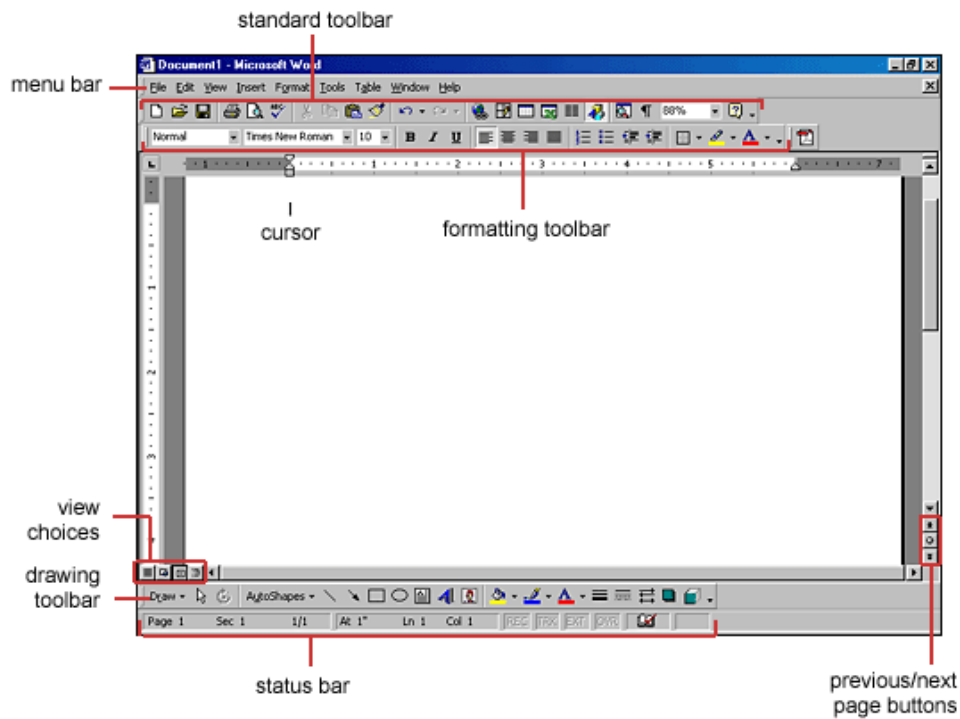


Fig 7.2

### 7.1.3 Key Terminologies

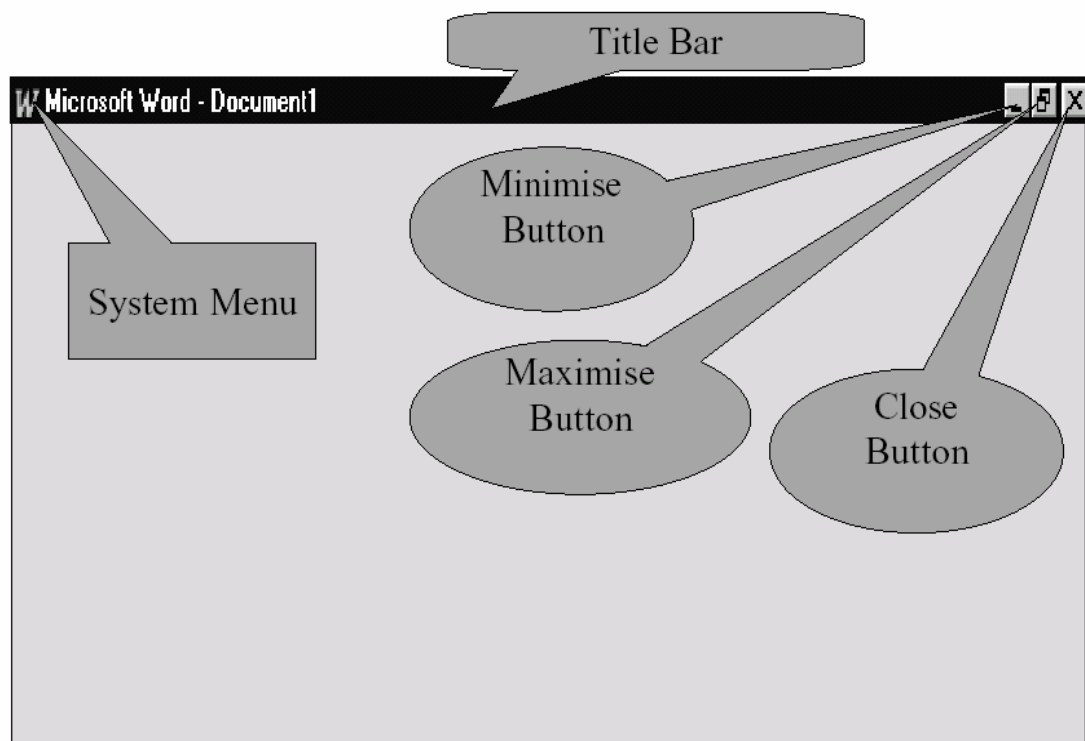


Fig 7.3 (a)

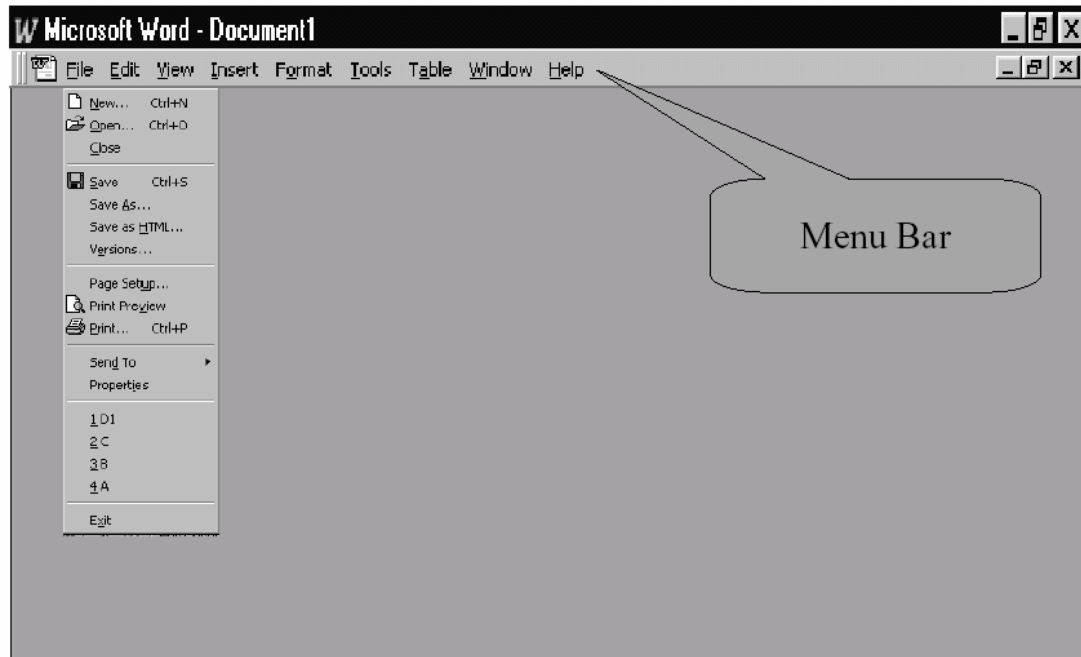


Fig 7.3 (b)

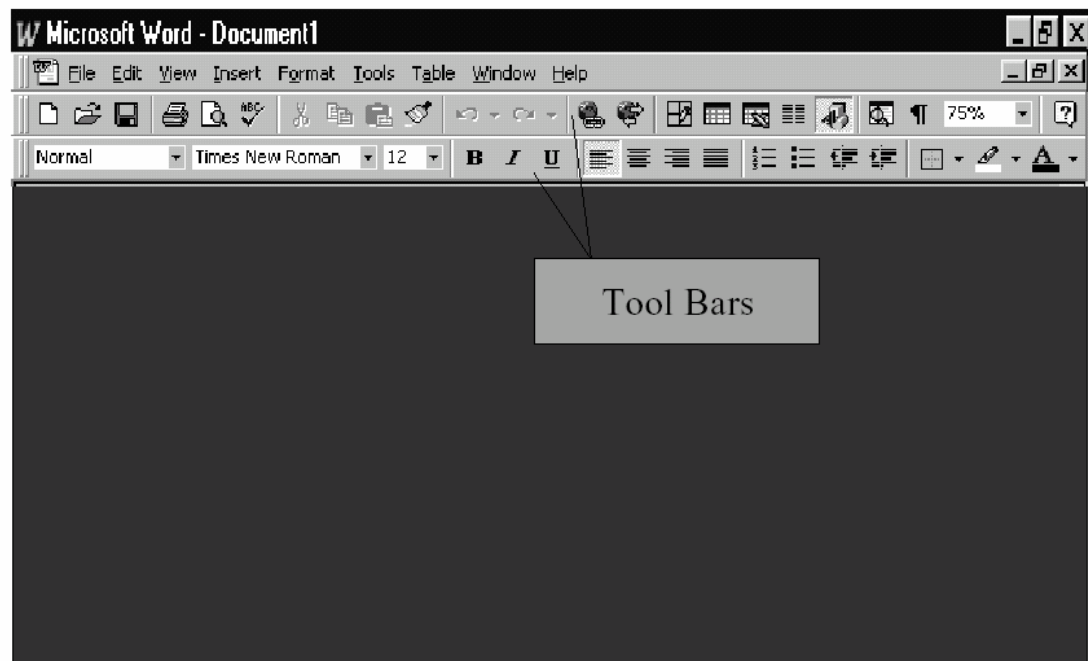
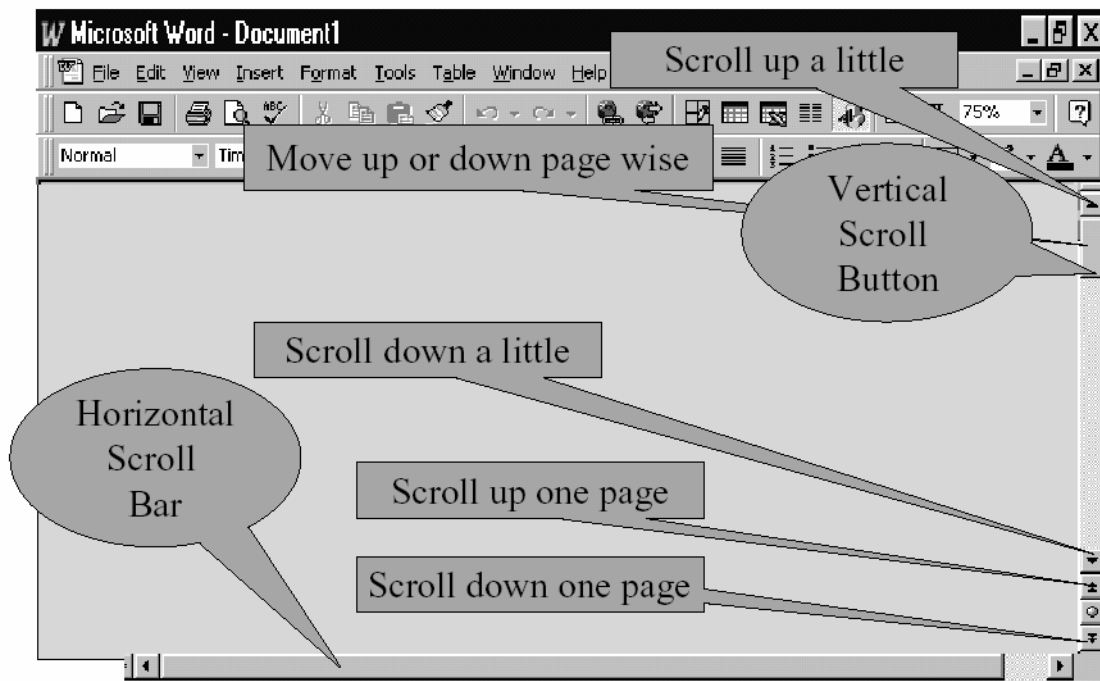
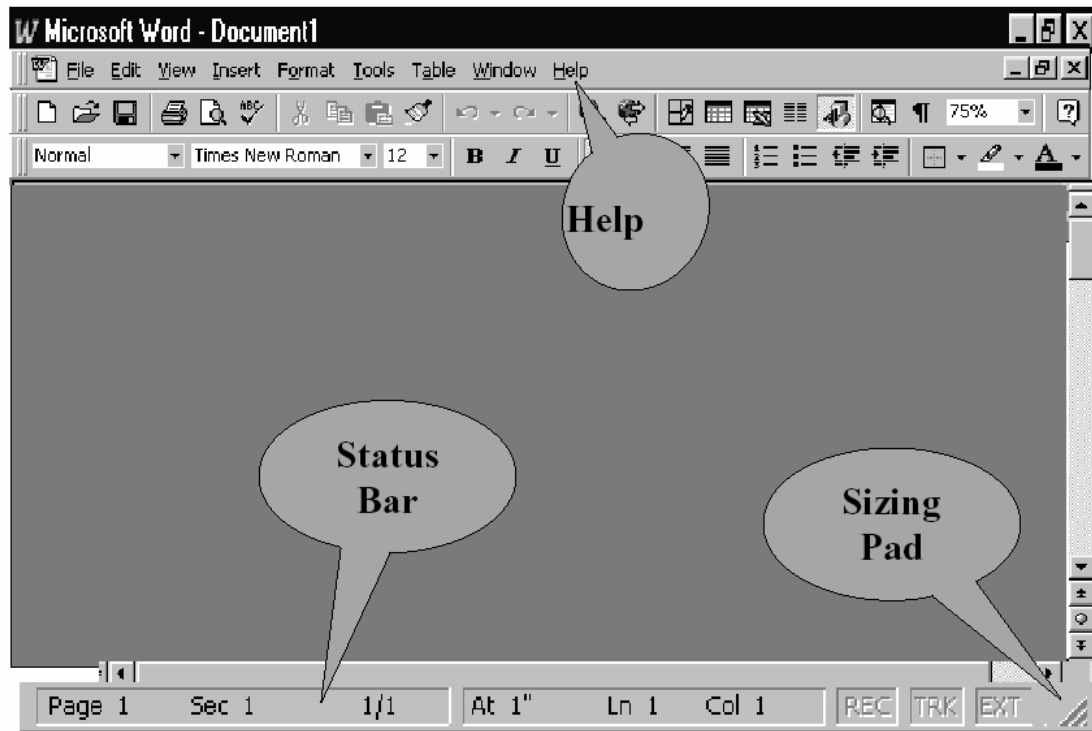


Fig 7.3 (c)



**Fig 7.3**  
**(d)**



**Fig 7.3 (e)**

**Fig 7.3 Key Terminologies**

### Viewing the toolbars

The toolbars in Microsoft Word provide easy access and functionality to the user. There are many shortcuts that can be taken by using the toolbar. First, make sure that the proper toolbars are visible on the screen.

1. Click **View**
2. Select **Toolbars**
3. Select **Standard, Formatting, and Drawing**
4. Other toolbars can be selected if you wish

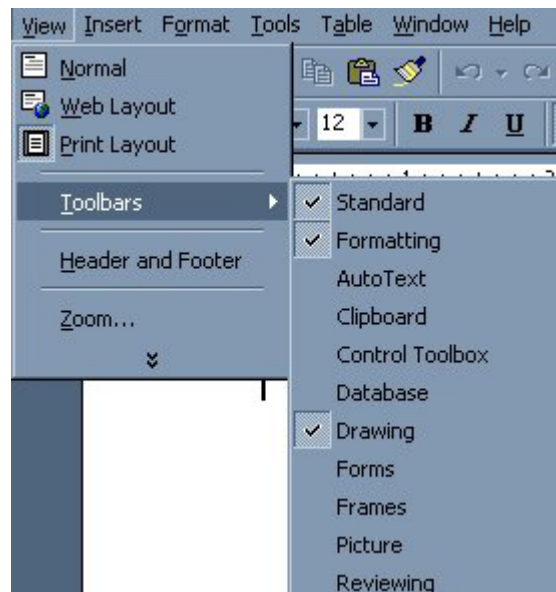











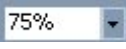



Fig 7.4

Name	Icon	Description
New Blank Document		Creates a new, blank file based on the default template.
Open (File menu)		Opens or finds a file.
Save (File menu)		Saves the active file with its current file name, location, and file format.
Mail Recipient		Sends the contents of the document as the body of the e-mail message.
Print (File menu)		Prints the active file or selected items. To select print options, on the File menu, click Print.
Print Preview (File menu)		Shows how a file will look when you print it.



Spelling and Grammar (Tools menu)		Checks the active document for possible spelling, grammar, and writing style errors, and displays suggestions for correcting them. To set spelling and grammar checking options, click Options on the Tools menu, and then click the Spelling and Grammar tab.
Cut (Edit menu)		Removes the selection from the active document and places it on the Clipboard.
Copy (Edit menu)		Copies the selection to the Clipboard.
Paste (Edit menu)		Inserts the contents of the Clipboard at the insertion point, and replaces any selection. This command is available only if you have cut or copied an object, text, or contents of a cell.
Format Painter (Standard toolbar)		Copies the format from a selected object or text and applies it to the object or text you click. To copy the formatting to more than one item, double-click  , and then click each item you want to format. When you are finished, press ESC or click  again to turn off the Format Painter.
Undo (Edit menu)		Reverses the last command or deletes the last entry you typed.
Redo (Edit menu)		Reverses the action of the Undo command.
Hyperlink		Inserts a new hyperlink or edits the selected hyperlink.
Tables and Borders		Displays the Tables and Borders toolbar, which contains tools for creating, editing, and sorting a table and for adding or changing borders to selected text, paragraphs, cells, or objects.
Zoom		Enter a magnification between 10 and 400 percent to reduce or enlarge the display of the active document.
Office Assistant		The Office Assistant provides Help topics and tips to help you accomplish your tasks.

**Table 7.1 Basic Terminologies of Tool Bar**

### 7.1.4 Opening and Formatting Documents

**Opening a document:** If your document is stored on any of the storage devices like hard disk or floppy disk, then it becomes possible to retrieve that document and the user can manipulate it the way he/ she wants. WORD offers a variety of ways to open your documents which are discussed below:

**Method 1: Opening a document from desktop**

Click at the Start button. Point at 'Open Office Document' and click it . Alternatively, click at the option 'Open Office Document' of the Office shortcut bar available on the desktop.

**Method 2: Opening a document from Word's startup screen**

Click at the 'File' menu and select the option 'Open'

Alternatively, for opening a document, just double-click at the 'Open' button from the standard toolbar. This icon looks exactly similar to a file folder.

One very important thing to observe here is that - an 'Open' dialog box appears on the screen after employing any of the above mentioned methods of opening a document. In this 'Open' dialog box you would notice a 'look in' box which is used for selecting the drive as well as the folder where your required document is resident in. Then, there is 'Files of Type' box which helps you to select the kind of file that you want to open. Suppose you want that only the WORD documents should be shown in the file list, then click at the pull down arrow and from the drop down list, select 'Word Documents' option. In case you want to see all the files in the selected drive, then select 'All Files' option from the drop down list. Finally click the filename in the file list and click at the <Open> button or double click the filename to open up the file.

**Creating a New Document**

1. Click on File
2. Select New
  - To create a blank document, simply select **Blank Document**. To create a document based on one of the templates provided in Microsoft Word, select which one you would like to create and select **OK**

**Saving a document**

For future retrieval of the document, it needs to be saved on hard disk or floppy disk. Once all the text is entered, save the document with any of the following methods:

**Method 1:** Click at the 'File' menu and then select 'Save' option. When the file is being saved for the very first time, the 'Save as' dialog box comes up because WORD needs some additional information from you.

Firstly, WORD wants you to give a name to your file. This has to be given in the 'Filename' box. Secondly, the kind of file you are trying to save, should be given in the 'Save as type' box. Thirdly, the place where you want to save your document should be given in the 'Save in' box. After giving all this information, click at the <Save> button. Your file is finally saved onto the disk.

The 'Save as' dialog box is displayed only once till the time you don't give a name to your document. Once the document has a name, next time if you try to save your file after making a few changes in it, then the 'Save as' dialog box will not appear on the screen.

**Method 2:** The other way of saving your files is by clicking at the 'Save' button available on the standard toolbar. It's a good idea to keep saving your documents after every few minutes. The reason is if the computer goes down or a power failure occurs, then the chances of recovering something in the document are high. Unsaved new documents are the most vulnerable.

### Closing a document

WORD offers a very handy method of closing documents. Like, you would prefer to close and remove the office files that are no more required on your table, in the similar manner you may want to close WORD documents too. So, for closing a file, click at the 'File' menu and select the 'Close' option. This will close the file that is recently opened. As many documents are opened in WORD, you are required to issue 'File - Close' commands for those many times to close all the files one by one.

### Exiting Word

To quit WORD or to close the WORD application program, click at 'File\Exit' option. With this command, all the currently opened documents are also closed automatically. WORD will again prompt you to save your files before quitting.

### Formatting Text

1. Highlight the text that you want to format by dragging your mouse over while holding down the left mouse button
2. Change the text to your desire
- 3.



### Formatting Documents

Each one of us have a hidden desire that the reader should feel interested in whatever we are trying to convey. So, for achieving this, a special effort on our front is required. We must give a refined look to the document. The formatting features like fonts, bullets and numbering, font type etc. can be used very intelligently to create the whole impact. Now, let us proceed further learning about these special features smartly.

### Defining Font Type and Size of Text

A font can be defined as a set of letters that have a common or the same typeface. Different font types and sizes can be applied using the formatting toolbar or the Format menu. Let's discuss them one by one.

**Using Formatting Toolbar:** The formatting toolbar is designed very artistically.

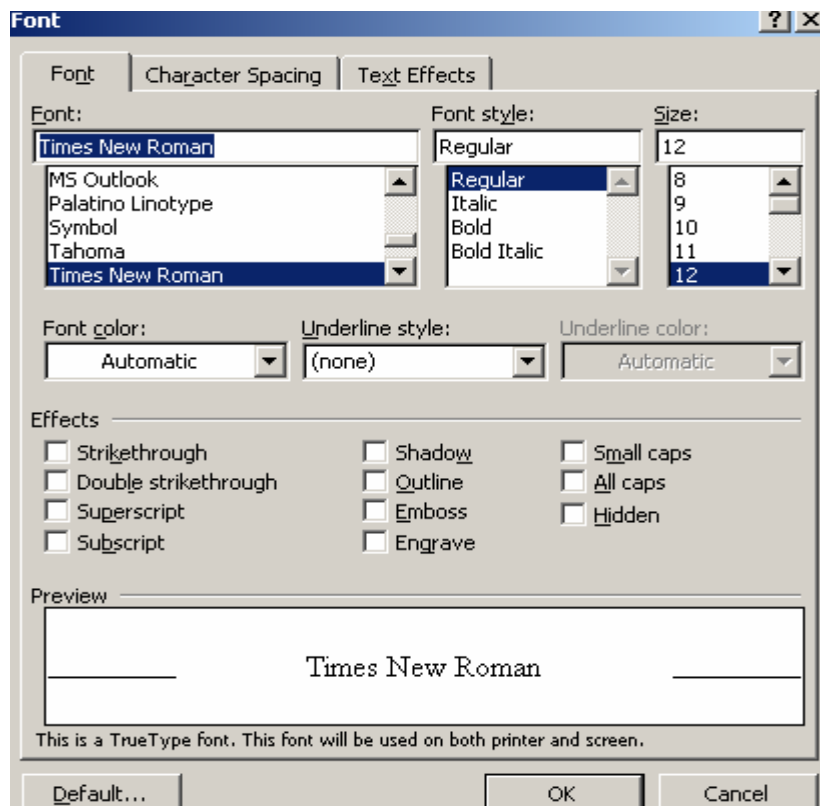


It contains most of the tools that need to be used to give a complete and wholesome look to your document. The toolbar also shows you the font type and size as applied to your text. It also displays the effects (Bold, Italic or Underline) as given to the text. For applying a font type and size to your text, use the formatting toolbar in following steps:

1. Select the text.
2. Click at the arrow beside the font type box and select a font type of your choice from the drop down list.
3. Again, click at the arrow beside the font size box and select an appropriate font size from the drop down list.

**Using Format Menu:** The required font type and size can also be applied to the text by using 'Format Menu' as described in the following steps:

1. Select the text.
2. From the 'Format' menu, select the 'Font' option. The 'Font' dialog box appears on the screen.



**Fig 7.5 Font Dialog Box**

3. Choose appropriate font type from the 'font' box. You can move up or down in the 'Font' box with the help of up and down arrow keys.
4. Similarly, choose the required font style and size for your text from the 'Font style' and 'Size' boxes respectively.
5. The preview of the selected text can be seen in the 'Preview' window with the applied formatting features.
6. Click <OK> button.

You will find the look of your text changing with the application of new font type, style and size.

**Making Text Bold, Italic & Underlined Using Formatting Toolbar:** If you have given a keen look at the formatting toolbar, then you must have observed three buttons showing the letters **B**, *I* and U. The letter 'B' stands for Bold, 'I' for Italic and 'U' for Underline. In order to make your text look a bit darker than the rest of the document, concentrate on the following steps:

1. Select the text.
2. Click at the '**B**' button.

On carrying out these steps, the 'B' button becomes depressed or lightened. If you do not want the text to be bold, select the text again and click at the 'B' button. This button on the toolbar again becomes prominent and your text is not bold anymore.

At times you would like to see your text in italics or would like to underline it. To do this, do the following steps:

1. Select the text.
2. Click at 'U' button to underline and '*I*' button to italicize it.

Alternatively, the same work can also be done using the 'Format' menu by following steps:

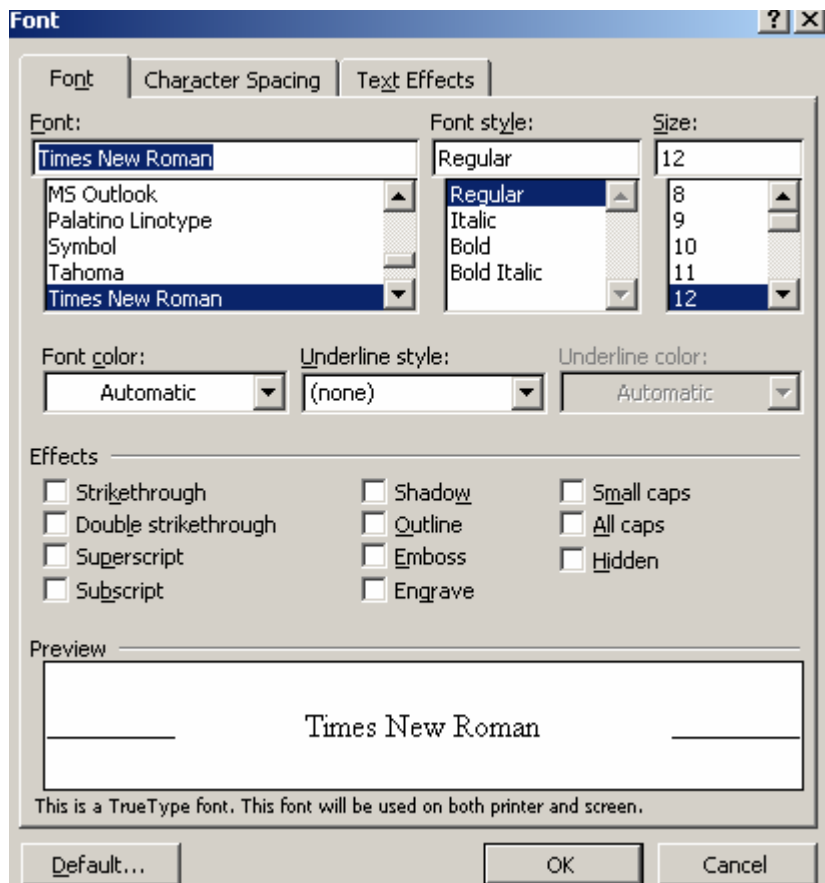
1. Select the text.
2. Click at the 'Font' option of the 'Format' menu.
3. In the 'Font' dialog box, activate the 'Bold' option or 'italic' option from the 'Font style' box to show your text in bold or italics.
4. In order to underline the text, select the required option from the 'Underline' box drop down list.

If you are a keyboard person, you can also use one or more of the following key sequences to achieve the same, after selecting the text:

Press <Ctrl + B> keys to bold the text

Press <Ctrl + I> keys to italics the text

Press <Ctrl+ U> keys to underline the text



**Fig 7.6**

**Changing Case of Text:** WORD offers a quick and handy way to change the case of your text. Lowercase characters can easily be changed to uppercase by hitting <Shift + F3> keys. To achieve the contrary effect, press the <Shift + F3> keys again. This would convert uppercase characters to lowercase.

**Alignment of Text:** Text alignment means placement of text between the margins. Your text can be left, right, centre aligned or it can be justified within the margins. Left alignment of text would mean the arrangement of text evenly in a straight line at the left side of the document but with uneven edges on the right side.

Right aligned text is just the opposite of left aligned text with text evenly arranged at the right edge of the document but uneven from the left side. Justified text would involve even edges of text along both margins. Centre aligned text means that the text is placed exactly in the centre of the page. Centre aligned text is most suitable for giving titles, headings etc. Generally and most frequently the text is left aligned because then the text becomes easily readable and understandable. Now, let us find out how text can be aligned using the formatting toolbar.

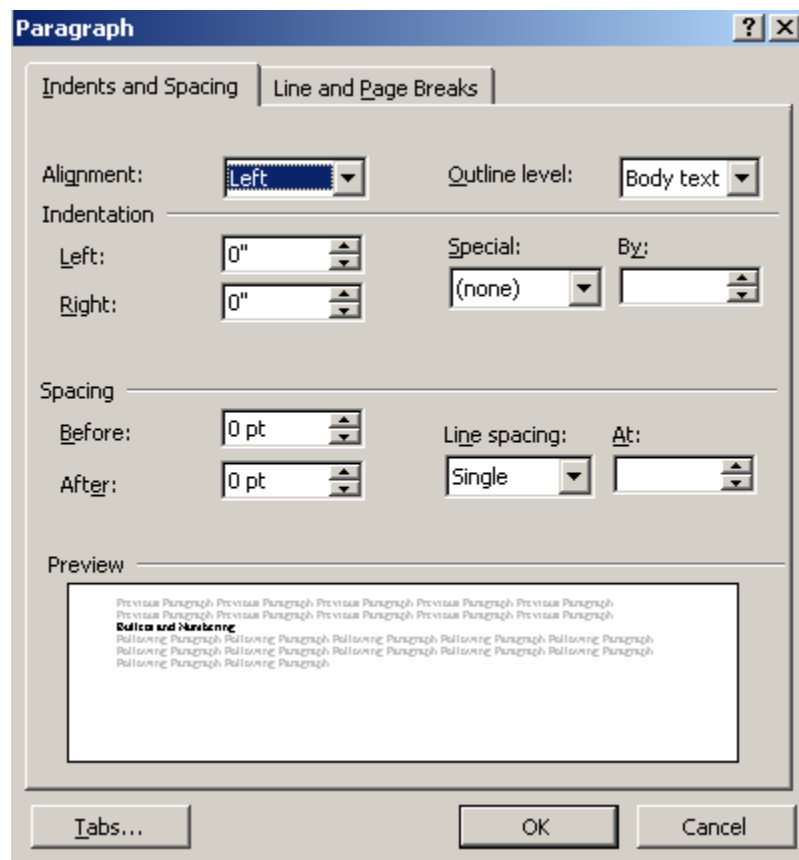
1. Select the text (it could be a single line or a paragraph or the whole document).
2. Click at any of the alignment buttons from the formatting toolbar to get the desired result.

If you are more in the habit of using keyboard, then give the following keyboard shortcuts after selecting the text:

Press <Ctrl + L> keys to left align the text Press <Ctrl + R> keys to right align the text  
Press <Ctrl + E> keys to show the text in the center.

**Formatting Paragraphs:** Formatting means deciding alignment of the paragraph. It also includes the spacing that is to be put in between the lines. In order to carry out formatting on paragraph, it needs to be selected first. Then go to the 'Format' menu and do the following steps:

1. From the 'Format' menu, select 'Paragraph' option. A 'Paragraph' dialog box shoots up on the screen.

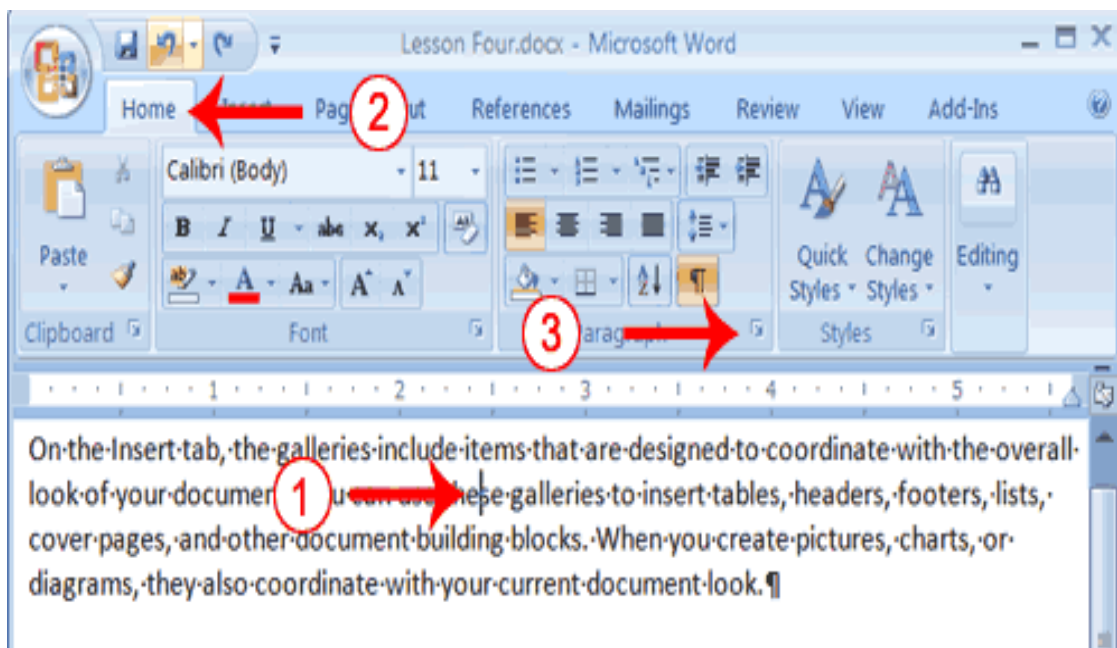


**Fig 7.7 Paragraph**

2. You can set the alignment i.e. decide the placement of text on the screen by clicking on the dropdown arrow of the 'Alignment' box. Your whole of the paragraph can be left, right or center aligned.
3. Go to the 'Line Spacing' box and click at the drop down arrow to make a choice. Finally click at the <OK> button. In the 'Line Spacing' box there are many options that need a bit of elaboration. Let us find them. For the options 'At least', 'Exactly' and 'Multiple', a number has to be given in the 'At' box. In these cases, the space is measured (between the lines) in terms of print size. The 'At least' option uses the space as given in point size but it can also use some extra space in a case where it needs to accommodate some text. 'Exactly' option gives exactly the same space as defined in the 'At' box. If word needs extra space to adjust some more text, then it cannot get it. 'Multiple' option allows you to specify the line spacing of your own choice. If you want the lines to be triple spaced then type '3' in the 'At' box.

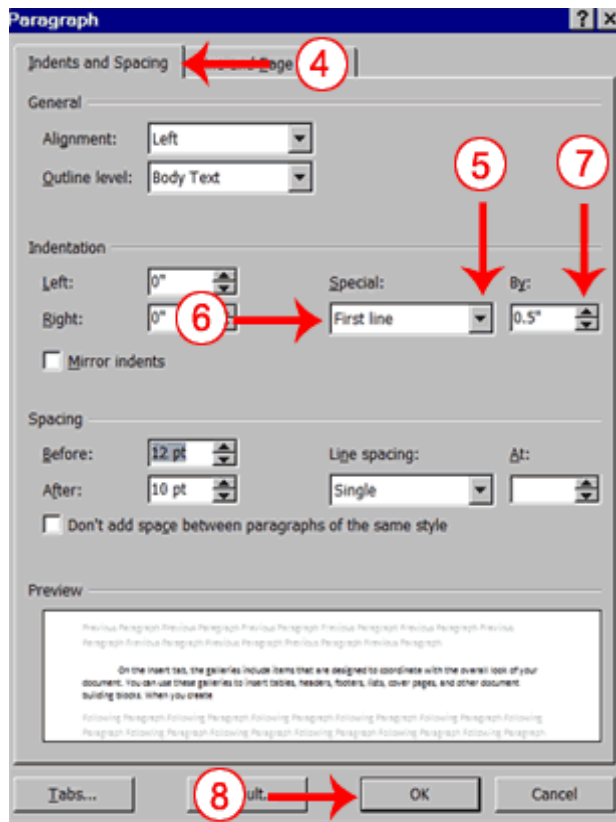
## EXERCISE

### Create a First-line Indent



1. Place your cursor anywhere within the first paragraph of the sample text you created in Exercise 2.
2. Choose the Home tab.
3. In the Paragraphs group, click the launcher. The Paragraph dialog box appears.
4. Choose the Indents and Spacing tab.
5. Click to open the drop-down menu on the Special field.
6. Click First Line.
7. Enter 0.5" in the By field.
8. Click OK. The first line of your paragraph is now indented half an inch.





**Bullets and Numbering:** It is always advisable to put the text entries, which are separated by commas in the bulleted or the numbered form. Adding bullets to the text makes it easy to read and understand. Major points can be very well emphasized through this technique. Points put in the order of preference are long remembered by the reader.

Moreover, in our day to day life, we prefer to make our daily list in the numbered manner rather than putting it in a paragraph. The only idea is that the chances of forgetting are turned low and visibility of important points is clearer. You can put bullets or numbers in an existing list by using either the formatting toolbar or the 'Format' menu.

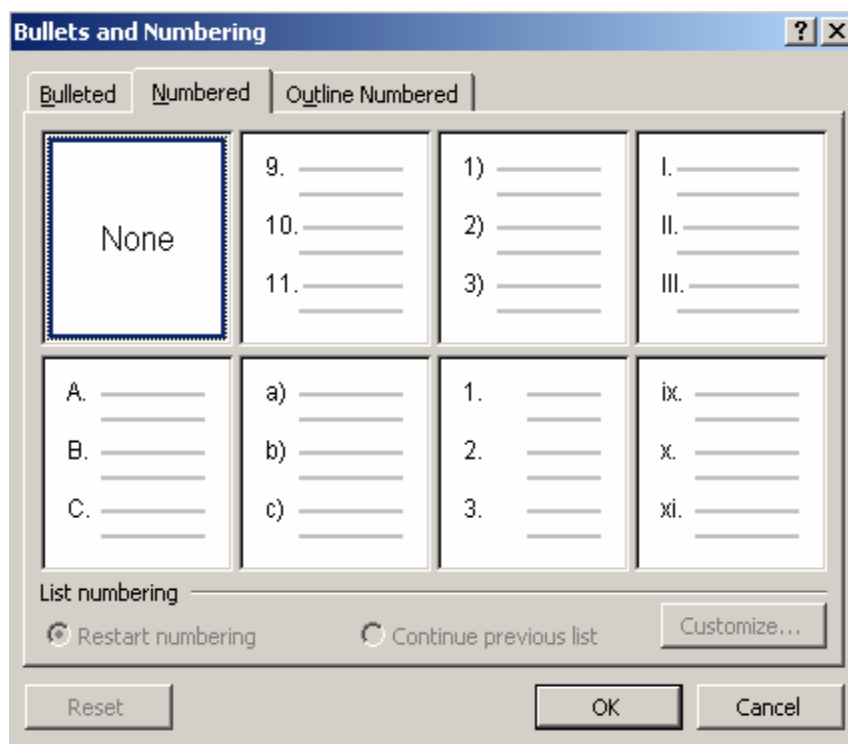
### Using Formatting Toolbar

1. Select the text.
2. Click at either the 'Bullets' button or the 'Numbers' button on the formatting toolbar.

In case you decide that you don't require 'numbers' or 'bullets', you can very easily put them off by repeating the above steps. This method perhaps offers a wider choice of symbols other than the typical black circle. Let us discuss this method:

1. Select the text.
2. Select the 'Format-Bullets and Numbering' option.

A 'Bullets and Numbering' dialog box appears on the screen(see figure below) . Select the 'Bulleted' tab in case you want bullets in your document. If you wish to put numbers then select the 'Numbered' tab. Choose any of the bullets or numbers and apply it onto your document by clicking <OK> button. You see how easy it is to place bullets and numbers in your document.



**Fig 7.8**

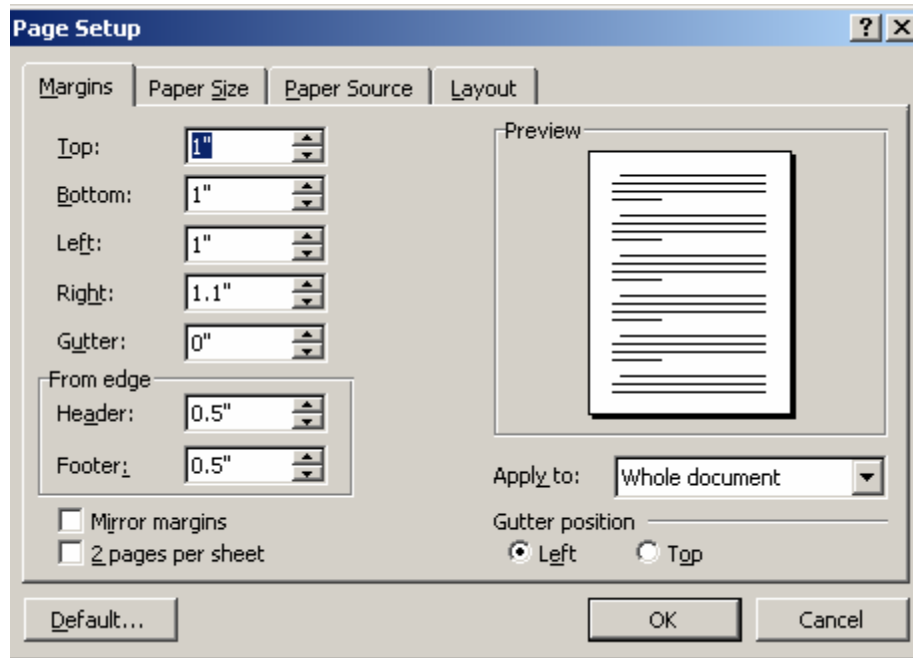
### 7.1.5 Formatting Page

**Page Setting:** Page setting includes putting your text neatly between margins. Margins are nothing but an invisible frame within which the whole text appears. When a blank new document is opened, a default margin is always there. This margin is laid for sides, top and bottom of the page. You can always fiddle with the default settings of WORD according to your demand and requirements. We will learn to set margins by two methods:

Margin Setting through File / Page Setup

The default setting of the top and bottom margin is 1 inch and in the sides, it is 1.25 inches. To modify the default margin setting, follow the steps given below:

1. Select 'Page Setup' option of 'File' menu. A 'Page Setup' dialog box appears on the screen.



**Fig 7.9**

2. Click in the 'Top' box and erase off the current setting by using either the <Del> key or the <Backspace> key from the keyboard. Type in the desired number. Alternatively, you can use the top arrow to increase the margin and down arrow to decrease it.
3. Similarly, change the settings in the Bottom, Left and Right boxes as well.

At times, you might want that the changes that have been made recently should apply to the current document only, and then click at <OK> button. But in case, you want that the current document as well as any other new document that you open should have these page settings, then click at the <Default> button. The next step would be to click at the <Yes> button in which case WORD is trying to seek your permission in changing the default settings for page setup.

**Setting Margins using Ruler Line:** Ruler line is very frequently used to change margins. It is a quick and easy way to set margins but needs some amount of practice also. To set margin using the ruler line, carry out the steps discussed below:

1. Place your mouse pointer on the left side of the horizontal ruler line. Slowly, move the mouse pointer towards your right side till the place where your mouse pointer acquires the shape of a double-headed arrow. A 'Left Margin' tool tip appears on the screen.
2. Click at that location and drag the mouse towards right side to increase the margin or on the left side to reduce it.
3. Release the mouse button when suitable margin is attained.

In order to set right margin, the method is just the same as discussed in the above three steps. If you observe closely, you will find a thin gray line above the 'Right Indent' button which is in the extreme right of the Ruler Line. This is the Right Margin Line. Place the mouse pointer at this line and click on it. Drag the pointer in either direction to increase or decrease the right margin. Finally, release your mouse button.

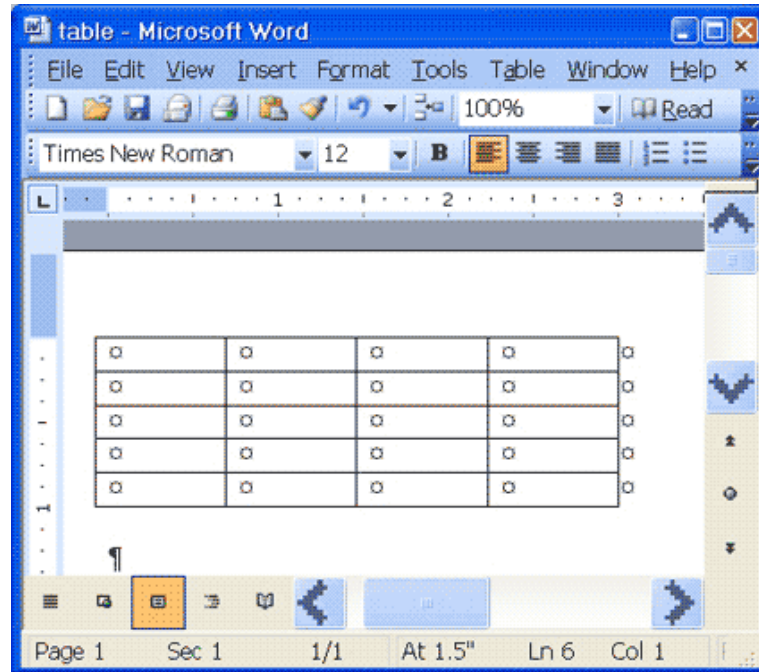
Now, let us learn how to set the top and bottom margins using the vertical ruler line. This vertical ruler line appears only in the Page Layout view. So, in a case if your vertical ruler line is not apparent on the screen, then first switch yourself to Page Layout view by selecting 'Page Layout' option from the 'View' menu. To set the top margin:

1. Take your mouse pointer on the thin gray line that appears between the darkened and white areas on the top side of the vertical ruler line.
2. As soon as your mouse pointer takes the shape of a double headed arrow, click and drag it either upwards or downwards to attain the desired top margin.
3. Release the mouse button.

When you are trying to play with the margins, a line is shown across the page which keeps moving up or down according to the movement of your mouse pointer. This gives you the exact location of your margin on the page.

### **7.1.6 Inserting a Table**

1. Click where you want your table to go.
2. To create a four-column, five-row table
3. Choose *Table > Insert > Table* from the menu. The Insert Table dialog box opens.
4. Type **4** in the Number of Columns field.
5. Type **5** in the Number of Rows field.
6. Select Auto in the Column Width field. Selecting Auto allows Microsoft Word to determine the size of your column widths. Alternatively, you can enter the column width you desire.
7. Click OK. Your table should look like the one shown here, with four columns and five rows



**Fig 7.10 Table**

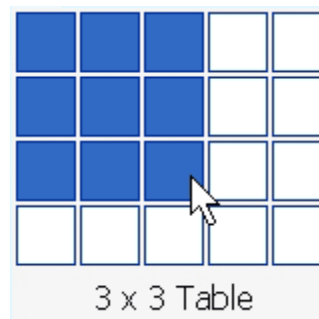
### **Alternate Method -- Creating a Table by Using the Insert Table Icon:**

You can also create a table by clicking on the Insert Table icon on the Standard toolbar.

1. Click the Insert Table icon.



2. Highlight the number of rows and columns you need. The maximum table size you can create by this method is a four-row by five-column table.



3. Press Enter (or click) to create the table.

**Note:** Microsoft Word has a Tables and Borders toolbar. This lesson does not cover the Tables and Borders toolbar.

**Moving Around a Table:** Each block in a table is called a cell. Use the Tab key to move from cell to cell from left to right. Use Shift-Tab to move from cell to cell from right to left. The following exercise demonstrates.

1. Click in the first cell in the first column.
2. Press the Tab key nine times. The cursor moves forward nine cells.
3. Press Shift-Tab six times. The cursor moves backward six cells.

**Note:** You can also move to a cell by clicking in the cell. In addition, you can move around the table by using the left, right, up, and down arrow keys.

**Entering Text into a Table:** To enter text into a table, simply type as you normally would. Press Tab to move to the next cell. Enter the text shown below into your table.

1. Type **Salesperson** in the first cell in the first column. Press the Tab key.
2. Type **Dolls** in the first cell in the second column. Press the Tab key.
3. Continue until you have entered all of the text.

Salesperson	Dolls	Trucks	Puzzles
Kennedy, Sally	1327	1423	1193
White, Pete	1421	3863	2934
York, George	2190	1278	1928
Banks, Jennifer	1201	2528	1203

**Selecting a Row and Bolding the Text:** You learned about bolding in Lesson Three. In this exercise, you will select the first row of the table and bold all of the text on the row. Click anywhere on the first row of your table.

Choose *Table > Select > Row* from the menu.  
Press Ctrl-b to bold the row.

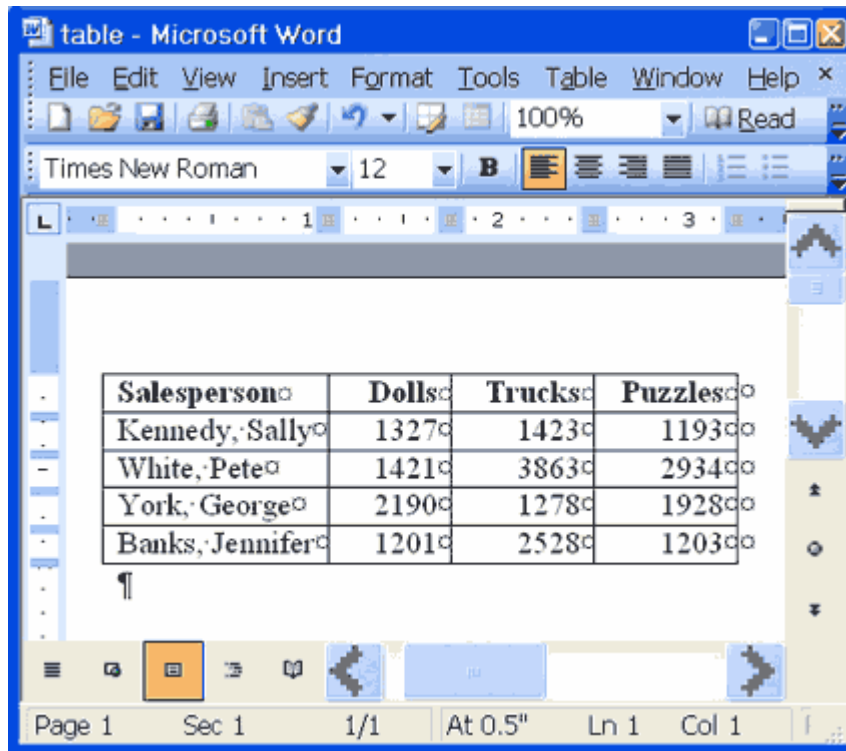
**Right-Aligning Text:** You learned about alignment in Lesson Five. In this exercise, you will right-align the second (Dolls), third (Trucks), and fourth (Puzzles) columns of the table you created.

You need to highlight "Dolls," "Trucks," and "Puzzles." Place the cursor before the "D" in "Dolls." Press the F8 key to anchor the cursor. Then press the right arrow key until you have highlighted "Dolls," "Trucks," and "Puzzles."

Choose *Table > Select > Column* from the menu.  
Press Ctrl-r to right-align the cells.

Your table should look like the one shown here. Make any needed corrections before continuing.

**Note:** All of the formatting options you learned about in previous lessons can be applied to cells in a table.



### Adding a New Row to the End of the Table

You can add additional rows to your table. The simplest way to add a new row is to move to the last column of the last row and press the Tab key. You can then type any additional text you need to add.

1. Move to the last column of the last row of your table.
2. Press the Tab key.
3. Type the text shown here.

Atwater, Kelly	4098	3079	2067
----------------	------	------	------

### Adding a Row within the Table

You can add a new row anywhere in the table. The exercise that follows demonstrates. To add a row just above York, George:

1. Place the cursor anywhere in the fourth row (the row with York, George as the salesperson).
2. Choose *Table > Insert > Rows Above* from the menu.
3. Add the information shown here to the new row.

Pillar, James	5214	3247	5467
---------------	------	------	------

### Resizing the Columns

You can easily change the size of your column widths. In this exercise, you will select the entire table and adjust all the column widths.

1. Click anywhere in your table.
2. Choose *Table > Select > Table* from the menu. Your table is selected.
3. Choose *Table > Table Properties* from the menu.
4. Choose the Column tab.
5. Type **1"** in the Preferred Width field. This will cause Microsoft Word to set all the columns to a width of one inch.
6. Click OK.

Depending on your font, the first column of your table might not be wide enough and the text might be wrapping.

Salesperson	Dolls
Kennedy, Sally	1327
White, Pete	1421
Pillar, James	5214
York, George	2190
Banks, Jennifer	1201
Atwater, Kelly	4098

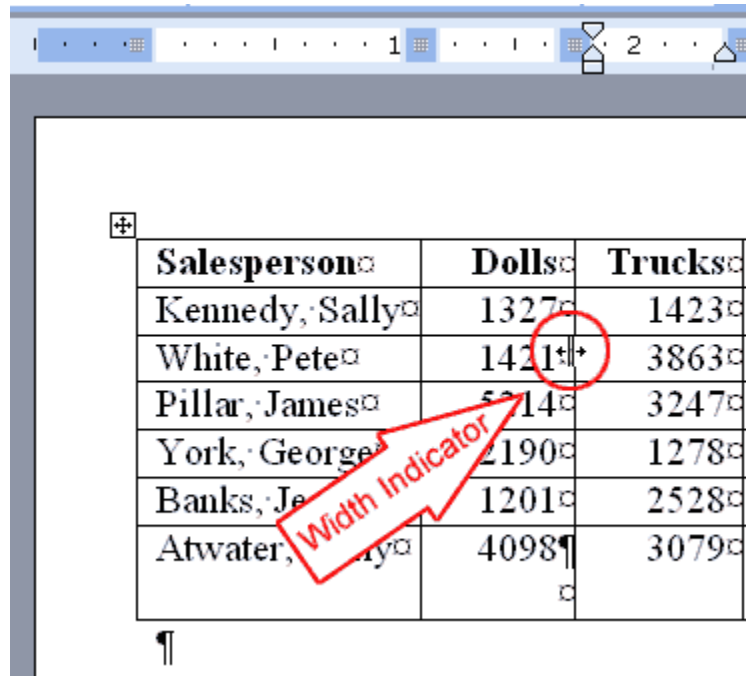
**To widen the first column:**

1. Place the cursor anywhere in the first column.
2. Choose *Table > Select > Column* from the menu.
3. Choose *Table > Table Properties* from the menu.
4. Choose the Column tab.
5. Type **1.5** in the Preferred Width field.
6. Click OK.

### Alternate Method -- Resizing Your Column Widths by Using the Width Indicator

You can resize your column widths by placing the cursor on the line that separates two columns. This causes the width indicator to appear. After the width indicator appears, left-click and drag with the mouse to adjust the column width.





Salesperson	Dolls	Trucks
Kennedy, Sally	1327	1423
White, Pete	1421	3863
Pillar, James	5214	3247
York, George	2190	1278
Banks, Jennifer	1201	2528
Atwater, Kelly	4098	3079

### Adding a New Column to a Table

You can add new columns to your table. To add a new column between the Salesperson and Dolls columns:

1. Place the cursor anywhere in the Dolls column.
2. Choose *Table > Insert > Columns to the Left* from the menu.
3. Label the new column **Region** and add the text shown in the table below.

Salesperson	Region	Dolls	Trucks	Puzzles
Kennedy, Sally	S	1327	1423	1193
White, Pete	N	1421	3863	2934
Pillar, James	N	5214	3247	5467
York, George	S	2190	1278	1928
Banks, Jennifer	S	1201	2528	1203
Atwater, Kelly	S	4098	3079	2067

### Sorting a Table

With Microsoft Word, it is easy to sort the data in your table. To sort your table data by Region and within Region by Salesperson in ascending order:

1. Click anywhere on your table.
2. Choose *Table > Sort* from the menu.
3. Select Region in the Sort By field.
4. Select Text in the Type field (because you are sorting text).
5. Select Ascending.
6. Select Salesperson in the Then By field.

7. Select Text in the Type field (because you are sorting text).
8. Select Ascending.
9. Select Header Row (because your table has titles across the top of the table).
10. Click OK.

Microsoft Word should have sorted your table like the one shown here:

<b>Salesperson</b>	<b>Region</b>	<b>Dolls</b>	<b>Trucks</b>	<b>Puzzles</b>
Pillar, James	N	5214	3247	5467
White, Pete	N	1421	3863	2934
Atwater, Kelly	S	4098	3079	2067
Banks, Jennifer	S	1201	2528	1203
Kennedy, Sally	S	1327	1423	1193
York, George	S	2190	1278	1928

### Deleting a Column

You can delete columns from your table. To delete the Trucks column:

1. Place your cursor anywhere in the Trucks column.
2. Choose *Table > Delete > Columns* from the menu.

### Deleting a Row

You can delete rows from your table. To delete the York, George row:

1. Place your cursor anywhere in the York, George row.
2. Choose *Table > Delete > Rows* from the menu.

### Merge Cell

Using Microsoft Word, you can merge cells -- turn two or more cells into one cell. In this exercise, you are going to create a new row at the top of your table, merge the cells, and add a title to the table.

1. Move to the cell located on the first row of the first column of your table (the Salesperson cell).
2. Choose *Table > Insert > Rows Above* from the menu.
3. Choose *Table > Merge Cells* from the menu.
4. Type **Toy Sales** in the new cell.
5. Press Ctrl-e to center the title.

### Table Headings

If Microsoft Word splits your table with a page break, the table heading will display on the first page but not on subsequent pages. To correct this problem, you can designate rows as headings. Heading rows are repeated on the top of your table at the top of each page. To designate a row as a heading:

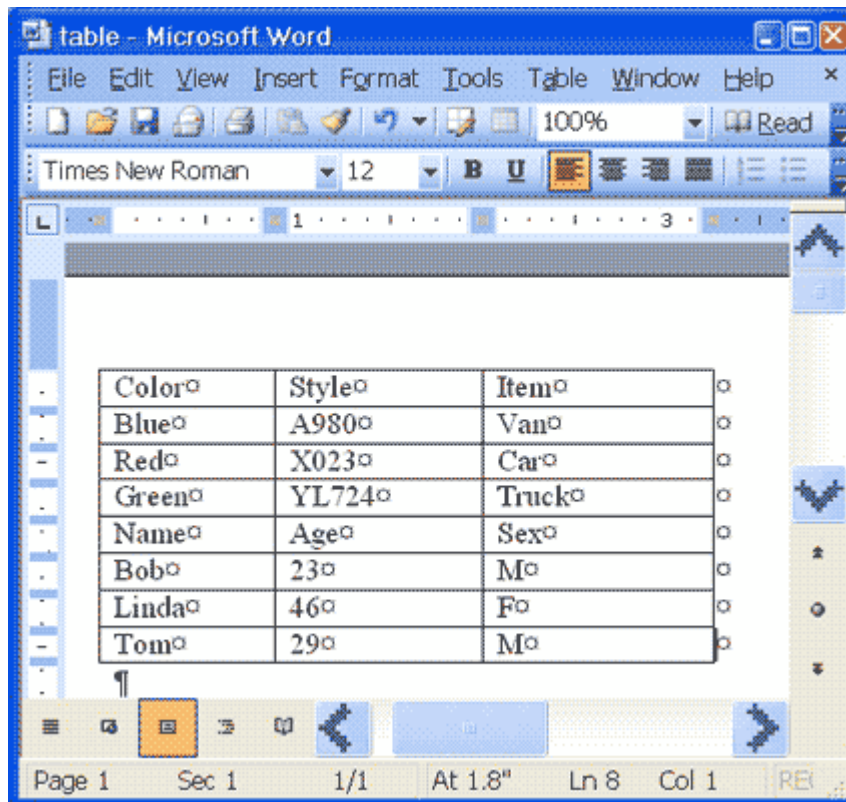
1. Place your cursor on the row.
2. Choose *Table > Heading Rows Repeat* from the menu.

### Converting Text to a Table

You can convert text to a table; however, a delimiter such as a comma, paragraph marker, or tab must separate columns of text. In the exercise that follows, you will convert comma-delimited text into a table.

1. Type the following as shown (do not bold).  
**Color, Style, Item**  
**Blue, A980, Van**  
**Red, X023, Car**  
**Green, YL724, Truck**  
**Name, Age, Sex**  
**Bob, 23, M**  
**Linda, 46, F**  
**Tom, 29, M**
2. Highlight the text.
3. Choose *Table > Convert > Text to Table* from the menu.
4. Type **3** in the Number of Columns field.
5. Select Auto in the Column Width field.
6. Select the Commas radio button in the Separate Text At frame.
7. Click OK.

Microsoft Word should have converted your text to a table and your table should look like the one shown here.



Color	Style	Item
Blue	A980	Van
Red	X023	Car
Green	YL724	Truck
Name	Age	Sex
Bob	23	M
Linda	46	F
Tom	29	M

### Splitting a Table

With Microsoft Word, splitting a single table into two tables is easy. To separate the table you just created into two tables:

1. Place your cursor anywhere on the row that reads "Name, Age, Sex."
2. Choose *Table > Split Table* from the menu.

You should now have two tables.

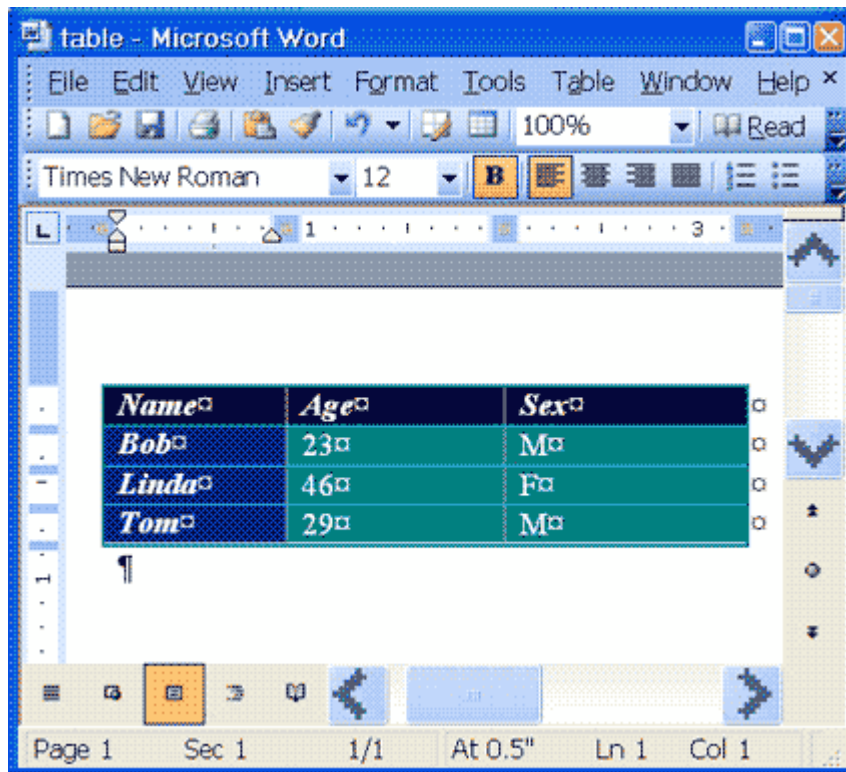
### Table AutoFormat

You can use AutoFormats to apply borders, shading, special fonts, and color to your table. Microsoft Word lists all Formats in the Table AutoFormat dialog box. While in the Table AutoFormat dialog box, click a format to see that format displayed in the Preview box. You can customize how the format is applied. Check the features you want in the Formats to Apply and the Apply Special Formats To frames. Microsoft Word comes with a long list of AutoFormats.

To apply an AutoFormat to your Name, Age, and Sex table:

1. Click anywhere in the table.
2. Choose *Table > Table AutoFormat* from the menu.
3. Click Table Colorful 1 in the Table Styles box.
4. Select Heading Rows and First Column in the Apply Special Formats To frame. Do not select Last Row and Last Column.
5. Click Apply.

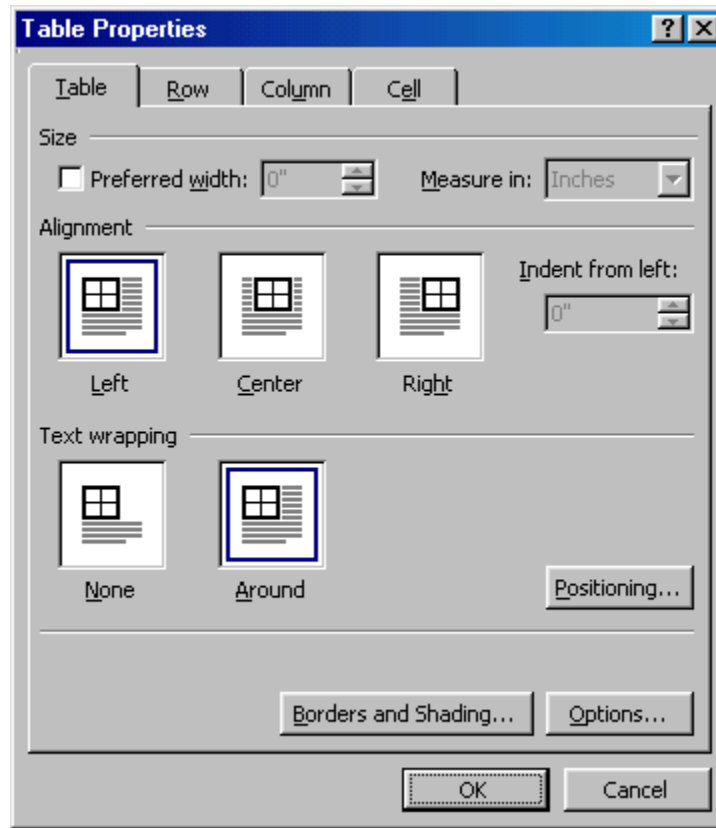
Your table should look like the one shown here.



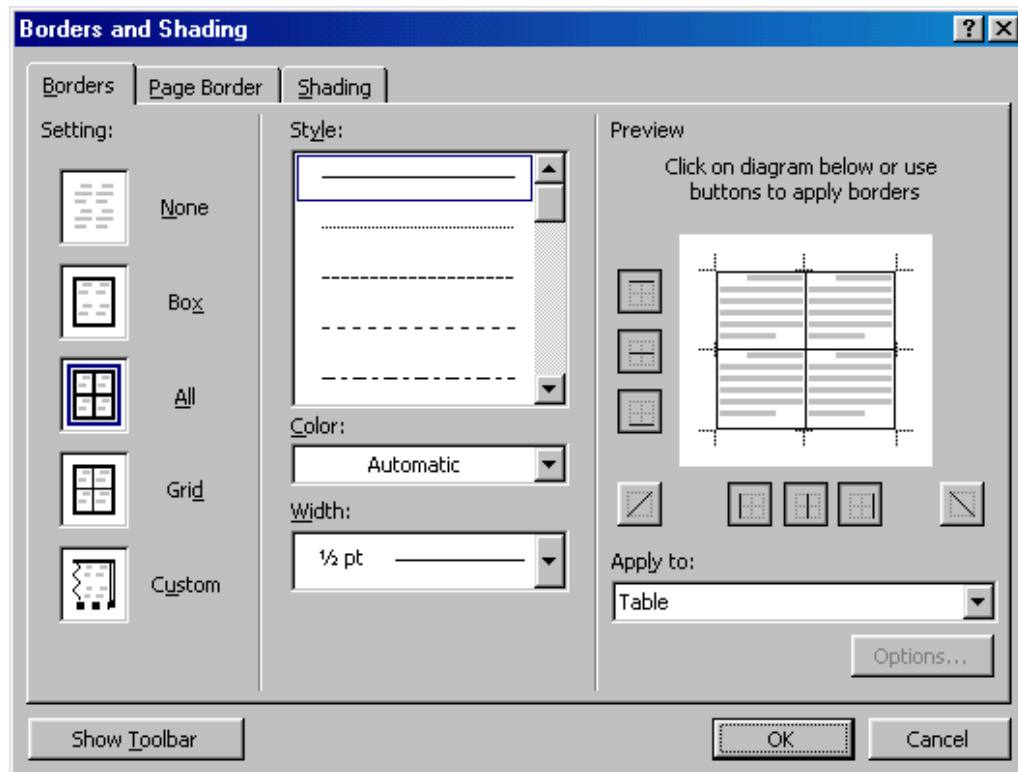
<i>Name</i>	<i>Age</i>	<i>Sex</i>
<i>Bob</i>	<i>23</i>	<i>M</i>
<i>Linda</i>	<i>46</i>	<i>F</i>
<i>Tom</i>	<i>29</i>	<i>M</i>

## Table Properties

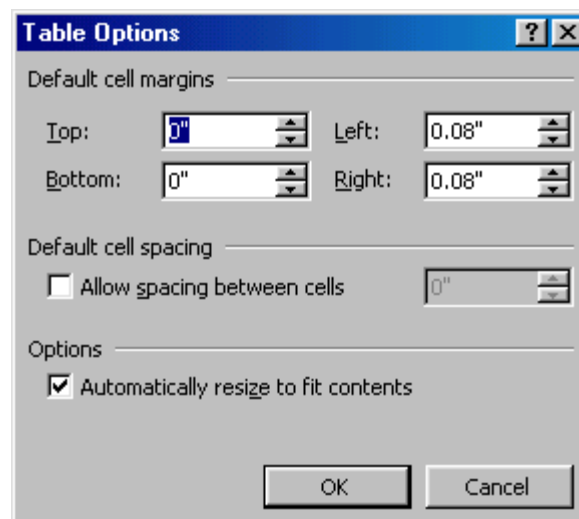
Use the **Table Properties** dialog box to modify the alignment of the table with the body text and the text within the table. Access the box by selecting **Tables|Table Properties**.



- **Size** - Check the **Preferred width** box and enter a value if the table should be an exact width.
- **Alignment** - Highlight the illustration that represents the alignment of the table in relation to the text of the document.
- **Text wrapping** - Highlight "None" if the table should appear on a separate line from the text or choose "Around" if the text should wrap around the table.
- **Borders and Shading** - Select from a number of border styles, colors, and widths. Click the **Shading** tab to change the background color and pattern.



- **Options** - Click the **Options** button on the **Table Properties** window. To change the spacing between the document text and the table borders under **Default cell margins**. Check the **Allow spacing between cells** box and enter a value to add space between the table cells.



## Save File

Save your file by following these instructions:

1. Choose *File > Save As* from the menu.

2. Specify the correct folder in the Look In field.
3. Name your file by typing **lesson7.doc** in the File Name field.
4. Click Save.
5. Choose *File > Exit* from the menu to close Microsoft Word.

### 7.1.7 Inserting a Picture

When choosing a clip to add to your document, keep in mind that just about anything can be adjusted. You can size, crop, add lines and fill effects, use a layout that lets you type text over the clip and more. To insert clipart:

1. Place the insertion point in the location where clipart is to be added.
2. From the **Insert** menu, choose **Picture** and **Clipart**. The **Insert Clipart** dialog box displays as below.

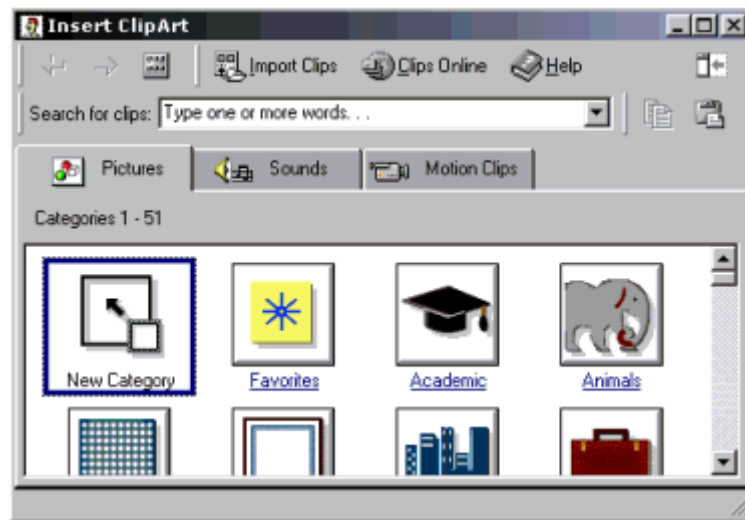
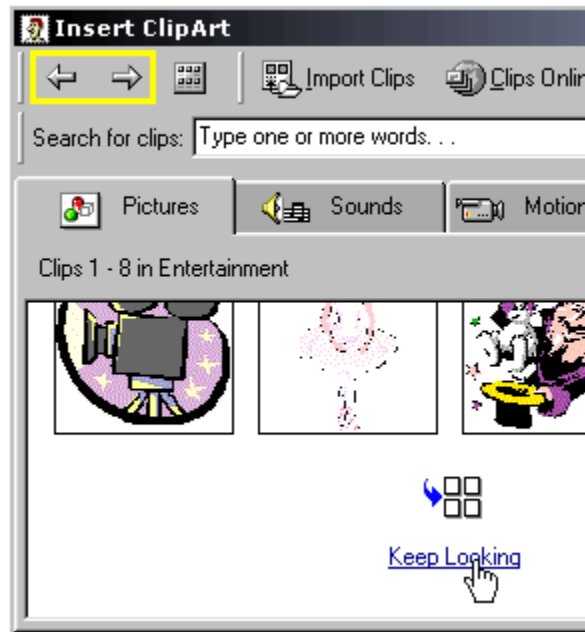


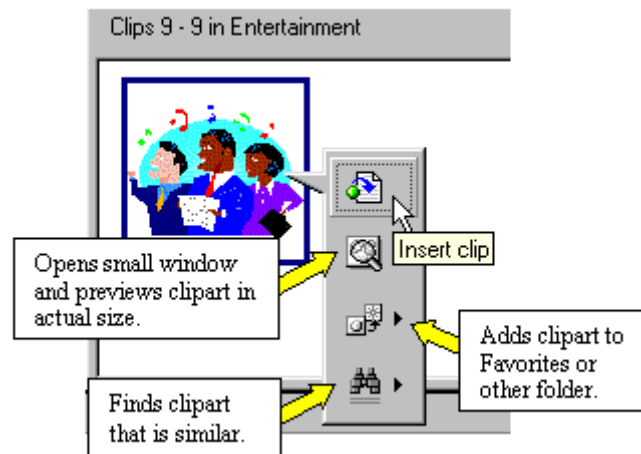
Fig 7.11 Clip Art

Note the **Favorites** category that you can add often used clips to for easy access. You'll find out how below. Also note, that there is a **Search for clips** field available for your use. Clipart in Word is categorized and related to keywords. By typing a keyword in this box and pressing **Enter**, Word will search for all clips associated with that word regardless of the category.

3. Click on a category that suits your needs. In our example, we've chosen "Entertainment". The first page of clips immediately displays.
4. To navigate through the clipart pages, use the arrows outlined in yellow below, or click on **Keep Looking** to go to the next page.



5. Click on the image you want to insert. A shortcut menu appears. This little shortcut menu can be a valuable tool - see the explanations in the graphic below.



The last tool, which finds clipart that is similar, can be great if you need more than one clip to insert with the same theme or if you like the look of one and want to see other clipart with the same artistic effect.



6. Once you are sure have located the right clip, click and choose the **Insert Clip** button or right-click on the clip and choose **Insert Clip**.



The clipart is inserted in your document, but it probably needs some adjusting to fit your needs.

### Modifying Clipart

The first thing you should know about modifying clipart, is how to adjust the size. When you single-click on clipart, the clipart is selected and square "nodes" appear on the corners and sides, as below.



#### To resize:

A double arrow is displayed when hovering the mouse over one of these nodes. Holding the mouse button down, drag to reduce or enlarge the image.

To have more control over adjusting the size, hold down the **Alt** key while dragging. This allows for more precise adjustments.

**Note:** The nodes on the corners adjust the size *proportionally*, and do not distort the image. More than likely, you will want to use the corner nodes to adjust size. The nodes on the bottom and top adjust the height only, and the nodes on the sides adjust the only the width. Take a look at the following comparison.



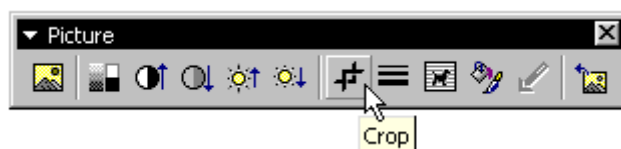
Size adjusted with corner node.  
(no distortion)



Size adjusted with side node.  
(distortion)

#### To crop:

You can also use the **Picture** toolbar to adjust brightness, crop, change the layout, etc. To use the picture toolbar, select the clipart, then right-click on the existing toolbars at the top of your screen and choose **Picture**. The toolbar is displayed.



This same toolbar is used when you insert a picture from a file - like a family photo. If you crop a picture, you cut out part of the picture along one of the sides. So, let's pretend our clipart is a family photo and cut out our mother-in-law!

1. Choose the **Crop** tool, as above.
2. Move your mouse over one of the top, bottom, or side nodes. The crop tool appears along with your mouse.
3. Hold the mouse button down and drag to crop. Note that you can also press the **Alt** key here while dragging for greater control.

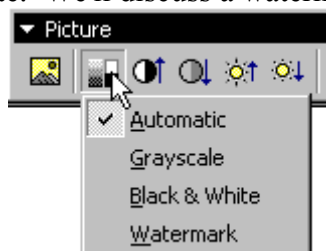


#### Other useful Picture toolbar tools:

If tools or selection options are grayed out, it is because the tool is only available when inserting a picture file such as a JPEG or GIF.

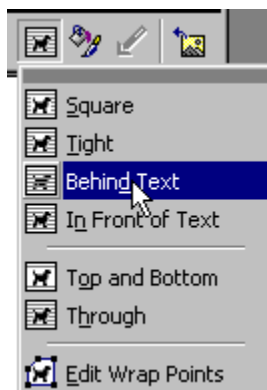
The first button on the toolbar inserts a picture from a file into your document. You will not use this tool when working with clipart.

The second tool is **Image Control**. You can use this tool to grayscale your clipart or make it black and white. We'll discuss a watermark later on.



Following image control, are buttons that can be used to increase or decrease the contrast and brightness of the clipart.

The **Text Wrapping** tool tells word how you want to treat text that surrounds the clipart. For example, you might want to type text over the clipart and use it as a background.



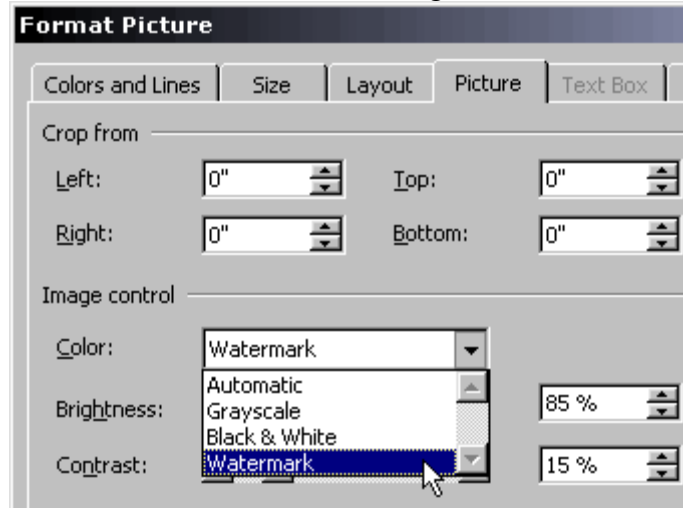
The **Format Picture** tool (paint bucket) opens the **Format Picture** dialog box, which is discussed in the next section of this tutorial.

And last but not least, if you are not satisfied with the adjustments you have made, the **Reset Picture** button on the end of the toolbar resets the clipart to its original state.

### The Format Picture Dialog Box

The methods discussed so far, are ones that I find are the easiest to use. However, you can also make modifications with the **Format Picture** dialog box. It allows you to make many changes at one time, and has a few additional features.

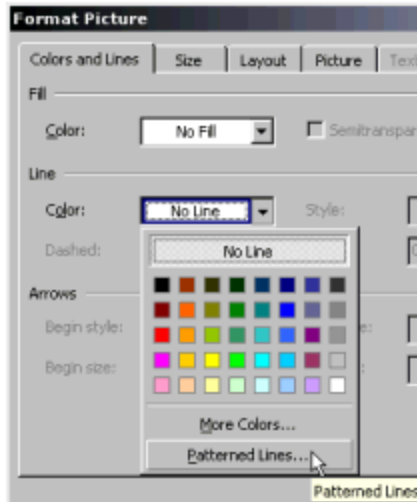
The easiest way to access the **Format Picture** dialog box is to double-click on the clipart.



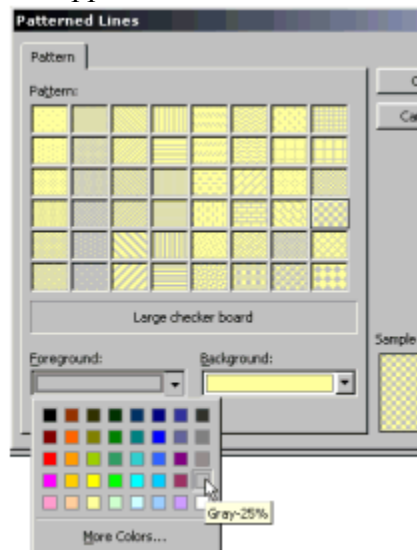
The **Picture** tab is displayed first by default. As you can see, there are fields for cropping and image control. Exact measurements and percentages can be used here to adjust cropping, brightness, and contrast. However, I find the **Picture** toolbar discussed earlier to be more "friendly". Personally, I could spend all day going to this box and adjusting measurements, etc. - but if I use the **Picture** toolbar, I can see my changes immediately and modify accordingly.

In the following example, some of the more useful features are demonstrated by creating a watermark of our clipart that we can type text over for a newsletter title.

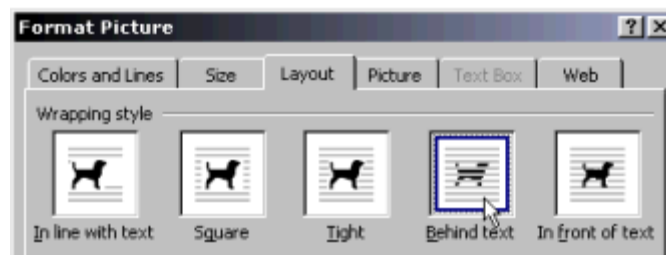
1. Select **Watermark** from the **Color** field.
2. Move to the **Colors and Lines** tab of the dialog box and select **Patterned Lines** from the **Line, Color** field.



The **Patterned Lines** dialog box appears as below.



3. Select a pattern and choose **Foreground** and **Background** colors to match your clipart. A preview is shown in the **Sample** field.
4. Choose **OK**.
5. Next, move to the **Layout** tab.
6. Use the picture examples and choose a **Wrapping style**. In our example, we need **Behind text**.



7. Choose **OK** on the **Format Picture** dialog box. Our clipart now looks like the example below.



8. Move your insertion point and type text as you would in any document.



When you choose to have **Behind text** as the layout, you are allowed to move the image around on your screen. In this case, we want to move the image down and a bit to the right.

9. Select the image. Move your mouse to the middle of the image, hold the button down, and drag the clipart to the proper location. Remember, you can press and hold the **Alt** key for more precise movement.



Voila! We're finished. Clipart can be an amazing addition to your documents. It takes a little time and practice, but is well worth the effort!

### 7.1.8 Inserting Page Numbers and Date/Time

1. Click **Insert** at top of screen
2. Select **Page Numbers and/or Date & Time**

---

## 7.2 MS WORD – II

---

### 7.2.1 Autocorrect facility

Microsoft Word's AutoCorrect facility can automatically correct common spelling mistakes and often-used acronyms, initialisms etc. AutoCorrect can be turned on and off from the Tools menu:

1. Go to the Tools menu and select Options.
2. Click the Spelling & Grammar tab.
3. In the Spelling area, check (on) or uncheck (off) the Check spelling as you type checkbox.

#### Adding entries to AutoCorrect

To manually add entries to AutoCorrect:

Go to the Tools menu and select AutoCorrect (Word 2000) or AutoCorrect Options (Word XP/2003).

In the AutoCorrect: English (Australia) dialog, go to the Replace field and enter the incorrect word or acronym/initialism (eg. organize, ATO).

In the with field, enter the correct word or full text of the acronym/initialism (eg. organize, Australian Taxation Office).

- Click the Add button.
- Click the OK button.

Now, if you were to type: 'The **ATO** site can tell you how to **organize** your records', Word would automatically change the sentence to read: 'The **Australian Taxation Office** site can tell you how to **organize** your records, as you type.

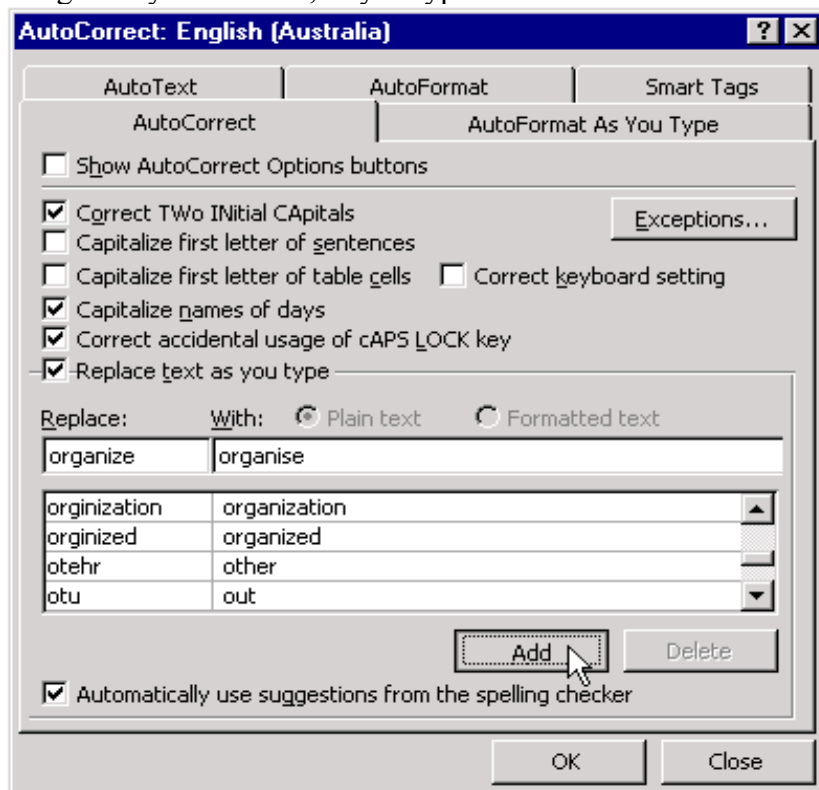
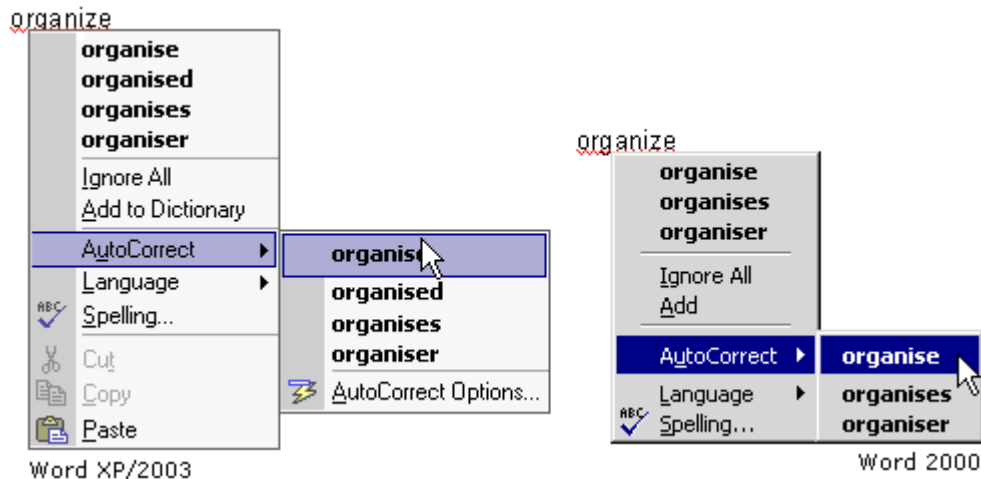


Fig 7.12 Autocorrect dialog box

If you're using spell checking as you type, you can also add entries through the right-click menu:

1. Right-click the underlined word and select AutoCorrect.
2. From the sub-menu list of options, select the replacement word.



**Note:** AutoCorrect can be used for phrases as well as single words. If you find yourself constantly using phrases such as 'give consideration to' instead of 'consider', or 'in the near future' instead of 'soon', you can tell MS Word to automatically correct the phrase as you type.

### AutoCorrect Options buttons

In Word XP/2003, you can also manage auto-corrections using AutoCorrect Options buttons. To turn on AutoCorrect Options buttons:

Go to the Tools menu and select AutoCorrect Options.

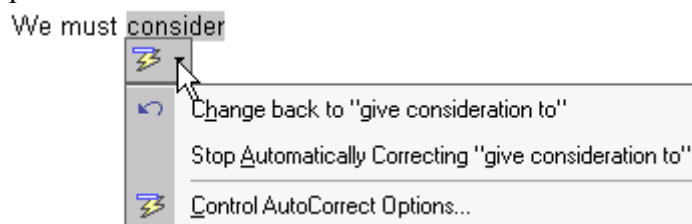
Tick the Show AutoCorrect Options buttons checkbox.

Click the OK button.

Now, whenever Word makes an auto-correction, you can backspace (or move your mouse) to the correction to display the auto-correction underline:

We must consider

However over the underline to show the AutoCorrect Options button, and then click the button to display options:



Change back : Undoes the correction for this one instance.

Stop Automatically Correcting : Undoes the correction for this one instance, and then deletes the auto-correction so it will not happen again.

AutoCorrect Options buttons remain available for each correction until the document is closed. If you change your mind about changing an auto-correction, open the button again and select Redo AutoCorrect.

### **Deleting entries from AutoCorrect**

To delete entries from AutoCorrect:

1. Go to the Tools menu and select AutoCorrect (Word 2000) or AutoCorrect Options (Word XP/2003).
2. Click the Spelling & Grammar tab.
3. Scroll through the list at the bottom of the tab and click on the entry to be deleted.
4. Click the Delete button.
5. Click the OK button.

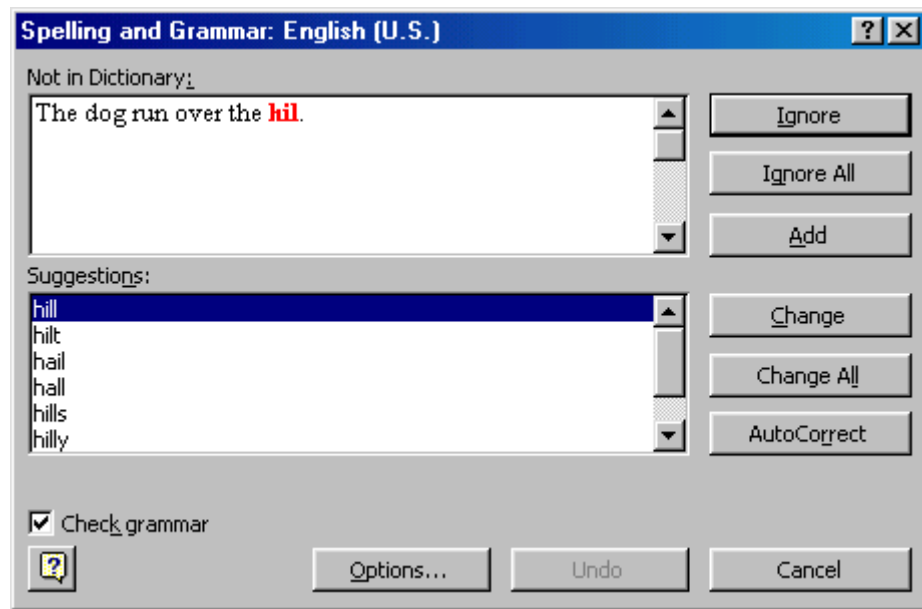
## **7.2.2 Spelling and Grammar**

Word will automatically check for spelling and grammar errors as you type unless you turn this feature off. Spelling errors are noted in the document with a red underline. Grammar errors are indicated by a green underline. To disable this feature, select **Tools|Options** from the menu bar and click the **Spelling and Grammar tab** on the dialog box. Uncheck "**Check spelling as you type**" and "**Check grammar as you type**", and click **OK**.

To use the spelling and grammar checker, follow these steps:

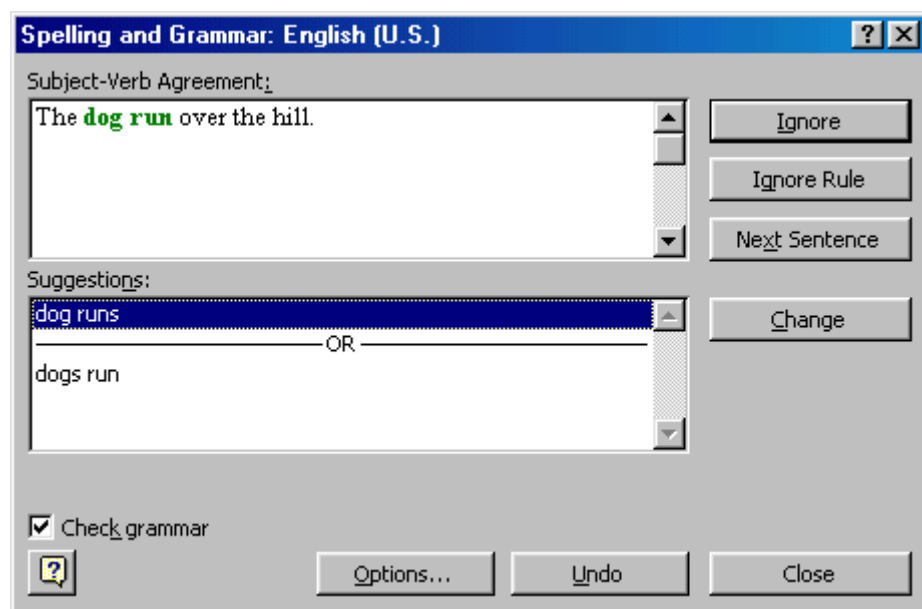
- Select **Tools / Spelling and Grammar** from the menu bar.
- The **Spelling and Grammar** dialog box will notify you of the first mistake in the document and misspelled words will be highlighted in red.
- If the word is spelled correctly, click the **Ignore** button or click the **Ignore All** button if the word appears more than once in the document.
- If the word is spelled incorrectly, choose one of the suggested spellings in the **Suggestions** box and click the **Change** button or **Change All** button to correct all occurrences of the word in the document. If the correct spelling is not suggested, enter the correct spelling in the **Not In Dictionary** box and click the **Change** button.
- If the word is spelled correctly and will appear in many documents you type (such as your name), click the **Add** button to add the word to the dictionary so it will no longer appear as a misspelled word.





As long as the **Check Grammar** box is checked in the **Spelling and Grammar** dialog box, Word will check the grammar of the document in addition to the spelling. If you do not want the grammar checked, remove the checkmark from this box. Otherwise, follow these steps for correcting grammar:

- If Word finds a grammar mistake, it will be shown in the box as the spelling errors. The mistake is highlighted in green text.

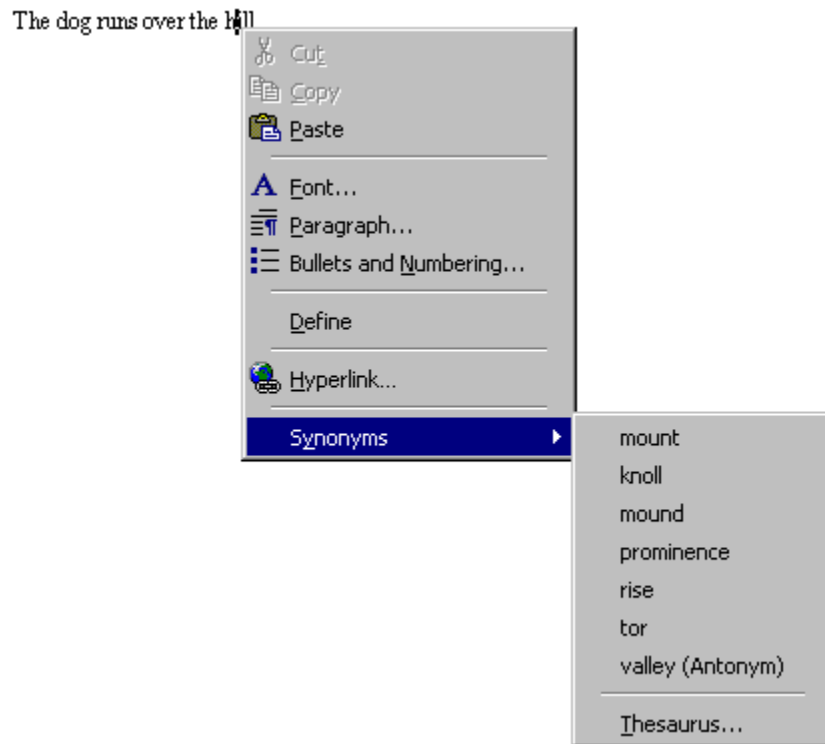


- Several suggestions may be given in the **Suggestions** box. Select the correction that best applies and click **Change**.

- If no correction is needed (Word is often wrong more than it is right), click the **Ignore** button.

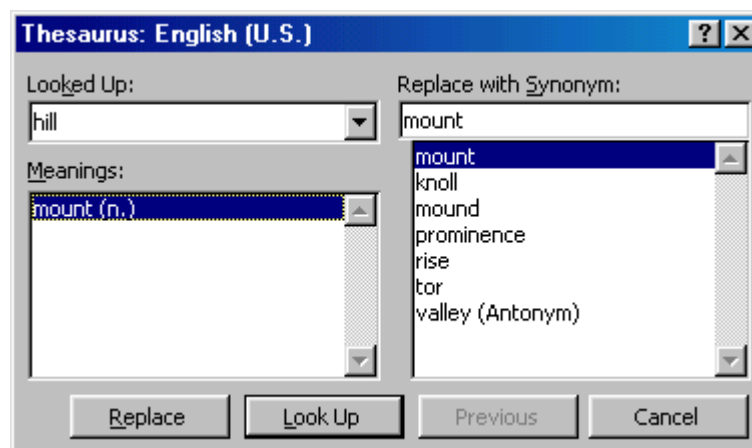
## Synonyms

Word 2000 has a new feature for finding synonyms. Simply right-click on the word and select **Synonyms** from the shortcut menu. From the list of suggested words, highlight the word you would like to use or click **Thesaurus...** for more options.



## Thesaurus

To use the thesaurus, select **Tools | Language | Thesaurus** from the menu bar or select it from the **Synonyms** shortcut menu as detailed above.



A list of meanings and synonyms are given on the windows. Double-click on the words in the **Meanings** box or click the **Look Up** button to view similar words. Double-click words in the **Replace with Synonym** box to view synonyms of those words. Highlight the word you would like to add and click the **Replace** button.

### 7.2.3 Macros

Do you always perform repeated tasks in Microsoft Word? Repeated tasks, if not automated are prone to human errors. If you perform a task repeatedly in Microsoft Word, you can automate the task by using a macro.

A macro is a series of Word commands and instructions that you group together as a single command to accomplish a task automatically. Since not all of us are programmers who can write code in Visual Basic, I will show you a way to create macros without even writing code.

First open up your Word document then click **Tools > Macro > Record New Macro**

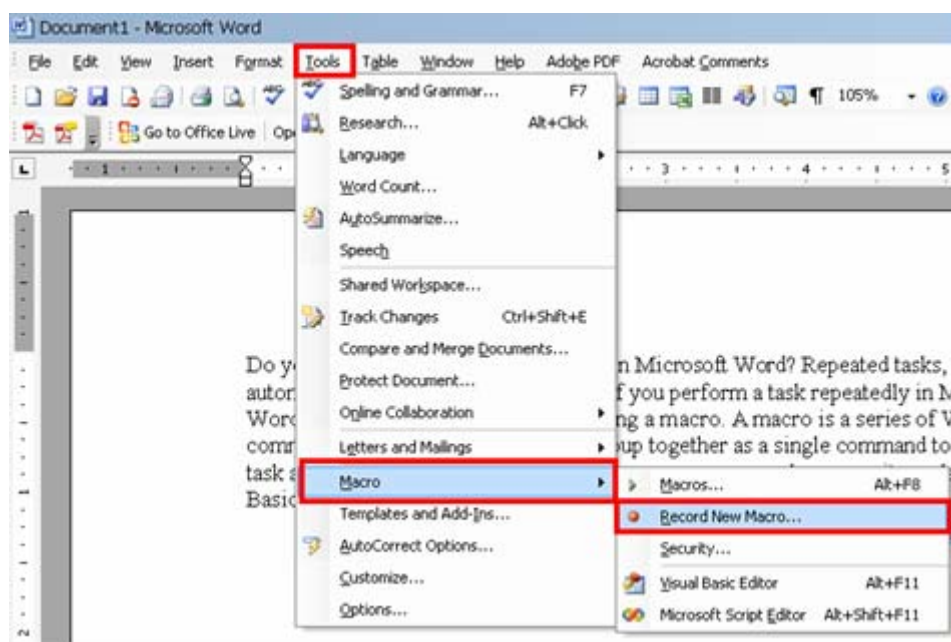
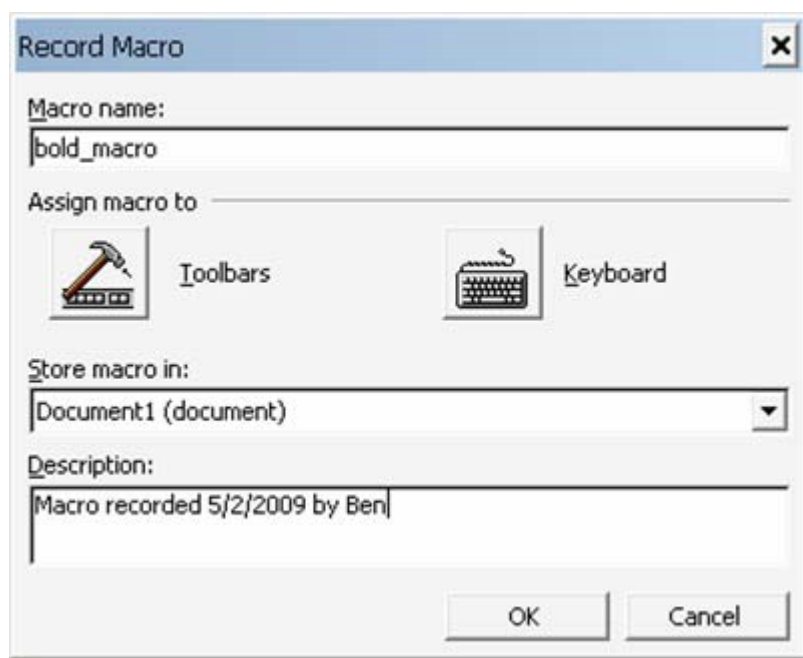


Fig 7.13 Selecting Macros

According to the help document the macro recorder in Word acts like a tape recorder. It records your deliberate keystrokes and mouse button clicks ... when you record a macro, you can use the mouse to click commands and options, but not to select text.

You must use the keyboard to record these actions. For example, you can use F8 to select text and press END to move the cursor to the end of the line. Remember that it records keystrokes and mouse clicks only.

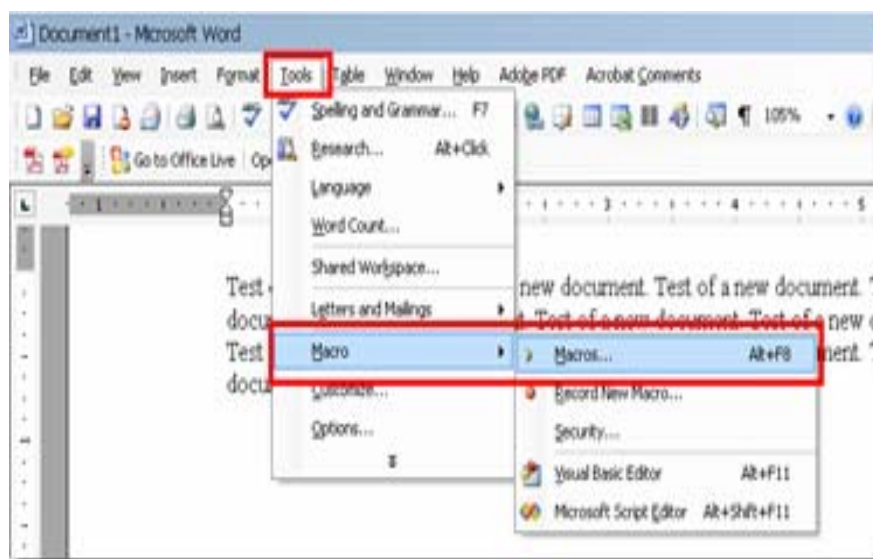
When you record a macro it will ask for a macro name so assign it a descriptive macro name. After that, click the OK button to record the macro.



Once you see the recording toolbar, enter the keystrokes that you want to record. In the example below I indented the first line of the paragraph (TAB) then I selected all (Control-A) then I applied the bold format (Control-B). After this I stopped the recording of macro by clicking the stop button.



The macro will be saved and you can run it by clicking the run macro command (or Alt-F8) from the Tools menu.



Before the macro run:

Test of a new document. Test of a new document. Test of a new document. Test of a new document. Test of a new document. Test of a new document. Test of a new document. Test of a new document. Test of a new document. Test of a new document. Test of a new document.

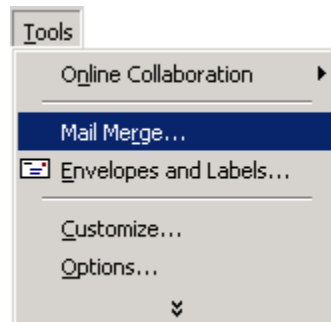
After the macro run:

**Test of a new document. Test of a new document. Test of a new document. Test of a new document. Test of a new document. Test of a new document. Test of a new document. Test of a new document. Test of a new document. Test of a new document. Test of a new document.**

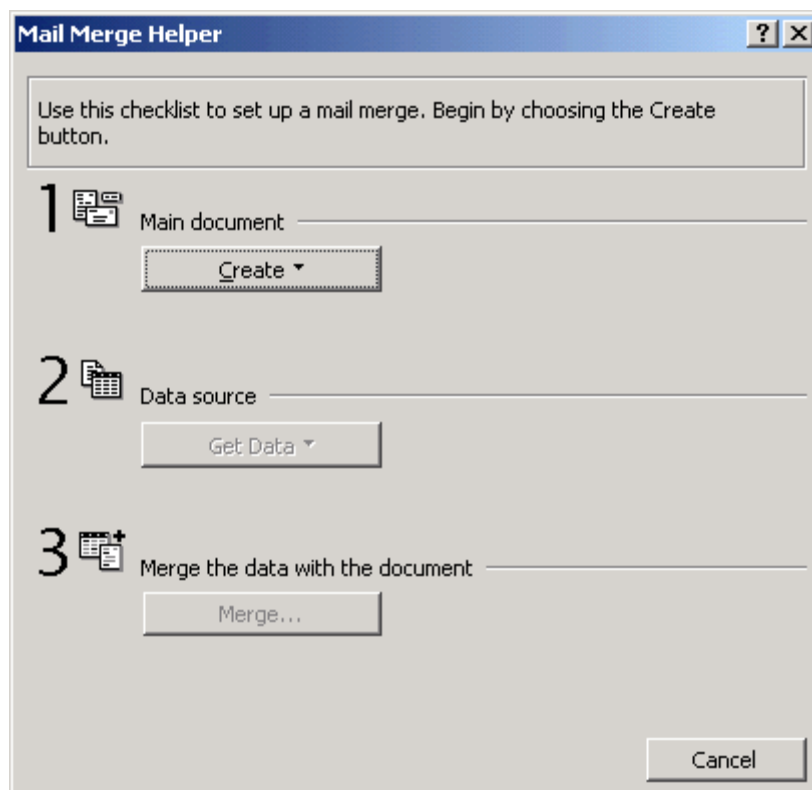
Now that you know how to make macros by recording keystrokes and mouse clicks, apply this tip on your own repeated tasks. This will increase your productivity and also you quality of work.

## 7.2.4 Mail-Merge in Microsoft Word 2000

Click Tools > Mail Merge



The Mail Merge Helper opens. Mail Merge is a three step process.

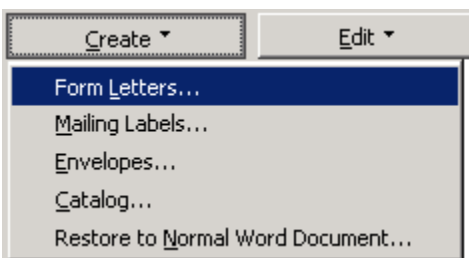


**Fig 7.14 Mail Merge**

### **Step 1:**

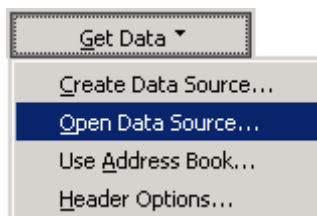
Click Create to choose the document type. Click on the document type that you will be creating. On the next screen choose to use the current document as the Merge Document.

Click Edit to edit the current document.



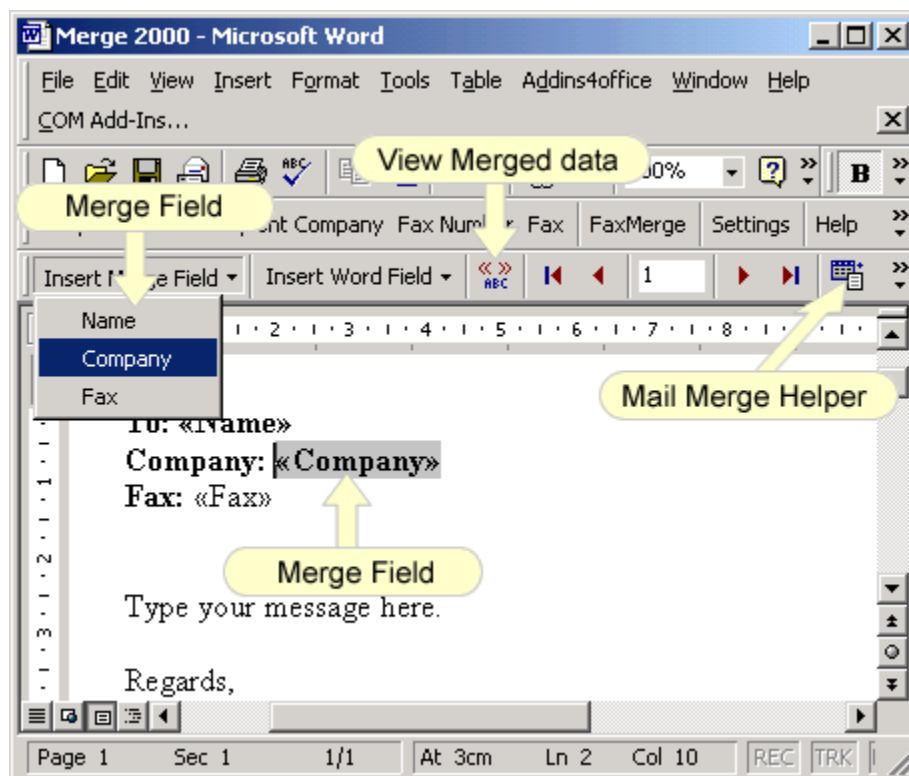
## Step 2:

Click Get Data. This gets enabled once Step 1 is completed. Choose from the Get Data list where the contacts are stored.



When the data source is chosen, a message will warn that no Merge Fields are in the current document and will ask to insert Merge Fields in the document. Click "Edit Main Document" on this message to enter Merge Fields in the document.

Merge Fields are placeholders for where the Contact's real information will be inserted by the wizard.



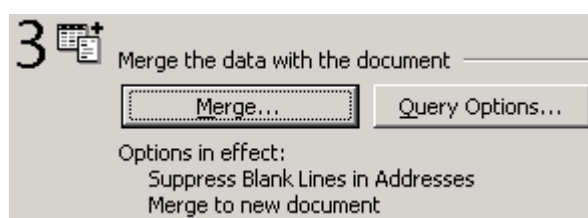
Click in the appropriate place in the document that you want to insert Merge Fields. From the Mail Merge toolbar Click "Insert Merge Field" and Click the Merge Field to insert into the document. The Merge Field will appear as "<<Company>>" in the document.

Click "ABC" to view the document with the merged data.

Click "Mail Merge Helper" button on the Mail Merge Toolbar.

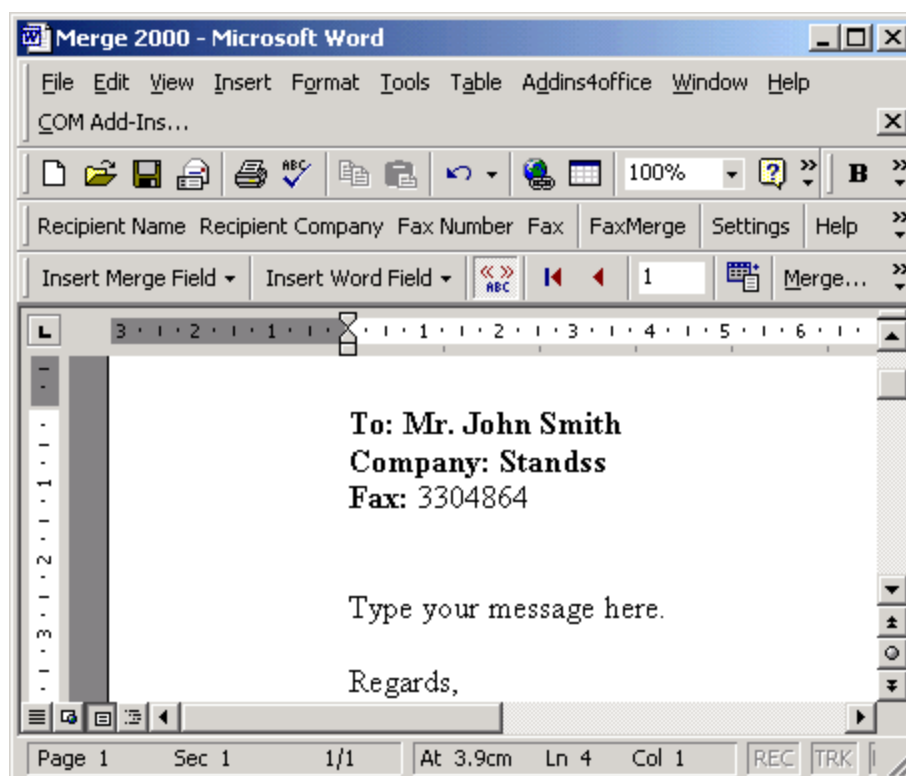
### Step 3:

Click Merge on the Mail Merge Helper screen.



On the next screen Click Merge.

Separate documents with the Merge Fields replaced by the actual contact details will be created.



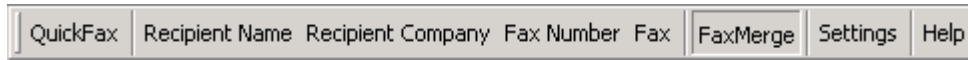


The Mail Merge process is complete. Use this Mail Merged document to send faxes to multiple recipients using the Fax Merge feature in Fax4Word.

### How to Fax Merge

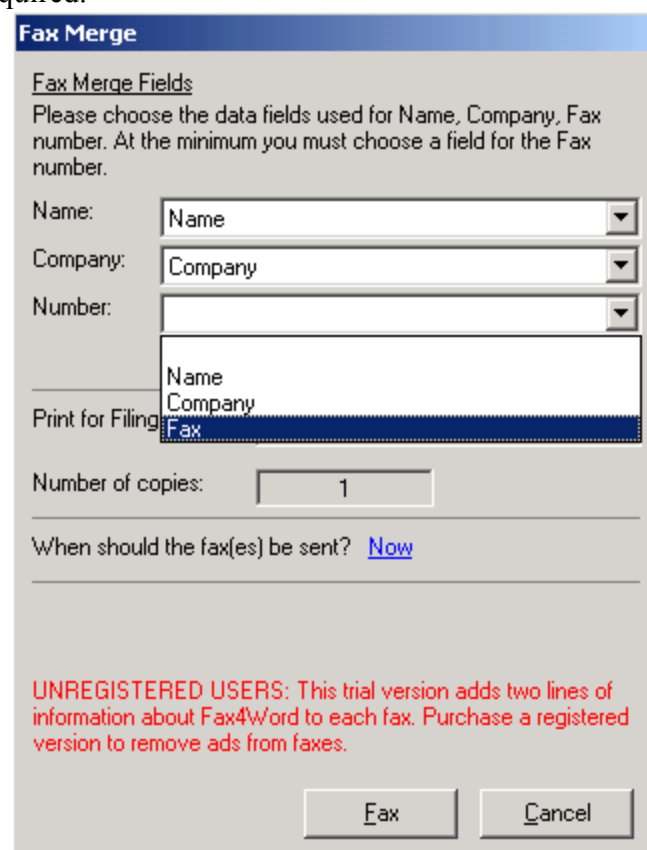
Once you have created a Mail Merge document, all you need to do is...

Click "Fax Merge" on the Fax4Word toolbar in MSWord.



In the Fax Merge screen, fill the details from the drop down list and choose the appropriate fields from the list for Name, Company and Number.

**Note:** Number is required.

The image shows a 'Fax Merge' dialog box. At the top, it says 'Fax Merge Fields' and provides instructions: 'Please choose the data fields used for Name, Company, Fax number. At the minimum you must choose a field for the Fax number.' Below this are three dropdown menus: 'Name:' with 'Name' selected, 'Company:' with 'Company' selected, and 'Number:' which is currently empty. A list box below these shows the available options: 'Name', 'Company', and 'Fax'. The 'Fax' option is highlighted. Below the list box is a 'Print for Filing' checkbox. Further down is a 'Number of copies:' field with the value '1'. Below that is a question 'When should the fax(es) be sent?' with a 'Now' link. At the bottom, there is a red text warning: 'UNREGISTERED USERS: This trial version adds two lines of information about Fax4Word to each fax. Purchase a registered version to remove ads from faxes.' and two buttons: 'Fax' and 'Cancel'.

Click "Fax Only" to send the fax.

Select a printer from the drop down list for "Use this printer to print a paper copy for filing".

To send fax and print a copy of the sent fax click "Fax and Copy" on the Fax Merge screen.

The fax will be sent when "Fax only" or "Fax and Print" is clicked. To view the status of the faxes being sent, go to Fax Console. (Click Start > All Programs > Accessories > Communications > Fax > Fax Console).

The Fax Merge is completed and multiple faxes are sent with just a few clicks.

### 7.2.5 Create a Template

Templates are a special type of Word document that can hold text, styles, macros, keyboard shortcuts, custom toolbars and AutoText entries. A document created using a template will have access to all of these features and a large part of your job in creating a new document will be done for you if your templates are well thought out. You don't need to use all (or even any) of these features for templates to help you and those with whom you work.

#### Using Templates

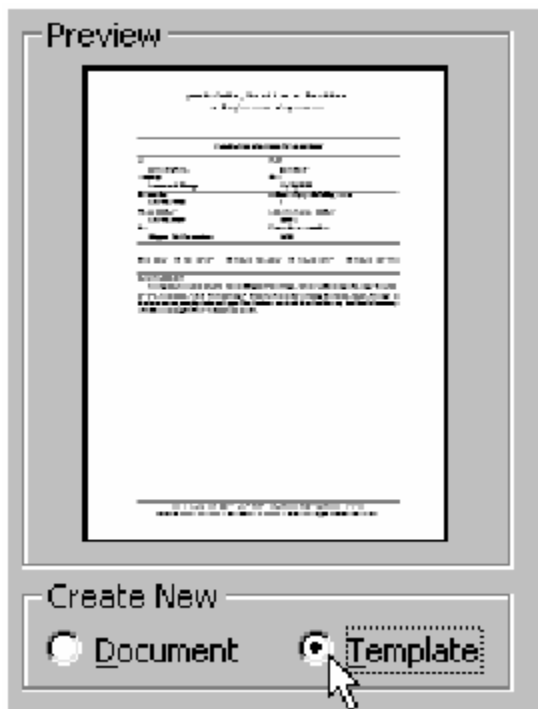
- A **template** sets what text, formatting and graphics will automatically appear in the new document. The template is a base pattern of content for a document.
- **Templates** can be created for expense reports, status reports — any document that is used repetitively.
- **Templates** not only save you time, they allow for a custom editing environment, store tools to edit a document effectively, store Styles, store automated macro procedures, and store AutoText boilerplate

#### Accessing Library Templates

- ❖ The built-in **Template Library** gives you access to more than 40 preset templates from within Word.
- ❖ From the main menu, choose **File > New** to open the **New Document** pane, and click on **General Templates** to open the **Templates** dialog box:

#### To select a Template from the Templates dialog box:

- ❖ From the main menu, choose **File > New** to open the **New Document** panel
- ❖ Click on **General Templates** to open the **Templates** dialog box.
- ❖ Select the required template. The **Preview** area will show a thumbnail image of the template.
- ❖ Select the **Template** option in the **Create New** options area.
- ❖ This will create the item as a template rather than a one-time document.
- ❖ Click **OK**.
- ❖ The new template will open. Make any adjustments if needed, and save with a different name under a different folder.

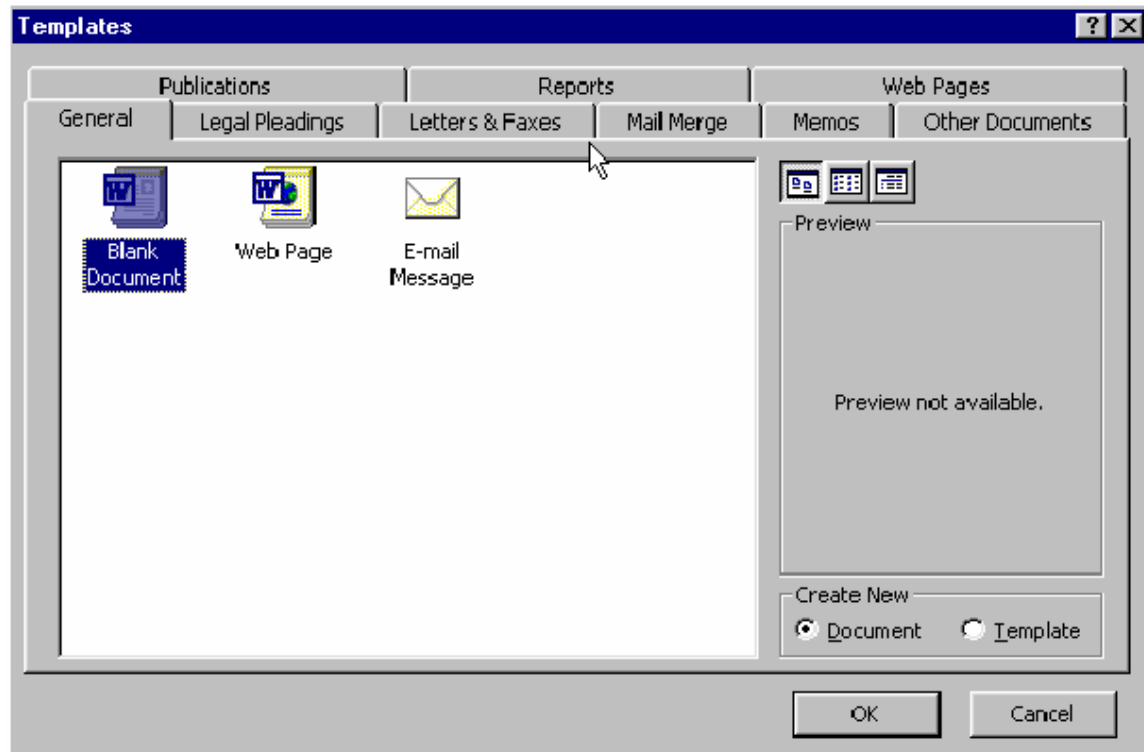


## Modifying a Template

- ❖ The templates in the **Template Library** and on the **Microsoft.com** Website cannot be altered until they have been saved in an alternate folder on the hard drive with a different name.
- ❖ Once saved, open the template, and make any alterations required.

### To save a modified Template:

- ❖ From the main menu, choose **File > Save As** to save the template as a template file.
- ❖ Confirm that **Document Template** is selected in the **Save as type** field.
- ❖ Once all selections are set and confirmed, click **Save**.
- ❖ The various template tabs allow you to select and use templates to create **Letters**, **Faxes** and **Memos**, do a **Mail Merge**, etc.
- ❖ Most of the templates have built-in directions that cover where to enter information



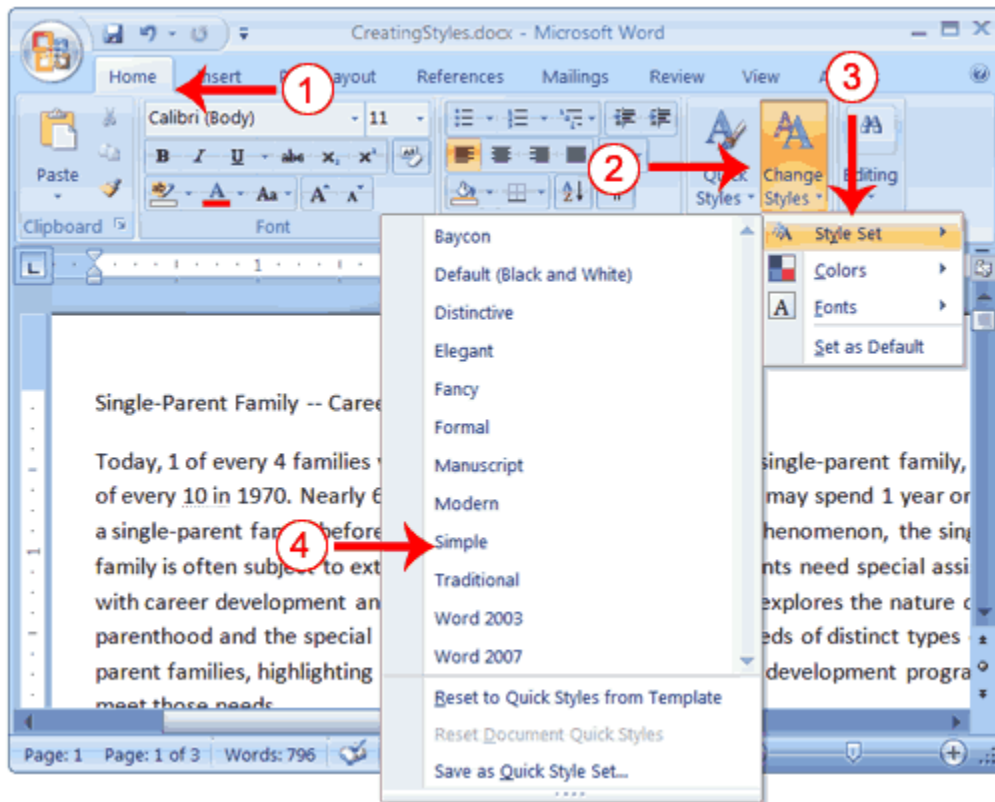
**Fig 7.15 Templates**

### 7.2.6 Style

When working with Word, you can use styles to quickly format your documents. A style is a set of formats consisting of such things as fonts, font colors, font sizes, and paragraph formats. Word 2007 supplies you with pre-designed style sets that contain styles for titles, subtitles, quotes, headings, lists and more. The sections that follow all show you how to work with styles. Click Save Target As from the menu that appears, and save the linked file to a directory on your computer. Then open the file.

## EXERCISE:

### Choose a Style Set



1. Choose the Home tab.
2. Click Change Styles in the Styles group. A menu appears.
3. Click Style Set. A menu appears. You can choose from any of the styles listed on the menu.
4. Click Simple. Word 2007 reformats all of the paragraphs into the Simple style by applying the Normal format to each paragraph.

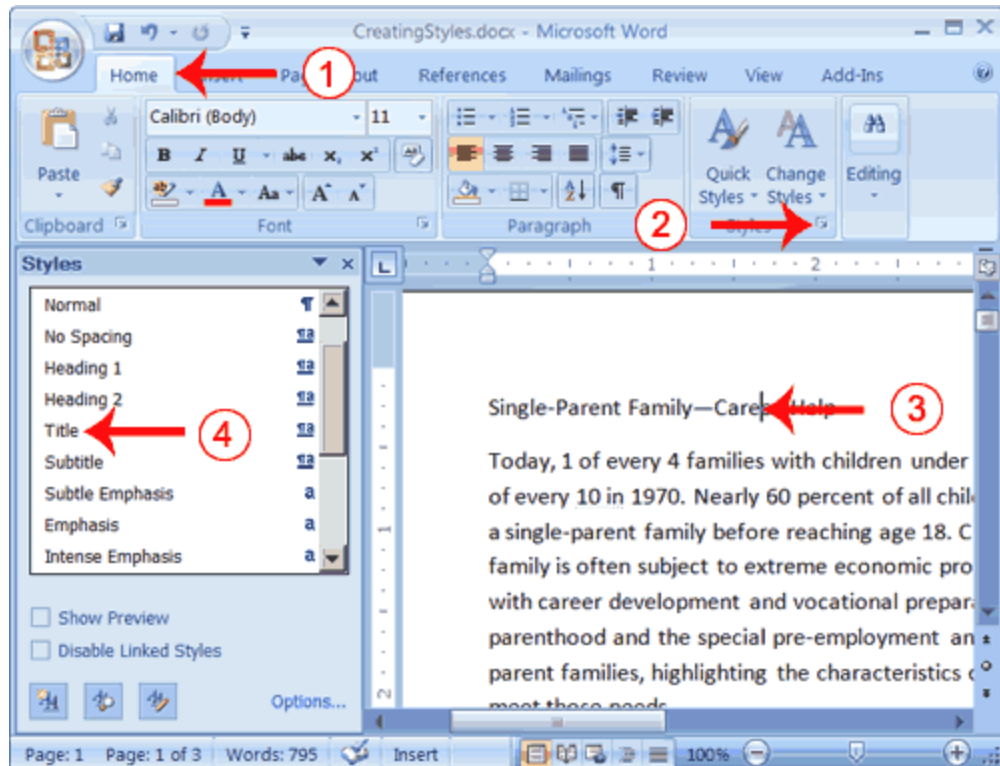
### Apply a Style


You can see all the styles available to you in the style set by clicking the launcher in the Styles group and opening the Styles pane. You can leave the Styles pane open and available for use by docking it. To dock the Styles pane, click the top of the pane and drag it to the left or right edge of the Word window.

You do not need to select an entire paragraph to apply a style. If the cursor is anywhere in the paragraph, when you click on the style, Word formats the entire paragraph.

## EXERCISE:

### Apply the Title Style



1. Choose the Home tab.
2. Click the launcher in the Styles Group. The Styles pane appears. You can drag it to the side of the Word window to dock it. To close the Styles pane, click the Close button  in the upper right corner of the pane .
3. Click anywhere in the paragraph "Single-Parent Family—Career Help."
4. Click Title in the Styles pane. Word 2007 applies the Title style to the paragraph.

Headings and subheadings mark major topics within your document. With Word 2007, you can easily format the headings and subheadings in your document.

### Apply Headings

1. Click anywhere in the paragraph "The Nature of Single Parenthood."
2. In the Style box, click Heading 1. Word reformats the paragraph.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 in the following paragraphs:
  - Types of Single Parents
  - Career Development Needs of Single Parents
  - Career Development Programs

### Apply Subheadings

1. Click anywhere in the paragraph "Displaced Homemakers"

2. In the Style box, click Heading 2. Word reformats the paragraph.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the following paragraphs:
  - Displaced Homemakers
  - Adolescent Mothers
  - Single Fathers
  - High School Dropout Prevention
  - Established Education Sites

### **Alternate Method -- Apply Styles with the Ribbon**

You can also choose styles by selecting the option you want from the Styles group on the Ribbon. First you must place your cursor in the paragraph to which you want to apply the style. Then you click the More button in the Styles group to see all of the styles in the currently selected set. As you roll your cursor over each of the styles listed, Word 2007 provides you with a live preview of how the style will appear when applied.

1. Select the paragraphs "Emotional Support" through "Parenthood Education" (they are probably on page two).
2. Click the More button in the Styles group.
3. Locate and click the List Paragraph style. Word applies the List Paragraph style to the paragraphs you selected.

### **Change Style Sets**

Once you have applied styles, changing to another style set is easy. You simply open the Style Set gallery. As you move your cursor down the menu, Word 2007 provides you with a live preview of the effect of applying the style set. To choose a style set, you click it.

### **EXERCISE:**

#### **Change Style Sets**

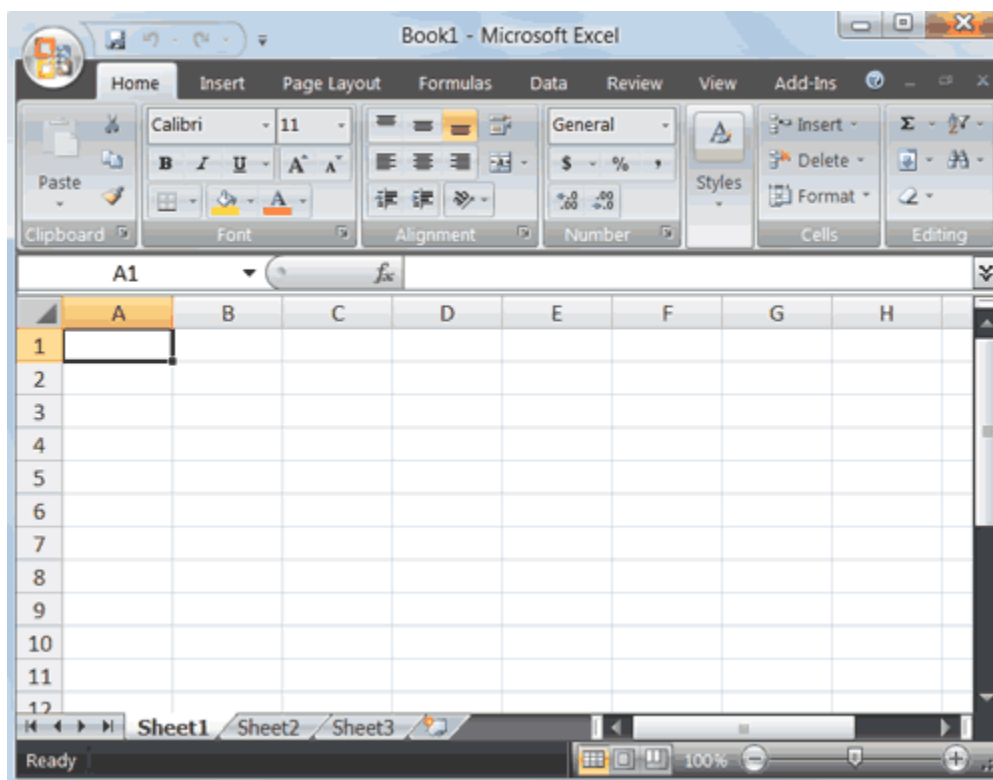
1. Click Change Styles in the Styles group. A menu appears.
2. Click Style Set. A menu appears. As you move your cursor down the menu Word 2007 provides you with a live preview of the effect of applying the Style set to your document.
3. Click Formal. Word 2007 reformats all of the paragraphs into the Formal style applying the appropriate format to each paragraph.

---

## **7.3 MS-EXCEL-I**

---

Microsoft Excel is an electronic spreadsheet. You can use it to organize your data into rows and columns. You can also use it to perform mathematical calculations quickly. This tutorial teaches Microsoft Excel basics. Although knowledge of how to navigate in a Windows environment is helpful, this tutorial was created for the computer novice. This lesson will introduce you to the Excel window. You use the window to interact with Excel. To begin this lesson, start Microsoft Excel 2007. The Microsoft Excel window appears and your screen looks similar to the one shown here.



**Note:** Your screen will probably not look exactly like the screen shown. In Excel 2007, how a window displays depends on the size of your window, the size of your monitor, and the resolution to which your monitor is set. Resolution determines how much information your computer monitor can display. If you use a low resolution, less information fits on your screen, but the size of your text and images are larger. If you use a high resolution, more information fits on your screen, but the size of the text and images are smaller. Also, settings in Excel 2007, Windows Vista, and Windows XP allow you to change the color and style of your windows.

### The Microsoft Office Button



In the upper-left corner of the Excel 2007 window is the Microsoft Office button. When you click the button, a menu appears. You can use the menu to create a new file, open an existing file, save a file, and perform many other tasks.

### The Quick Access Toolbar





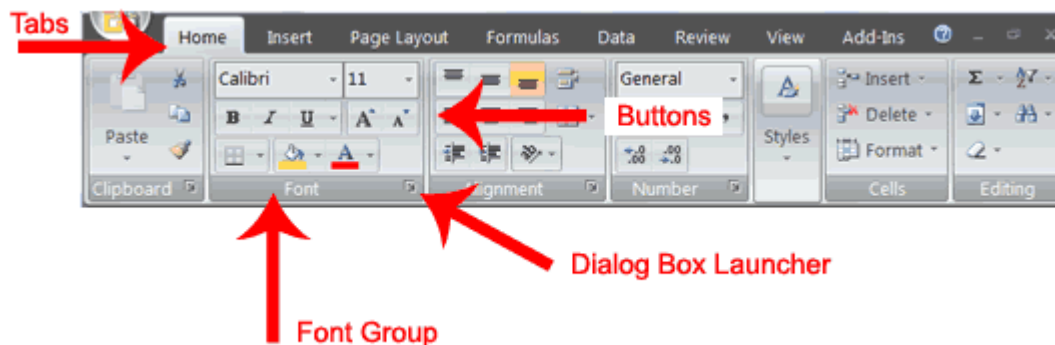
Next to the Microsoft Office button is the Quick Access toolbar. The Quick Access toolbar gives you with access to commands you frequently use. By default, Save, Undo, and Redo appear on the Quick Access toolbar. You can use Save to save your file, Undo to roll back an action you have taken, and Redo to reapply an action you have rolled back.

### The Title Bar



Next to the Quick Access toolbar is the Title bar. On the Title bar, Microsoft Excel displays the name of the workbook you are currently using. At the top of the Excel window, you should see "Microsoft Excel - Book1" or a similar name.

### The Ribbon

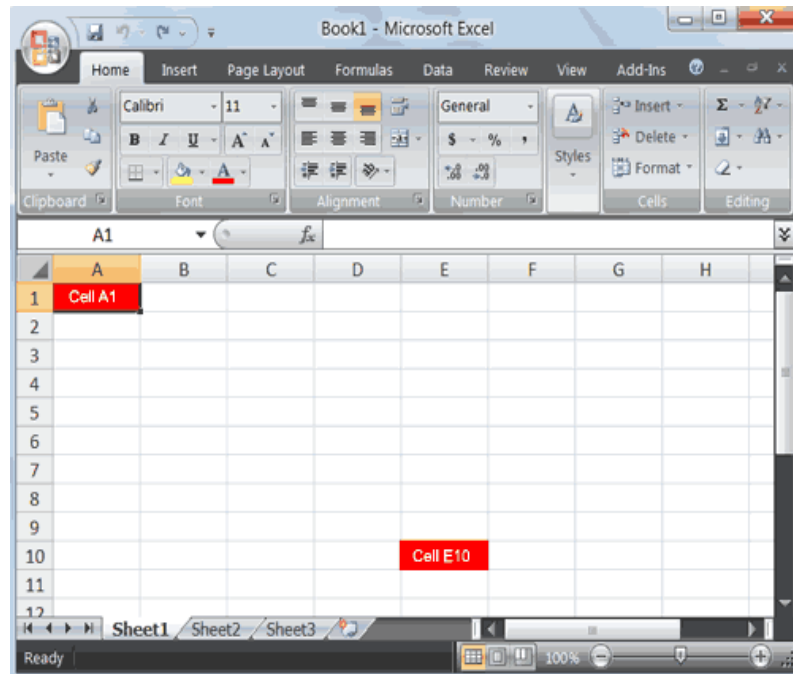


You use commands to tell Microsoft Excel what to do. In Microsoft Excel 2007, you use the Ribbon to issue commands. The Ribbon is located near the top of the Excel window, below the Quick Access toolbar. At the top of the Ribbon are several tabs; clicking a tab displays several related command groups. Within each group are related command buttons. You click buttons to issue commands or to access menus and dialog boxes. You may also find a dialog box launcher in the bottom-right corner of a group. When you click the dialog box launcher, a dialog box makes additional commands available.

### 7.3.1 Working with Worksheet

Microsoft Excel consists of worksheets. Each worksheet contains columns and rows. The columns are lettered A to Z and then continuing with AA, AB, AC and so on; the rows are numbered 1 to 1,048,576. The number of columns and rows you can have in a worksheet is limited by your computer memory and your system resources.

The combination of a column coordinate and a row coordinate make up a cell address. For example, the cell located in the upper-left corner of the worksheet is cell A1, meaning column A, and row 1. Cell E10 is located under column E on row 10. You enter your data into the cells on the worksheet.



**Fig 7.16 Worksheet**

### **The Formula Bar**



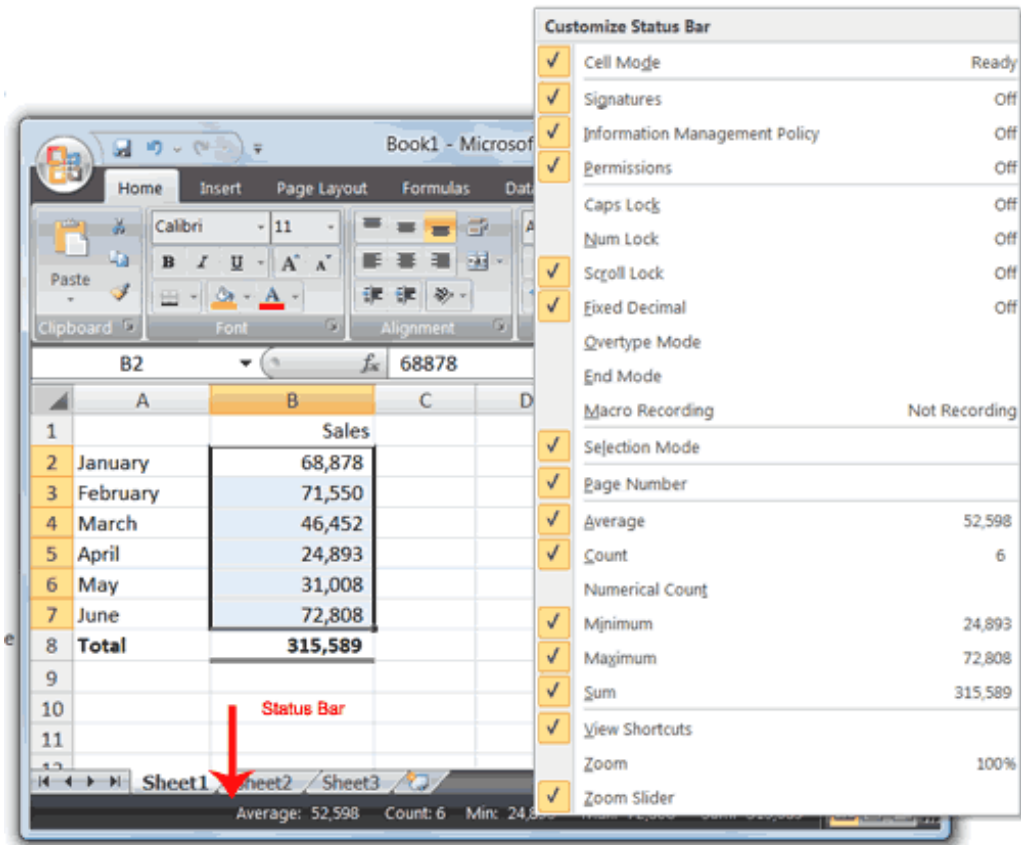
If the Formula bar is turned on, the cell address of the cell you are in displays in the Name box which is located on the left side of the Formula bar. Cell entries display on the right side of the Formula bar. If you do not see the Formula bar in your window, perform the following steps:

1. Choose the View tab.
2. Click Formula Bar in the Show/Hide group. The Formula bar appears.

**Note:** The current cell address displays on the left side of the Formula bar.

### **The Status Bar**

The Status bar appears at the very bottom of the Excel window and provides such information as the sum, average, minimum, and maximum value of selected numbers. You can change what displays on the Status bar by right-clicking on the Status bar and selecting the options you want from the Customize Status Bar menu. You click a menu item to select it. You click it again to deselect it. A check mark next to an item means the item is selected.



### Move around a Worksheet

By using the arrow keys, you can move around your worksheet. You can use the down arrow key to move downward one cell at a time. You can use the up arrow key to move upward one cell at a time. You can use the Tab key to move across the page to the right, one cell at a time. You can hold down the Shift key and then press the Tab key to move to the left, one cell at a time. You can use the right and left arrow keys to move right or left one cell at a time. The Page Up and Page Down keys move up and down one page at a time. If you hold down the Ctrl key and then press the Home key, you move to the beginning of the worksheet.

### EXERCISE:

#### Move around the Worksheet

##### The Down Arrow Key

- Press the down arrow key several times. Note that the cursor moves downward one cell at a time.

##### The Up Arrow Key

- Press the up arrow key several times. Note that the cursor moves upward one cell at a time.

##### The Tab Key

- Move to cell A1.
- Press the Tab key several times. Note that the cursor moves to the right one cell at a time.

### The Shift +Tab Keys

- Hold down the Shift key and then press Tab. Note that the cursor moves to the left one cell at a time.

### The Right and Left Arrow Keys

1. Press the right arrow key several times. Note that the cursor moves to the right.
2. Press the left arrow key several times. Note that the cursor moves to the left.

### Page Up and Page Down

1. Press the Page Down key. Note that the cursor moves down one page.
2. Press the Page Up key. Note that the cursor moves up one page.

### The Ctrl-Home Key

1. Move the cursor to column J.
2. Stay in column J and move the cursor to row 20.
3. Hold down the Ctrl key while you press the Home key. Excel moves to cell A1.

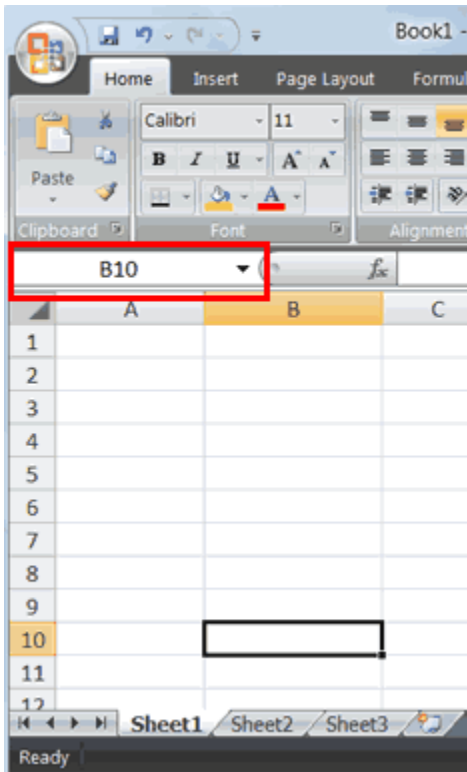
### Go To Cells Quickly

The following are shortcuts for moving quickly from one cell in a worksheet to a cell in a different part of the worksheet.

## EXERCISE

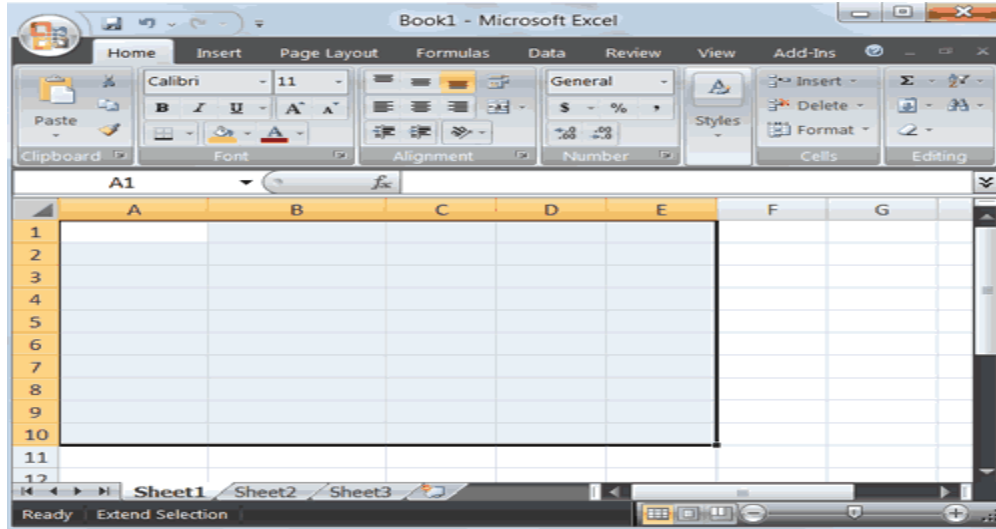
### The Name Box

You can also use the Name box to go to a specific cell. Just type the cell you want to go to in the Name box and then press Enter.



1. Type **B10** in the Name box.
2. Press Enter. Excel moves to cell B10.

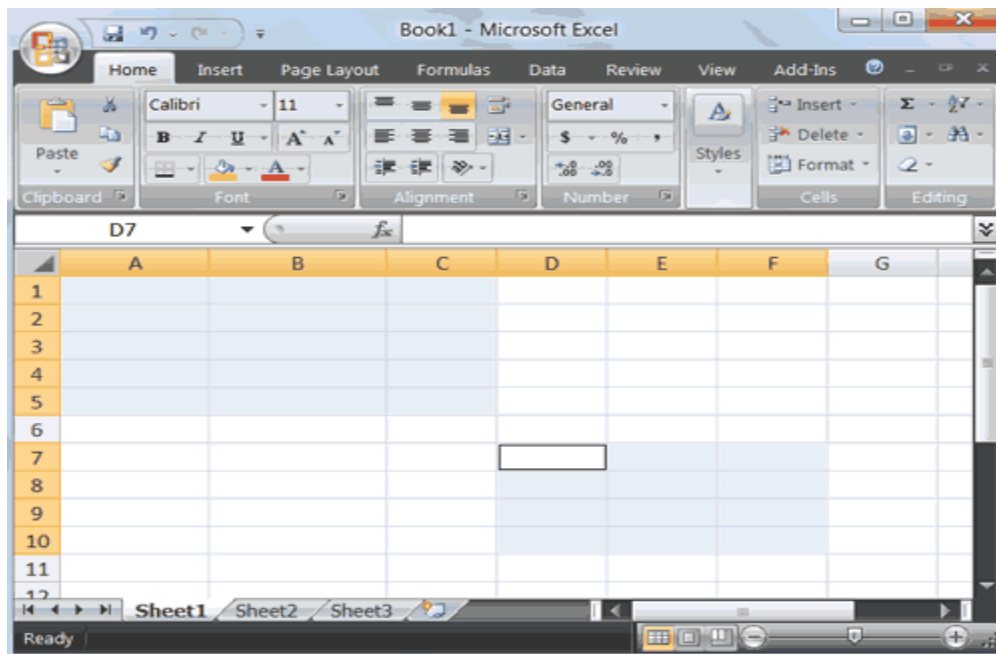
## Select Cells



If you wish to perform a function on a group of cells, you must first select those cells by highlighting them. The exercises that follow teach you how to select.

### Alternative Method: Select Cells by Dragging

You can also select an area by holding down the left mouse button and dragging the mouse over the area. In addition, you can select noncontiguous areas of the worksheet by doing the following:



1. Go to cell A1.
2. Hold down the Ctrl key. You won't release it until step 9. Holding down the Ctrl key enables you to select noncontiguous areas of the worksheet.

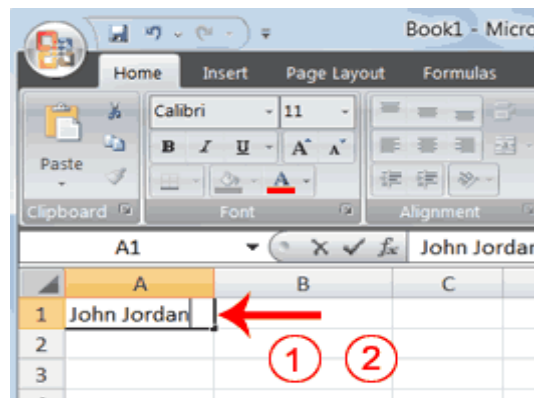
3. Press the left mouse button.
4. While holding down the left mouse button, use the mouse to move from cell A1 to C5.
5. Continue to hold down the Ctrl key, but release the left mouse button.
6. Using the mouse, place the cursor in cell D7.
7. Press the left mouse button.
8. While holding down the left mouse button, move to cell F10. Release the left mouse button.
9. Release the Ctrl key. Cells A1 to C5 and cells D7 to F10 are selected.
10. Press Esc and click anywhere on the worksheet to remove the highlighting.

### Enter Data

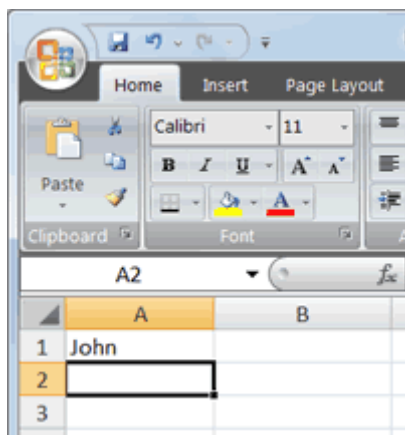
In this section, you will learn how to enter data into your worksheet. First, place the cursor in the cell in which you want to start entering data. Type some data, and then press Enter. If you need to delete, press the Backspace key to delete one character at a time.

### EXERCISE:

#### Enter Data



1. Place the cursor in cell A1.
2. Type **John Jordan**. Do not press Enter at this time.



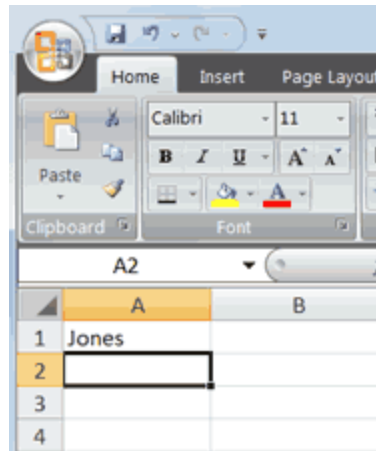
### Delete Data

The Backspace key erases one character at a time.

1. Press the Backspace key until Jordan is erased.
2. Press Enter. The name "John" appears in cell A1.

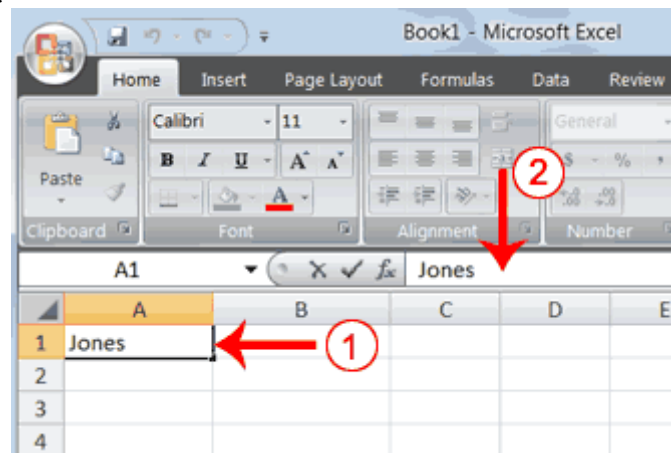
### Edit a Cell

After you enter data into a cell, you can edit the data by pressing F2 while you are in the cell you wish to edit.

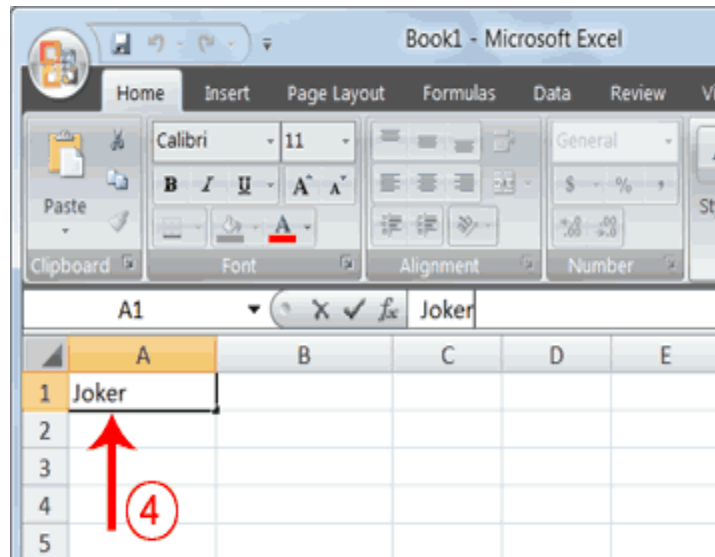


### Alternate Method: Editing a Cell by Using the Formula Bar

You can also edit the cell by using the Formula bar. You change "Jones" to "Joker" in the following exercise.



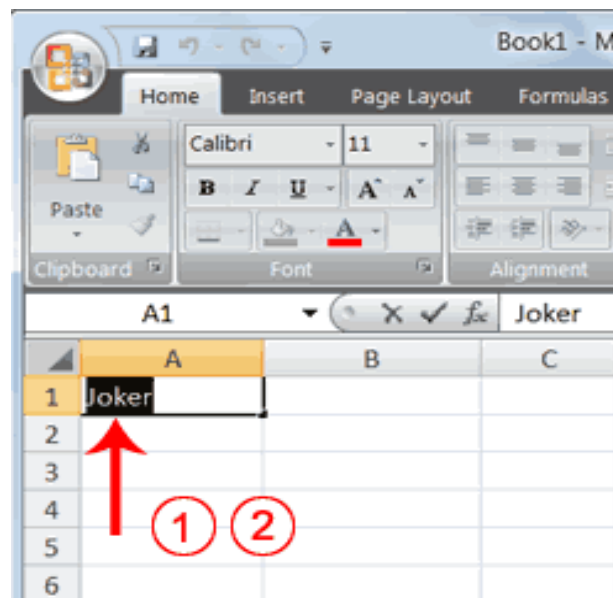
1. Move the cursor to cell A1.
2. Click in the formula area of the Formula bar.



3. Use the backspace key to erase the "s," "e," and "n."
4. Type **ker**.
5. Press Enter.

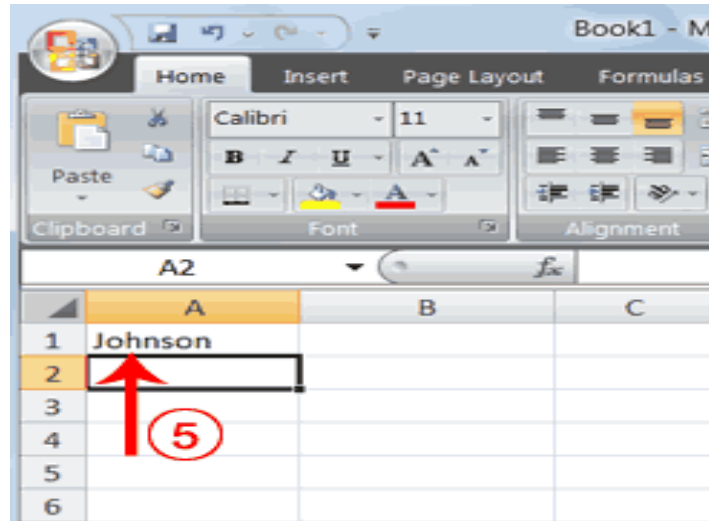
#### **Alternate Method: Edit a Cell by Double-Clicking in the Cell**

You can change "Joker" to "Johnson" as follows:



1. Move to cell A1.
2. Double-click in cell A1.
3. Press the End key. Your cursor is now at the end of your text.



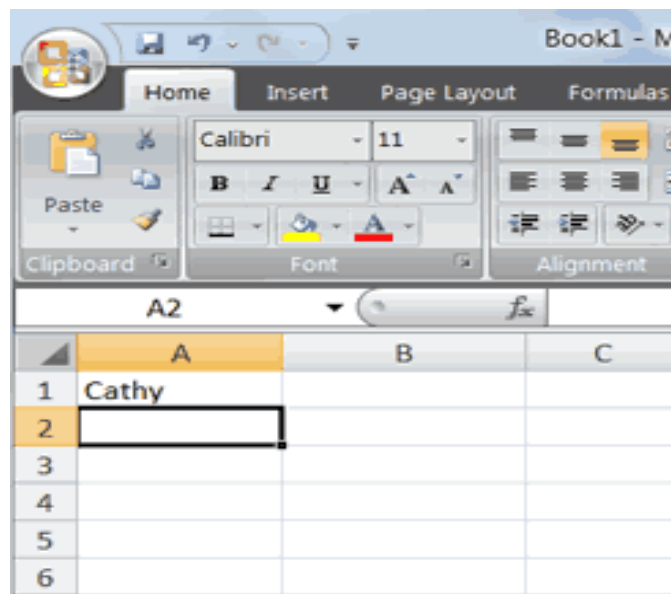


4. Use the Backspace key to erase "r," "e," and "k."
5. Type **hanson**.
6. Press Enter.

### Change a Cell Entry

Typing in a cell replaces the old cell entry with the new information you type.

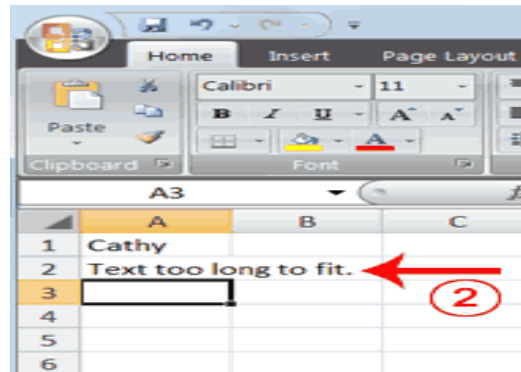
1. Move the cursor to cell A1.
2. Type **Cathy**.
3. Press Enter. The name "Cathy" replaces "Johnson."



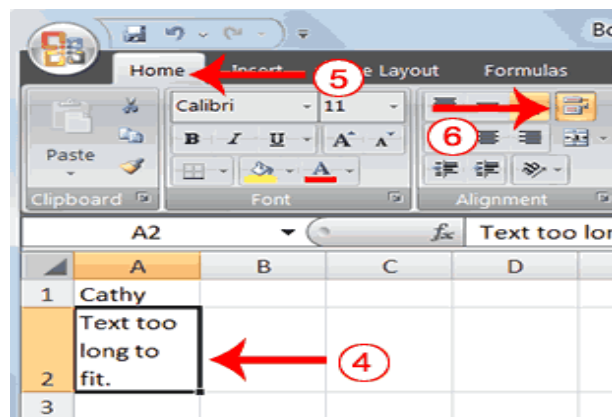
### Wrap Text


When you type text that is too long to fit in the cell, the text overlaps the next cell. If you do not want it to overlap the next cell, you can wrap the text.

## EXERCISE: Wrap Text



1. Move to cell A2.
2. Type **Text too long to fit.**
3. Press Enter.



4. Return to cell A2.
5. Choose the Home tab.
6. Click the Wrap Text button . Excel wraps the text in the cell.

## Delete a Cell Entry

To delete an entry in a cell or a group of cells, you place the cursor in the cell or select the group of cells and press Delete.

## EXERCISE:

### Delete a Cell Entry

1. Select cells A1 to A2.
2. Press the Delete key.
3. Save a File
4. This is the end of Lesson1. To save your file:
5. Click the Office button. A menu appears.
6. Click Save. The Save As dialog box appears.

7. Go to the directory in which you want to save your file.
8. Type **Lesson1** in the File Name field.
9. Click Save. Excel saves your file.
10. Close Excel
11. Close Microsoft Excel.
12. Click the Office button. A menu appears.
13. Click Close. Excel closes.

---

## 7.4 MS EXCEL - II

---

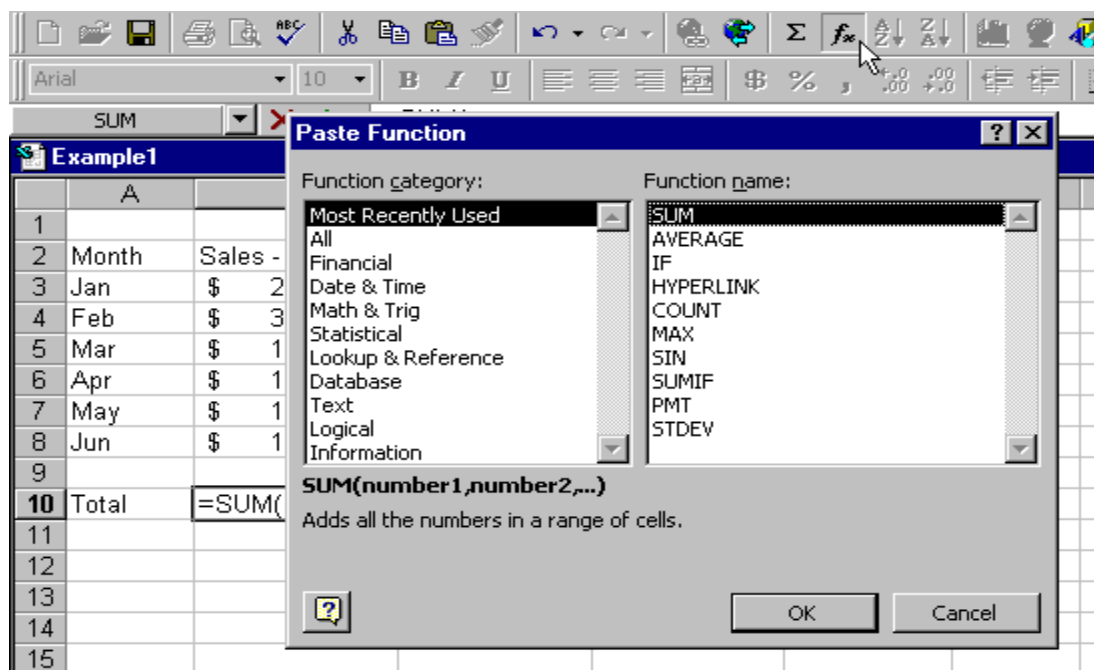
### 7.4.1 Using Excel's Built-in Functions

The following activity shows you how to use Excel's built-in functions in your calculations. If you have access to the program, you should do the activities as you read. This will enhance your understanding of each step.

#### 1. Employing the SUM function to compute sales totals.

As our first example illustrating the use of an Excel built-in function, we will modify the *Example1* worksheet. One of the Excel built-in functions is the function SUM which, as its name suggests, computes sums of values in a range of cells.

To do this, we delete the formula in cell B10, type an = sign, then select the function selection dialog box (the symbol *fx*) from the tool bar (see the cursor position in the figure below). The dialog box shown in the figure is then displayed and we can choose from among the many Excel built-in functions. In the figure, we have selected the SUM function from the Most Recently Used function list. Once we make this selection we click to close the function selection dialog box.

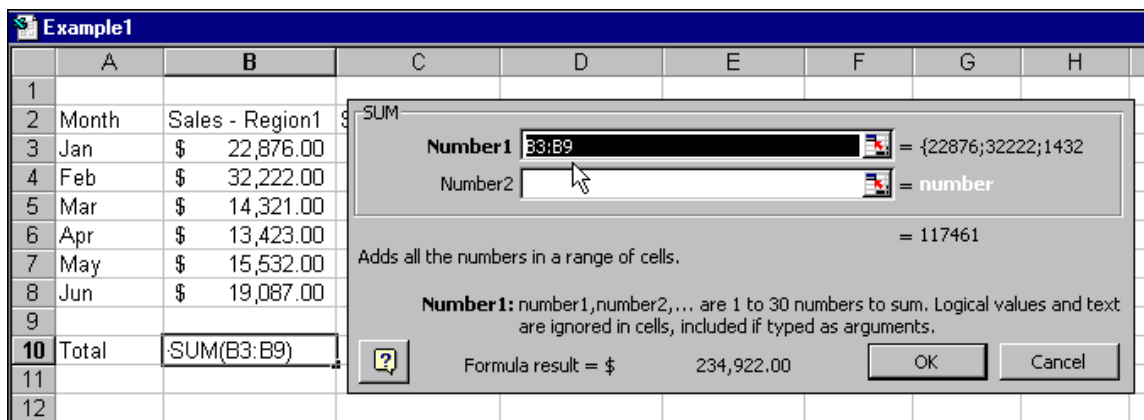


**Fig 7.17 Built-in Functions**

## 2. Setting the argument -- a range of cells.

When we close the function selection dialog box, a second dialog box appears, as shown below. The purpose of this dialog box is to help us set the arguments for the function we've chosen. In this example, the spreadsheet "guesses" that we wish to sum the cells (starting with the first one from the top with numerical data in it) immediately above the formula cell. In other words it selects for us the **range of cells** B3:B9. This is almost correct. We probably don't care to include the empty cell B9, so we edit the range to read B3:B8, then click OK.

Notice before going on that the dialog box also has a brief explanation of what the function we've selected does and what its arguments stand for. And it even tells us what the result would be for the arguments it has pre-selected for us.



## 3. Completing the formula.

Once we adjust the arguments to be the range B3:B8 and click OK, we get the result shown in the figure below. In a moment we will replicate the SUM function across the row to cells C10, D10, E10. But first, let's see how the SUM calculation differs from the previous calculation we made with the addition formula.

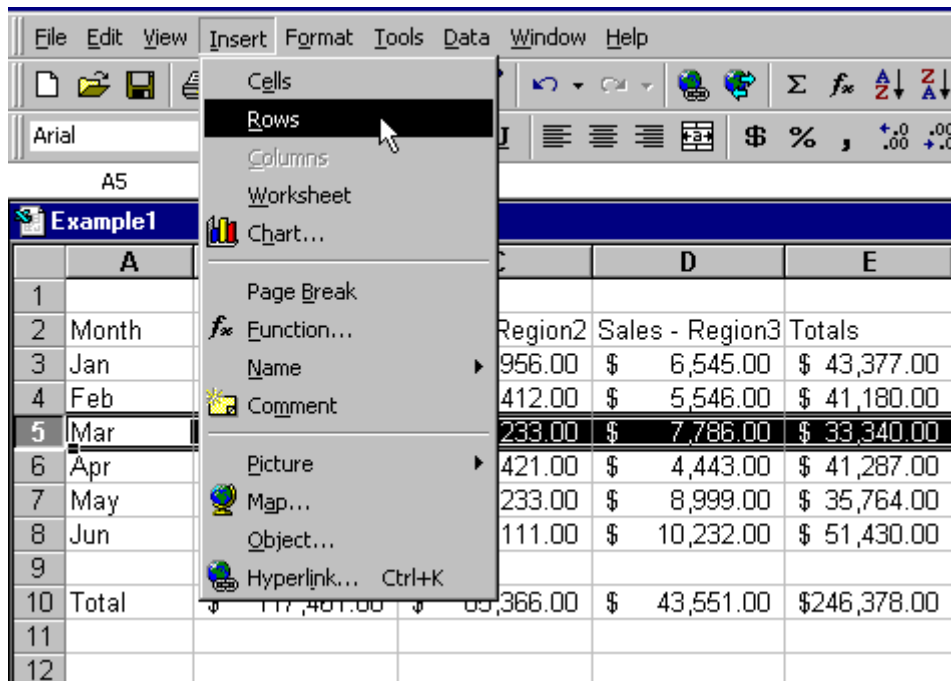
<div> <div>Arial 10 B I U</div> <div> <div>B10</div> <div>=SUM(B3:B8)</div> </div> </div>					
	A	B	C	D	E
1					
2	Month	Sales - Region1	Sales - Region2	Sales - Region3	Totals
3	Jan	\$ 22,876.00	\$ 13,956.00	\$ 6,545.00	\$ 43,377.00
4	Feb	\$ 32,222.00	\$ 3,412.00	\$ 5,546.00	\$ 41,180.00
5	Mar	\$ 14,321.00	\$ 11,233.00	\$ 7,786.00	\$ 33,340.00
6	Apr	\$ 13,423.00	\$ 23,421.00	\$ 4,443.00	\$ 41,287.00
7	May	\$ 15,532.00	\$ 11,233.00	\$ 8,999.00	\$ 35,764.00
8	Jun	\$ 19,087.00	\$ 22,111.00	\$ 10,232.00	\$ 51,430.00
9					
10	Total	\$ 117,461.00	\$ 85,366.00	\$ 43,551.00	\$ 246,378.00
11					
12					

#### 4. Comparing the SUM function and a formula using the + operator.

The SUM function is a convenient way to compute sums when we expect the amount of data in our spreadsheet to expand or contract in the future. The reason is that the SUM function automatically accounts for inserting and deleting data within the range of cells in its argument. The formula constructed with the + operator will not adjust for this accommodation.

Let's modify our spreadsheet to illustrate. Suppose for a moment we had a special promotion sale at the end of February and we want to now include these sales figures as a separate row in our data. It is easy to add more data in a spreadsheet by inserting rows (or columns) into the worksheet.

The figure below shows how we would add a row after the February sales figure row. First you select the row *before which* you wish to insert a new row. Do this by clicking the row number at the right of the worksheet -- the entire row will be highlighted. Next you select the **Rows** choice from the **Insert** menu as shown in the figure. A new blank row will be inserted before the selected row.



To complete our modification we add appropriate data to new row 5, as shown in the figure below.

Now notice (compare totals with those in the previous figure in Step 3) that the total for Region 1 is automatically updated to include the additional \$10,000 we just entered in cell B5. However, the total for Region 2 does not include the new amount in cell C5.

The formula in cell C11, as you can see from the figure, changes to keep *exactly the same values* in the sum as were there before the insertion of the new row. The new value is omitted altogether. The SUM function incorporates the new row as part of its new range. Hence the SUM function and the + operator are adjusted in different ways for the insertion of new data. We added the new row just for the purpose of making this point. Let's delete it before proceeding. To do this we select row 5 again (remember, click the row number on the left side) and then select **Delete** from the **Edit** menu.

As a final adjustment to the worksheet in this step, replicate the SUM function formula in cell B10 to cells C10, D10, and E10.

The screenshot shows an Excel interface. The formula bar at the top displays the formula `=C3+C4+C6+C7+C8+C9` for cell C11. Below the formula bar is a worksheet titled "Example1". The worksheet has columns A through E and rows 1 through 13. The data is as follows:

	A	B	C	D	E
1					
2	Month	Sales - Region1	Sales - Region2	Sales - Region3	Totals
3	Jan	\$ 22,876.00	\$ 13,956.00	\$ 6,545.00	\$ 43,377.00
4	Feb	\$ 32,222.00	\$ 3,412.00	\$ 5,546.00	\$ 41,180.00
5	Promotion	\$ 10,000.00	\$ 10,000.00	\$ 10,000.00	
6	Mar	\$ 14,321.00	\$ 11,233.00	\$ 7,786.00	\$ 33,340.00
7	Apr	\$ 13,423.00	\$ 23,421.00	\$ 4,443.00	\$ 41,287.00
8	May	\$ 15,532.00	\$ 11,233.00	\$ 8,999.00	\$ 35,764.00
9	Jun	\$ 19,087.00	\$ 22,111.00	\$ 10,232.00	\$ 51,430.00
10					
11	Total	\$ 127,461.00	\$ 85,366.00	\$ 43,551.00	\$246,378.00
12					
13					

## 5. Computing average sales per month for each region.

Next, we'll add formulas to calculate the average monthly sales for all three regions. The following figure illustrates entering the appropriate formula for computing the Region 1 monthly average. Note that we're employing a built-in function AVERAGE. If we know the function's name and purpose already, we can simply type the formula. Or we could consult the function selection dialog box as we did for the SUM function earlier.

In the figure below, we're entering the formula directly. The figure illustrates also that instead of typing in the range B3:B8, we can drag over that range of cells (note the dotted box surrounding the selected range) to indicate the range when the time comes for the function's argument to be entered in the formula. We would complete the formula shown below by typing in the closing right parenthesis and then clicking the green check mark to the left of the formula bar.

Once the average is computed for Region 1, you should replicate the formula to cells C12, D12, and E12 to compute monthly averages for the other regions and for the total monthly sales.

Example1					
	A	B	C	D	E
1					
2	Month	Sales - Region1	Sales - Region2	Sales - Region3	Totals
3	Jan	\$ 22,876.00	\$ 13,956.00	\$ 6,545.00	\$ 43,377.00
4	Feb	\$ 32,222.00	\$ 3,412.00	\$ 5,546.00	\$ 41,180.00
5	Mar	\$ 14,321.00	\$ 11,233.00	\$ 7,786.00	\$ 33,340.00
6	Apr	\$ 13,423.00	\$ 23,421.00	\$ 4,443.00	\$ 41,287.00
7	May	\$ 15,532.00	\$ 11,233.00	\$ 8,999.00	\$ 35,764.00
8	Jun	\$ 19,087.00	\$ 22,111.00	\$ 10,232.00	\$ 51,430.00
9					
10	Total	\$ 117,461.00	\$ 85,366.00	\$ 43,551.00	\$246,378.00
11					
12	Average	=AVERAGE(B3:B8)			
13					

#### 6. Computing the standard deviation of the averages.

As a final illustration, let's suppose we wish to compute the standard deviation of the averages we just calculated. Mimic the procedure given in Step 5 and enter a formula employing the built-in function STDEV for computing the standard deviation for the **Region 1 monthly average**. Consult the figure below for help if you need it. Now replicate the standard deviation calculation to cells C13, D13, and E13.

Example1					
	A	B	C	D	E
1					
2	Month	Sales - Region1	Sales - Region2	Sales - Region3	Totals
3	Jan	\$ 22,876.00	\$ 13,956.00	\$ 6,545.00	\$ 43,377.00
4	Feb	\$ 32,222.00	\$ 3,412.00	\$ 5,546.00	\$ 41,180.00
5	Mar	\$ 14,321.00	\$ 11,233.00	\$ 7,786.00	\$ 33,340.00
6	Apr	\$ 13,423.00	\$ 23,421.00	\$ 4,443.00	\$ 41,287.00
7	May	\$ 15,532.00	\$ 11,233.00	\$ 8,999.00	\$ 35,764.00
8	Jun	\$ 19,087.00	\$ 22,111.00	\$ 10,232.00	\$ 51,430.00
9					
10	Total	\$ 117,461.00	\$ 85,366.00	\$ 43,551.00	\$246,378.00
11					
12	Average	\$ 19,576.83	\$ 14,227.67	\$ 7,258.50	\$ 41,063.00
13	St. Dev.	=STDEV(B3:B8)			
14					

The completed worksheet should have the following figures in it. Check your work against these numbers and locate and correct any errors.

Example1						
	A	B	C	D	E	
1						
2	Month	Sales - Region1	Sales - Region2	Sales - Region3	Totals	
3	Jan	\$ 22,876.00	\$ 13,956.00	\$ 6,545.00	\$ 43,377.00	
4	Feb	\$ 32,222.00	\$ 3,412.00	\$ 5,546.00	\$ 41,180.00	
5	Mar	\$ 14,321.00	\$ 11,233.00	\$ 7,786.00	\$ 33,340.00	
6	Apr	\$ 13,423.00	\$ 23,421.00	\$ 4,443.00	\$ 41,287.00	
7	May	\$ 15,532.00	\$ 11,233.00	\$ 8,999.00	\$ 35,764.00	
8	Jun	\$ 19,087.00	\$ 22,111.00	\$ 10,232.00	\$ 51,430.00	
9						
10	Total	\$ 117,461.00	\$ 85,366.00	\$ 43,551.00	\$246,378.00	
11						
12	Average	\$ 19,576.83	\$ 14,227.67	\$ 7,258.50	\$ 41,063.00	
13	St. Dev.	\$ 7,111.66	\$ 7,505.37	\$ 2,168.78	\$ 6,334.31	
14						
15						

### 7. An Exercise -- Computing Car Payments.

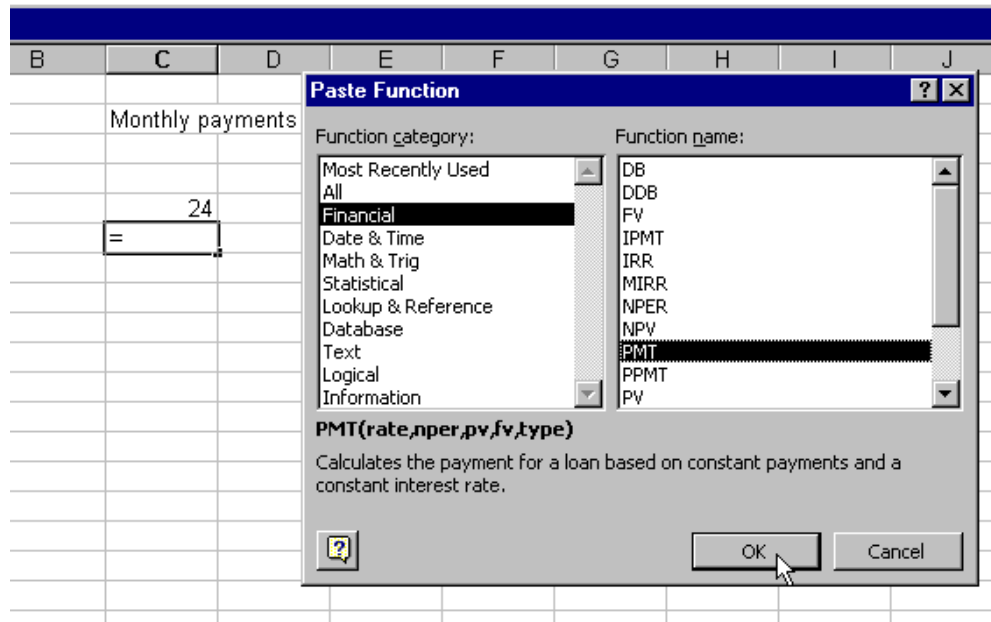
In this exercise you will get a chance to practice employing an Excel built-in function on your own. Suppose you wish to compute the monthly payments you would have on a car you'd like to buy. Suppose the car costs \$10,000 and you know you can secure a 10% annual interest rate loan for this amount. You'd like to do an analysis to decide what term (pay-back time) you should try to get. Of course the longer the term, the lower your monthly payments -- but the more interest you pay over the life of the loan. You want the shortest term for which you can still swing the monthly payments.

Set up a worksheet like the one in the figure to calculate the various payments for different terms. Note that you can type a long text string (like the one shown here in C2) and it will overflow to adjacent cells to the right as long as there is no date in those cells.

Loan								
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1								
2			Monthly payments for a \$10,000 loan at 10% annual interest					
3								
4				Term (months)				
5			24	36	48	60	72	
6								
7								

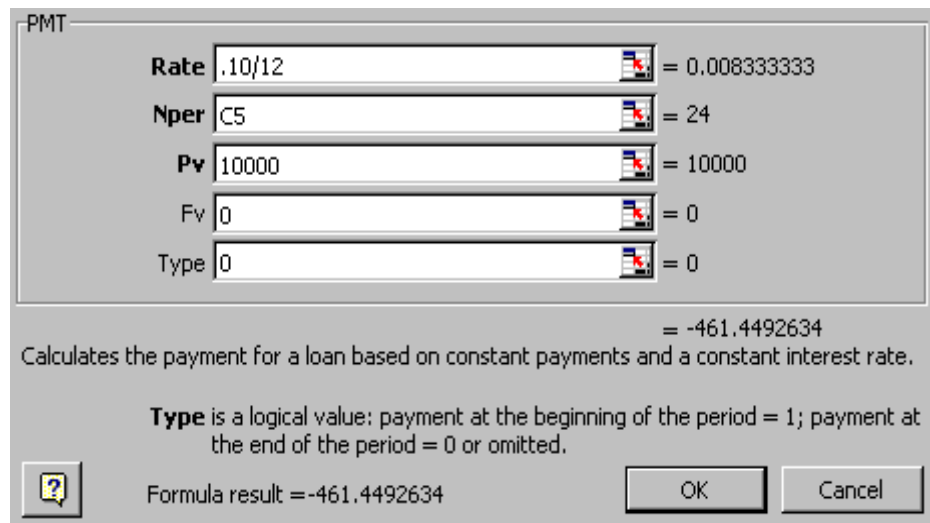
Excel has a built-in function for computing loan payments. It is called PMT and can be found in the financial function list as shown below.





The arguments for the PMT function hold the interest rate (**Rate**) for the period in which you're interested -- a month in this case, the number of periods (**Nper**) you expect to pay, the present value (**Pv**) or amount of the loan, the future value (**Fv**) of the loan (this will be 0 if you intend to pay the loan off), and the type (**Type**) of payment to be made (this is 0 if your payments begin at the end of the month you get the loan; 1 if the payments begin immediately when you get the loan -- 0 is the most common option here).

Convince yourself that the arguments for your function should be those shown below.



The completed worksheet should have the following figures in it. Check your work against these numbers and correct any errors. The parentheses and red type face indicates that these numbers represent a payment (negative).

Loan								
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1								
2			Monthly payments for a \$10,000 loan at 10% annual interest					
3								
4					Term (months)			
5			24	36	48	60	72	
6			(\$461.45)	(\$322.67)	(\$253.63)	(\$212.47)	(\$185.26)	
7								

### 7.4.2 What - if Analysis

What-if analysis is the process of changing the values in cells to see how those changes will affect the outcome of formulas on the worksheet.

Three kinds of what-if analysis tools come with Excel: scenarios, data tables, and Goal Seek. Scenarios and data tables take sets of input values and determine possible results. A data table works only with one or two variables, but it can accept many different values for those variables. A scenario can have multiple variables, but it can accommodate only up to 32 values. Goal Seek works differently from scenarios and data tables in that it takes a result and determines possible input values that produce that result.

In addition to these three tools, you can install add-ins that help you perform what-if analysis, such as the Solver add-in. The Solver add-in is similar to Goal Seek, but it can accommodate more variables. You can also create forecasts by using the fill handle and various commands that are built into Excel. For more advanced models, you can use the Analysis Pack add-in.

#### Use scenarios to consider many different variables

A scenario is a set of values that Excel saves and can substitute automatically in cells on a worksheet. You can create and save different groups of values on a worksheet and then switch to any of these new scenarios to view different results. For example, suppose you have two budget scenarios: a worst case and a best case. You can use the Scenario Manager to create both scenarios on the same worksheet, and then switch between them. For each scenario, you specify the cells that change and the values to use for that scenario. When you switch between scenarios the result cell changes to reflect the different changing cell values.

#### Worst case scenario

	A	B
1	Gross Revenue	50,000
2	Cost of Goods Sold	13,200
3	Gross Profit	36,800

1 Changing cells

## 2 Result cell

### Best case scenario

	A	B
1	Gross Revenue	150,000
2	Cost of Goods Sold	26,000
3	Gross Profit	124,000

1 Changing cells

2 Result cell

If several people have specific information in separate workbooks that you want to use in scenarios, you can collect those workbooks and merge their scenarios.

After you have created or gathered all the scenarios that you need, you can create a scenario summary report that incorporates information from those scenarios. A scenario report displays all the scenario information in one table on a new worksheet.

### Scenario summary report

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1						
2		<b>Scenario Summary</b>				
3				Current Values:	Worst Case	Best Case
5		<b>Changing Cells:</b>				
6		Gross Revenue		50,000	50,000	150,000
7		Cost of Goods Sold		13,200	13,200	26,000
8		<b>Result Cells:</b>				
9		Gross Profit		36,800	36,800	124,000

**NOTE** Scenario reports are not automatically recalculated. If you change the values of a scenario, those changes will not show up in an existing summary report. Instead, you must create a new summary report.

### Use Goal Seek to find out how to get a desired result

If you know the result that you want from a formula, but you are not sure what input value the formula requires to get that result, you can use the Goal Seek feature. For example, suppose that you need to borrow some money. You know how much money you want, how long a period you want in which to pay off the loan, and how much you can afford to pay each month. You can use Goal Seek to determine what interest rate you must secure in order to meet your loan goal.

The value in cell B4 is the result of the formula =PMT(B3/12,B2,B1).

	A	B
1	Loan Amount	\$ 100,000
2	Term in Months	180
3	Interest Rate	7.02%
4	Payment	(\$900.00)

Goal seek to determine the interest rate in cell B3 based on the payment in cell B4.

**NOTE** Goal Seek works with only one variable input value. If you want to determine more than one input value, for example, the loan amount and the monthly payment amount for a loan, you should instead use the Solver add-in.

### Use data tables to see the effects of one or two variables on a formula

If you have a formula that uses one or two variables, or multiple formulas that all use one common variable, you can use a data table to see all the outcomes in one place. Using data tables makes it easy to examine a range of possibilities at a glance. Because you focus on only one or two variables, results are easy to read and share in tabular form. If automatic recalculation is enabled for the workbook, the data in data tables immediately recalculates; as a result, you always have fresh data.

	A	B	C	D
1	<b>Mortgage Loan Analysis</b>			<b>Payments</b>
2	Down Payment	None		\$ 672.68
3	Interest Rate	9.50%	9.00%	\$ 643.70
4	Term (months)	360	9.25%	\$ 658.14
5	Loan Amount	\$80,000	9.50%	\$ 672.68

Input cell

List of values that Excel substitutes in the input cell, B3.

### A one-variable data table

A data table cannot accommodate more than two variables. If you want to analyze more than two variables, you can use scenarios. Although it is limited to only one or two variables, a data table can use as many different variable values as you want. A scenario can have a maximum of 32 different values, but you can create as many scenarios as you want.

### 7.4.3 Data Table sorting

Microsoft Office Excel 2007 introduces significant changes to sorting table data. You can now sort up to 64 columns of data. You can also sort based on colors and custom lists. In my previous Office Talk column about table filtering in Microsoft Office Excel 2007, I briefly discuss changes to sorting features. One of the more important changes in sorting is the elimination of the three-condition limit. You can now sort up to 64 columns. Office Excel 2007 introduces updates to the Sort dialog box. Figure 7.18 shows sorting a table by five columns.

### More Sorting Options

The **Sort** dialog box is similar in behavior to the **Conditional Formatting Rules Manager** dialog box that I discuss in the series of Office Talk columns on conditional formatting. For more information, see Additional Resources. To create sort conditions, on the **Data** tab, click **Sort**, and in the **Sort** dialog box, click **Add Level**. Like filters, sort levels change based on data types. Office Excel 2007 uses that information to offer settings that are more descriptive and easier to understand than "ascending" and "descending." For example, for text columns, you have **A to Z** and **Z to A** sorting; for numeric columns, you can sort from

**Smallest to Largest** and **Largest to Smallest**; and for date columns, you have **Newest to Oldest** and **Oldest to Newest** sorts. You can reorder sort conditions by using the buttons at the top of the **Sort** dialog box. You can also copy sort levels to save time. The **Options** button opens the **Sort Options** dialog box, which allows you to specify whether the sort should be case-sensitive and allows you to specify the sort orientation. Both of these features existed in Microsoft Office Excel 2003 but are more discoverable in Office Excel 2007.

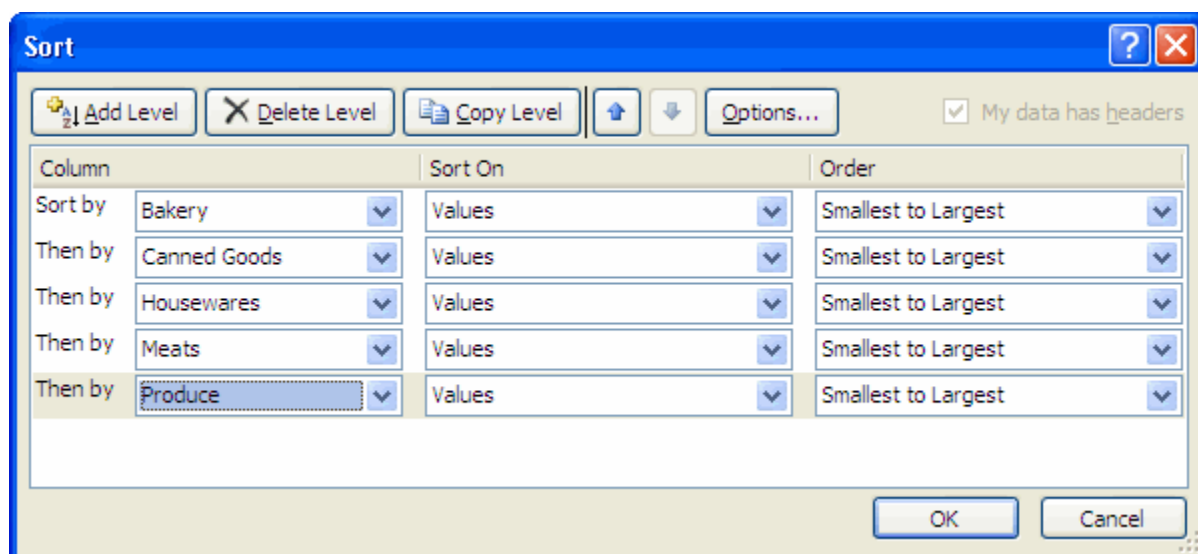


Figure 7.18 Sort Options dialog box

### Sorting by Colors

The following example illustrates additional sort functionality introduced in Office Excel 2007. Assume you have the following table of formatted data.

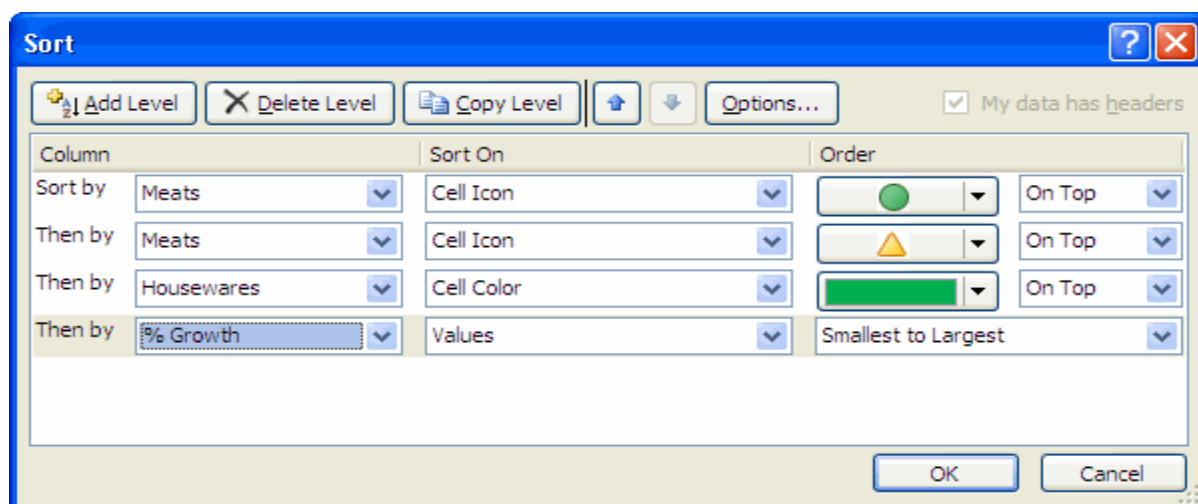
Housewares	Meats	% Growth
\$247,150	\$141,299	-75%
\$130,530	\$237,002	45%
\$212,641	\$232,348	8%
\$178,713	\$153,092	-17%
\$103,254	\$183,708	44%
\$208,739	\$135,812	-54%
\$249,069	\$205,913	-21%
\$131,662	\$199,296	34%
\$105,114	\$100,763	-4%
\$130,815	\$165,230	21%
\$222,675	\$166,811	-33%
\$159,880	\$159,884	0%
\$2,080,242	\$2,081,158	-52%

Figure7.19 Sample table with formatted data

One of the common requests from Excel users is the ability to sort by color, either manually applied or applied by conditional formatting. In Office Excel 2007, you can sort by:

- Background color (however applied)
- Font color (however applied)
- Cell icon (applied by using conditional formatting)

For example, you can set up several conditions on the table data as seen in Figure 7.20.



**Figure 7.20 You can easily set up multiple sort conditions**

When you click **OK**, Office Excel 2007 applies the sort starting from the top. Notice the buttons at the top of each column indicate that the column is being sorted. The filter state is displayed here if a filter is applied.

Housewares	Meats	% Growth
\$212,641	●	\$232,348 8%
\$131,662	●	\$199,296 34%
\$130,530	●	\$237,002 45%
\$249,069	●	\$205,913 -21%
\$222,675	▲	\$166,811 -33%
\$178,713	▲	\$153,092 -17%
\$159,880	▲	\$159,884 0%
\$130,815	▲	\$165,230 21%
\$103,254	▲	\$183,708 44%
\$247,150	◆	\$141,299 -75%
\$208,739	◆	\$135,812 -54%
\$105,114	◆	\$100,763 -4%
2,080,242.00	2,081,158.00	-0.52

**Figure 7.21 Buttons at the top of each column provide sorting and filtering status**



Housewares ▾↑	Meats ▾
\$249,069 ●	\$205,913
\$212,641 ●	\$232,348
\$131,662 ●	\$199,296
\$130,530 ●	\$237,002
\$247,150 ◆	\$141,299
\$208,739 ◆	\$135,812
\$222,675 ▲	\$166,811
\$178,713 ▲	\$153,092
\$105,114 ◆	\$100,763
\$159,880 ▲	\$159,884
\$130,815 ▲	\$165,230
\$103,254 ▲	\$183,708
2,080,242.00	2,081,158.00

**Figure 7.24 Sort first by green background**

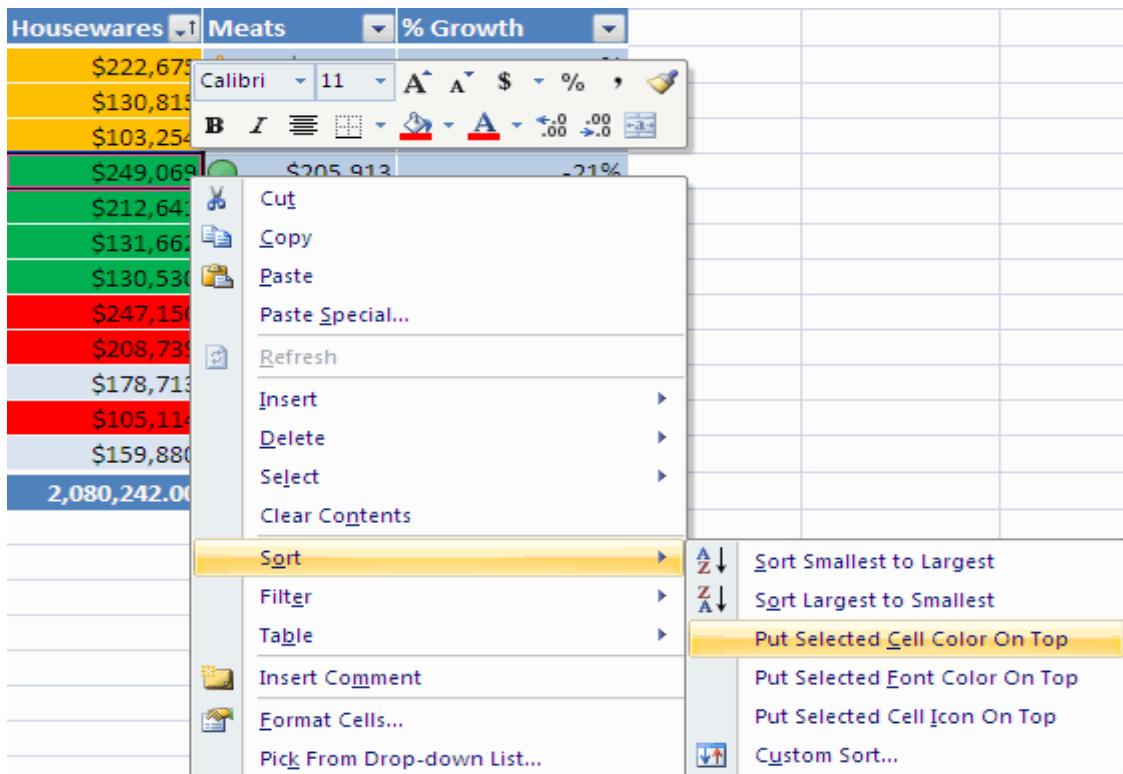
This organizes all of the green values at the top of the column.

Housewares ▾↑	Meats ▾
\$222,675 ▲	\$166,811
\$130,815 ▲	\$165,230
\$103,254 ▲	\$183,708
\$249,069 ●	\$205,913
\$212,641 ●	\$232,348
\$131,662 ●	\$199,296
\$130,530 ●	\$237,002
\$247,150 ◆	\$141,299
\$208,739 ◆	\$135,812
\$178,713 ▲	\$153,092
\$105,114 ◆	\$100,763
\$159,880 ▲	\$159,884
2,080,242.00	2,081,158.00

**Figure 7.25 Result of sorting on the color green**

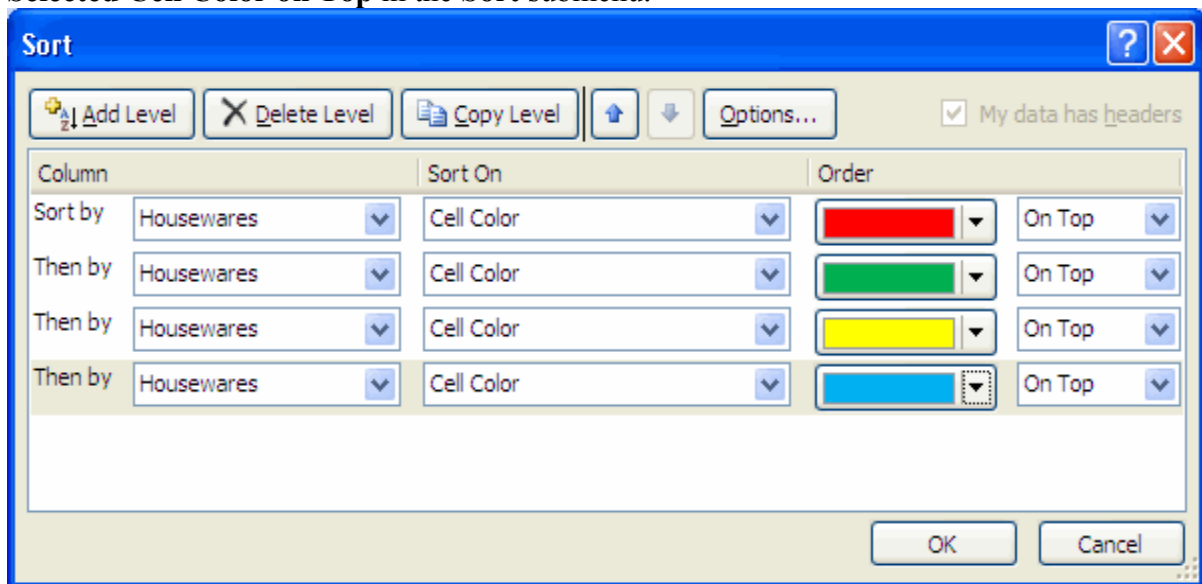
Next, repeat the procedure for the yellow items. This results in the following table.





**Figure 7.26 Result of sorting on two colors sequentially**

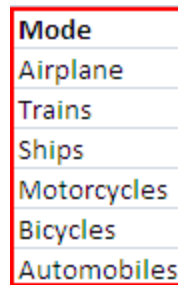
Sorting by color moves all rows that meet the criteria to the top of the table. This capability is also added to the context menu in a table or filtered range. For example, in the table shown in Figure 6, you can right-click a cell with a green background and select **Put Selected Cell Color on Top** in the **Sort** submenu.



**Figure 7.27 Sorting by using the context menu**

### Sorting with Custom Lists

Next, consider an example that illustrates how to sort on a custom list of values. Assume you have a table with a column of modes of transportation.



Mode
Airplane
Trains
Ships
Motorcycles
Bicycles
Automobiles

Figure 7.28 Column of text values

First, in the **Sort** dialog box, specify the column name and then, in the **Order** list, select **Custom List**. Click **OK**.

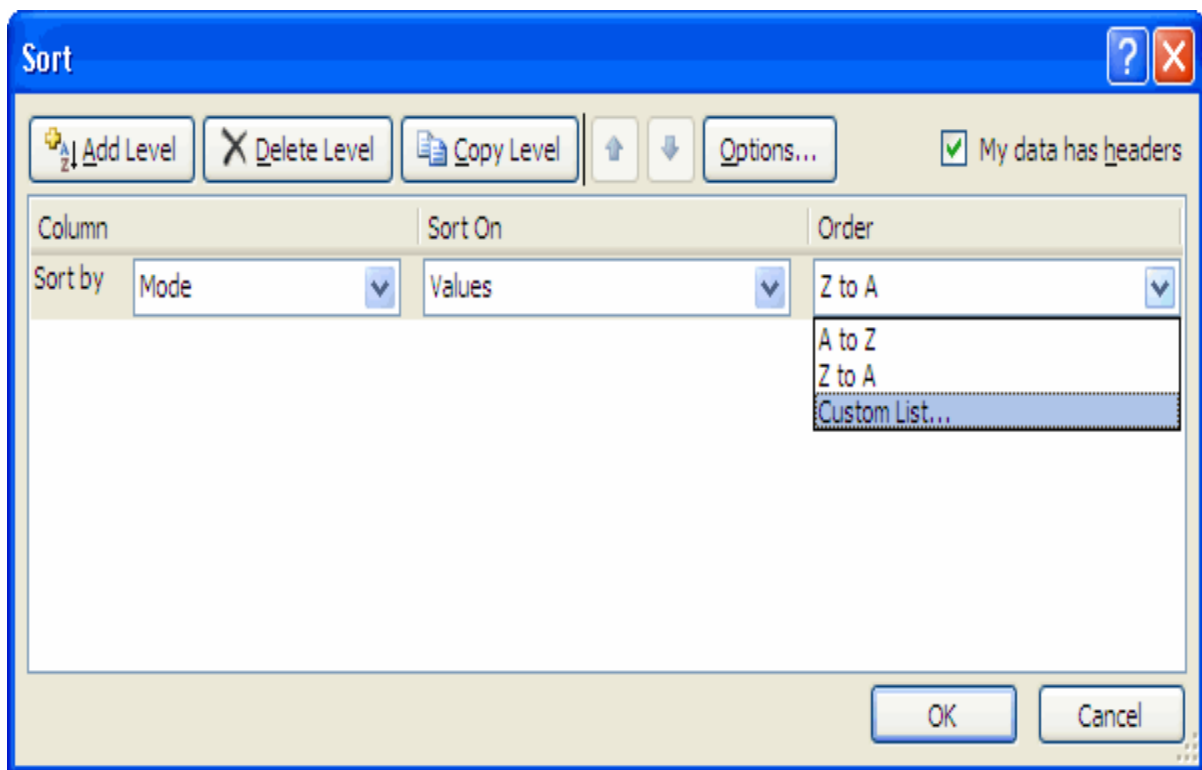
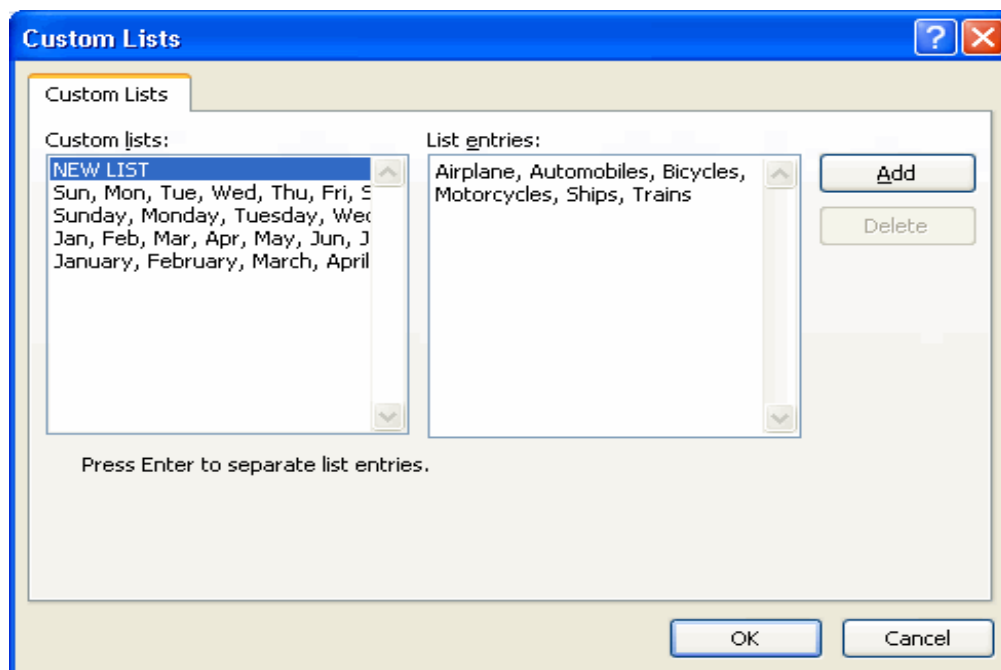


Figure 7.29 Select Custom List in the Order drop-down

In the **Custom List** dialog box, select **NEW LIST** and then type in the data values separated by commas. Click **OK** when you are finished.



**Figure 7.30 Resulting table after sorting on a custom list**

The table is now sorted by the custom list of values you specified.

Airplane
Automobiles
Bicycles
Motorcycles
Ships
Trains

**Figure 7.31 Sorted column**

**Conclusion:** The ability to sort up to 64 columns of data gives you greater control over how your data appears. Likewise, sorting by cell color or font color enables you to put the data that is important to you at the top of the table column or a range. The ability to sort user-defined lists of values allows you to customize tables in a way that is relevant to your needs.

---

## 7.5 MS-EXCEL-III

---

**7.5.1 Graphs and Charts:** A graph is a chart or drawing that shows the relationship between changing things. They are a diagram displaying the relationship between numbers or amounts. Common graphs use bars, lines, or parts of a circle to display data. Below are the steps given to insert Graphs and charts. They are:


**Step 1** - Enter the data to be graphed. For the purpose of this lesson you will use data from a Favorite Fruit Survey. Enter it as you see below:

	A	B
1	<b>Fruit</b>	<b>Number</b>
2	Apple	8
3	Orange	4
4	Banana	3
5	Grapes	5
6	Peach	3
7	Pear	1

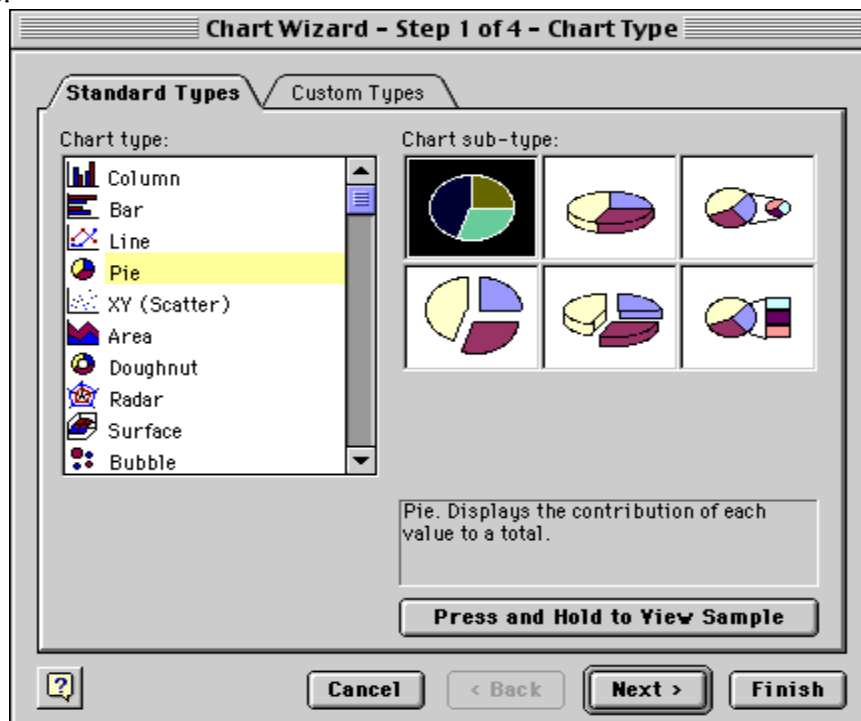
**Step 2** - Highlight data to be graphed. Do not include the row with heading titles, only the names of fruit and the numbers. If your worksheet looks like the one above; put your cursor in cell A2, click hold the mouse button down and drag to cell B7. Highlighted data should look like the image below:

	A	B
1	Fruit	Number
2	Apple	8
3	Orange	4
4	Banana	3
5	Grapes	5
6	Peach	3
7	Pear	1

Note: Cell A2 is selected; the select color extends around the cell

**Step 3** - Select the Chart Wizard. That is done by going to the **Insert** menu and selecting **Chart**. You can also click on the **Chart Wizard** button on the Standard toolbar. 

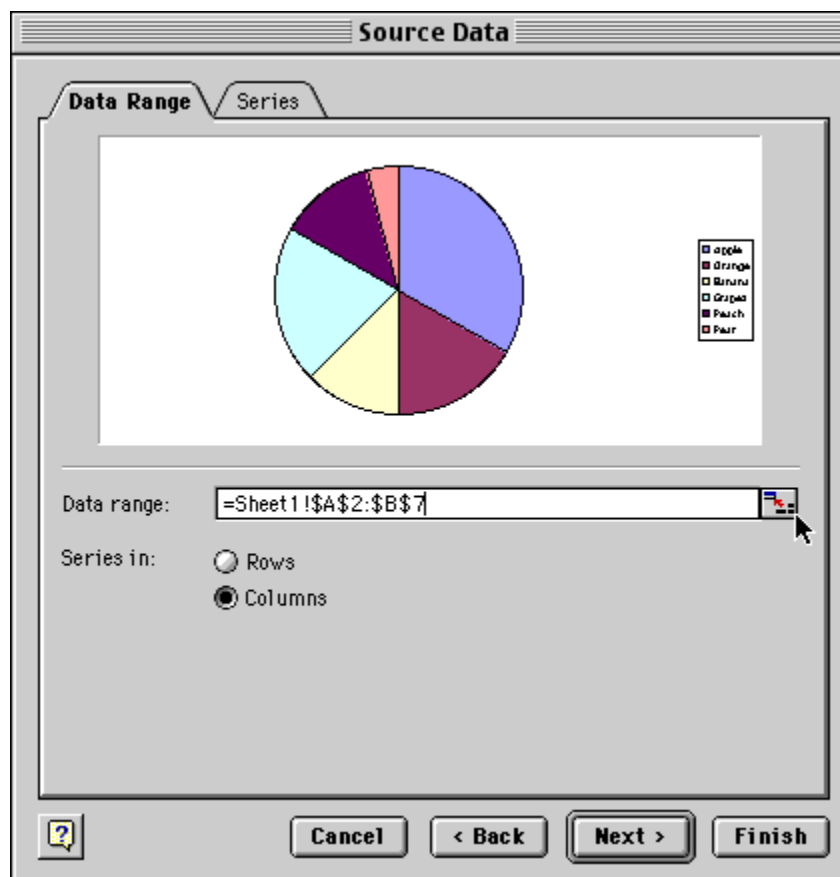
**Step 4** - From the Chart Wizard box that opens select Chart type. For this activity, I selected pie.



After you have selected the Chart type, click and hold your mouse pointer down on the Press and Hold... button to see what your data looks like in the chart type you selected. If you do not like the look, select another chart type. After you have selected the chart type you will have two options:

- Select Next and let Chart Wizard show you a series of options to make changes to your chart.
- Select Finish and Chart Wizard puts your completed chart on the spreadsheet. You can see the finished product below.

The first step taken by Chart Wizard is to verify the range of data being used for this chart. The Data range displayed below is read "all cells from A2 to B7."

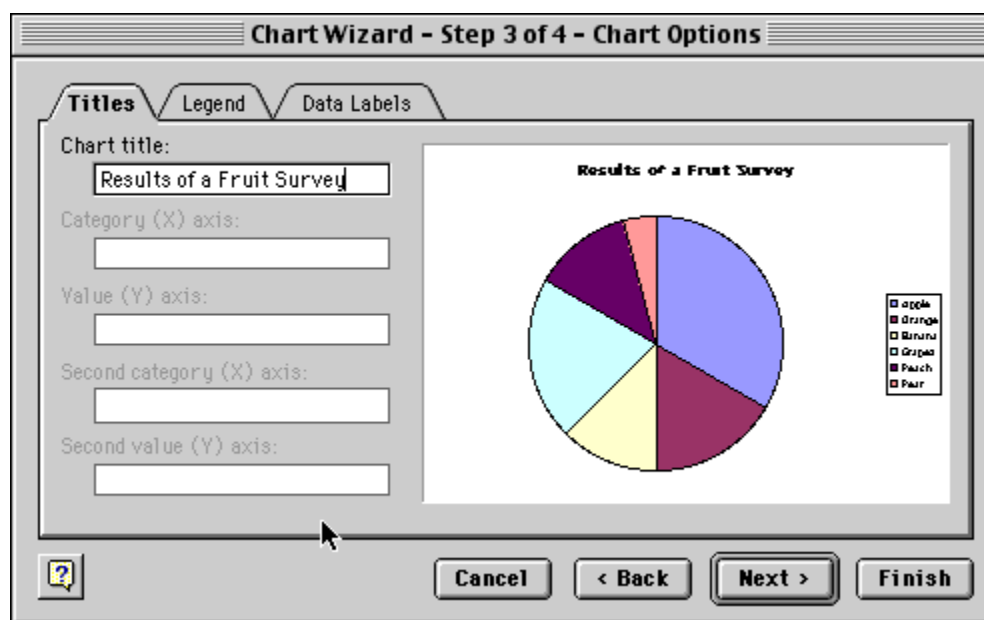


Notice where the cursor is located in the dialog box above. It is pointing to the small box at the end of the line where the Data range is displayed. If the data range should be changed, click on the box the cursor is pointing to.



The dialog box shrinks allowing you to see your entire spreadsheet. You can edit the data range in this small window. When you are finished, click the same box at the end to restore the window.

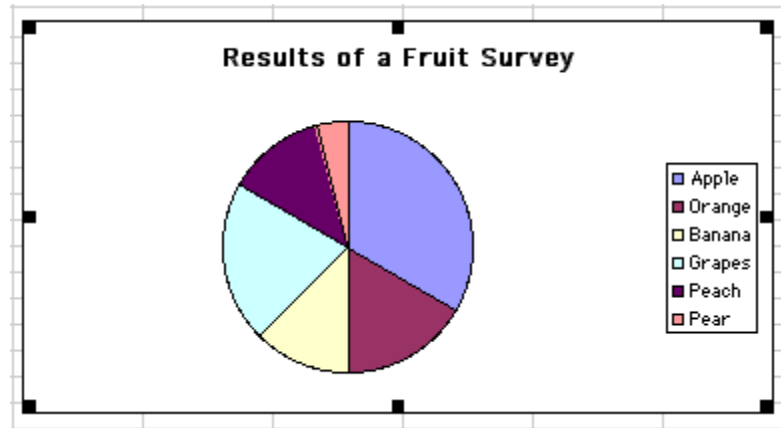
Select **Next** to go to the dialog box below. This box allows you to add a title to the chart, make changes on the legend, or make changes on the data labels.



Select **Next** to move to the final dialog box which allows you to see the chart as a new sheet or place it on one of the sheets in your workbook.



If you let the Chart Wizard finish your chart after the first dialog box, or work through each of the four steps, your chart will look something like the one below.




---

## 7.6 REVIEW QUESTIONS

---

1. State whether the following statement True (T) or False (F) :
  - a) MS-Word has the facility of Macros.
  - b) Mouse setting can be changed from control panel.
  - c) Print preview option is in edit menu
  - d) In MS-Word a table consists of rows and columns.
  - e) Using the Edit option you can switch over from Normal mod to outline mode.
  - f) The tool bar allows you to format the vertical alignment to text.
  - g) Mail merge option is in table menu.
  - h) Del key removes the one character form the left position. A byte is equal to 8 bits.
2. Answer the following Questions briefly:
  - a) Write the steps to insert a page break
  - b) Write the steps to insert table
  - c) How will you move a paragraph in MS-word?
  - d) Write any four features of Word Processing.
  - e) How to insert rows and columns in a table?
  - f) What is the Auto Correct feature used for?
  - g) Write the steps in creating a chart in Ms Excel
  - h) Distinguish between the following:
    - save and save as; and
    - cut past and copy past.
  - i) How to convert text in to a column?
  - j) Explain how to create a MS-Excel work sheet to calculate the employee pay. Find out the gross pay, detection and net pay.

---

## OFFICE AUTOMATION SYSTEMS - PART II

---

### Structure

#### 8.1 Ms PowerPoint-I

- 8.1.1 Starting Microsoft PowerPoint
- 8.1.2 Auto Layout
- 8.1.3 Toolbars
- 8.1.4 Insertion of New Slides

#### 8.2 MS PowerPoint-II

- 8.2.1 Apply a Design Template
- 8.2.2 Presentation Using Chart Wizards
- 8.2.3 Frame Movements of The Above

#### 8.3 Review Questions

---

### 8.1 MS POWERPOINT-I

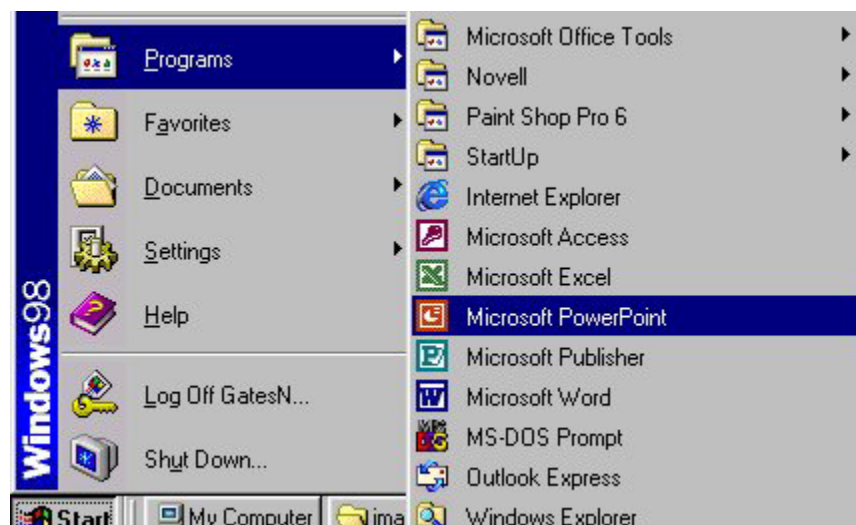
---

Microsoft PowerPoint is a powerful tool to create professional looking presentations and slide shows. PowerPoint allows you to construct presentations from scratch or by using the easy to use wizard.

#### 8.1.1 Starting Microsoft PowerPoint

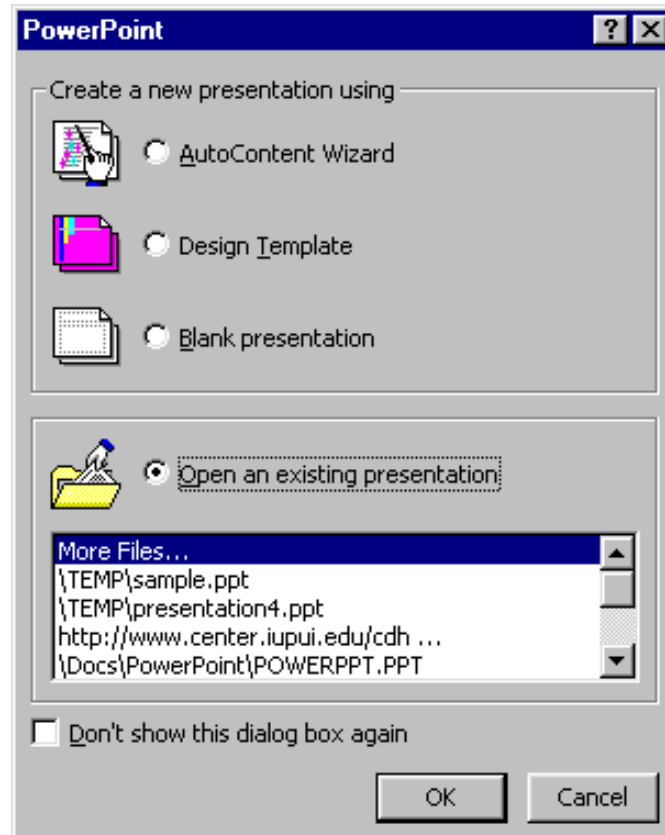
##### Two Ways

Double click on the Microsoft PowerPoint icon on the desktop.  
Click on Start --> Programs --> Microsoft PowerPoint





**Creating & Opening a Presentation:** After you open up Microsoft PowerPoint, a screen pops up asking if you would like to create a New Presentation or Open an Existing Presentation.

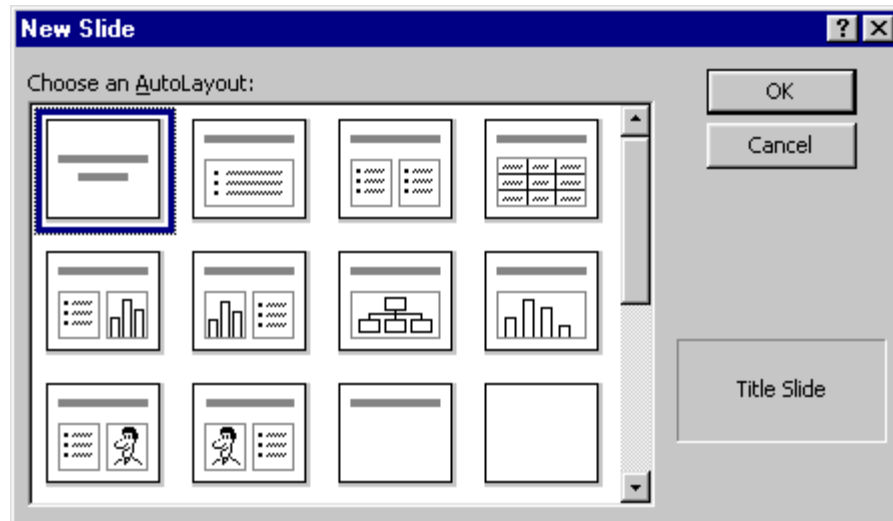


- **AutoContent Wizard**
  - Creates a new presentation by prompting you for information about content, purpose, style, handouts, and output. The new presentation contains sample text that you can replace with your own information. Simply follow the directions and prompts that are given by Microsoft PowerPoint.
- **Design Template**
  - Creates a new presentation based on one of the PowerPoint design templates supplied by Microsoft. Use what is already supplied by Microsoft PowerPoint and change the information to your own.
- **Blank Presentation**
  - Creates a new, blank presentation using the default settings for text and colors.

### 8.1.2 Auto Layout

After you have opened a new presentation, PowerPoint displays the New Slide dialog box containing several Auto Layouts. **Auto Layouts** provide a pre-determined layout for each

specific type of slide. They provide consistency throughout the presentation. Each layout depicted is described in the lower right corner when you click the layout. This sample New Slide dialog box shows the Title Slide selected (denoted with the thick border).



After you select Blank Presentation a window pops up asking you to select the layout of the first slide.

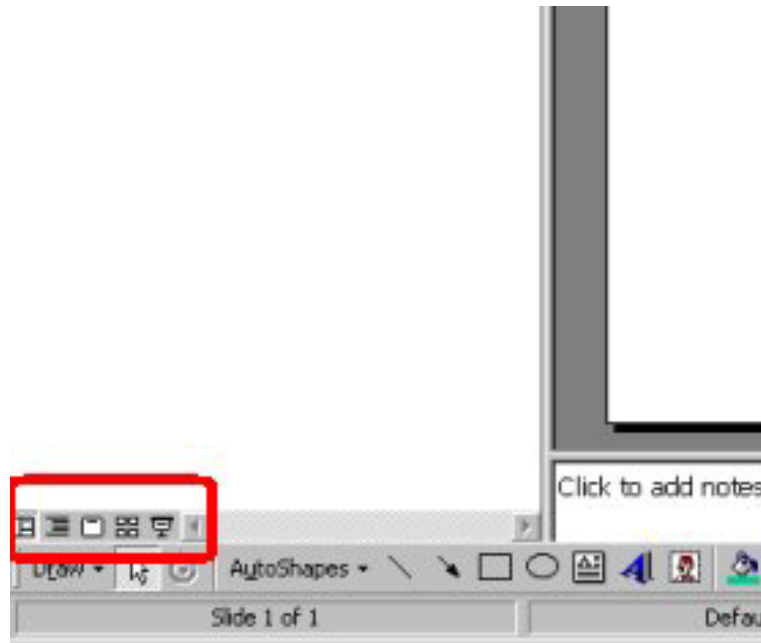
#### **Pre-Designed Slide Layouts (Left to Right)**

- Title Slide
- Bulleted List
- Two Column Text
- Table
- Text & Chart
- Chart & Text
- Organizational Chart
- Chart
- Text & Clip Art
- Clip Art & Text
- Title Only
- Blank Slide

**NOTE: If you already know what you want in your next slide, it is a very good idea to choose one of the pre-designed layouts from above. However if you do not, then you can still insert what you want in throughout your Presentation anytime you desire. Just choose Blank Slide and insert items as you see fit.**

#### **Different Views That PowerPoint Demonstrates:**

There are different views within Microsoft PowerPoint that allow you to look at your presentation from different perspectives.



Normal View	Outline View	Slide View	Slide Sorter View	Slide Show View
Switches to normal view, where you can work on one slide at a time or organize the structure of all the slides in your presentation	Switches to outline view, where you can work with the structure of your file in outline form. Work in outline view when you need to organize the structure of your file.	Switches to slide view, where you can work on one slide at a time	Displays miniature versions of all slides in a presentation, complete with text and graphics. In slide sorter view, you can reorder slides; add transitions, and animation effects. You can also set the timings for electronic slide shows.	Runs your slide show in a full screen, beginning with the current slide if you are in slide view or the selected slide if you are in slide sorter view. If you simply want to view your show from the first slide: Click <b>Slide Show</b> at the top of the screen Select <b>View Show</b>

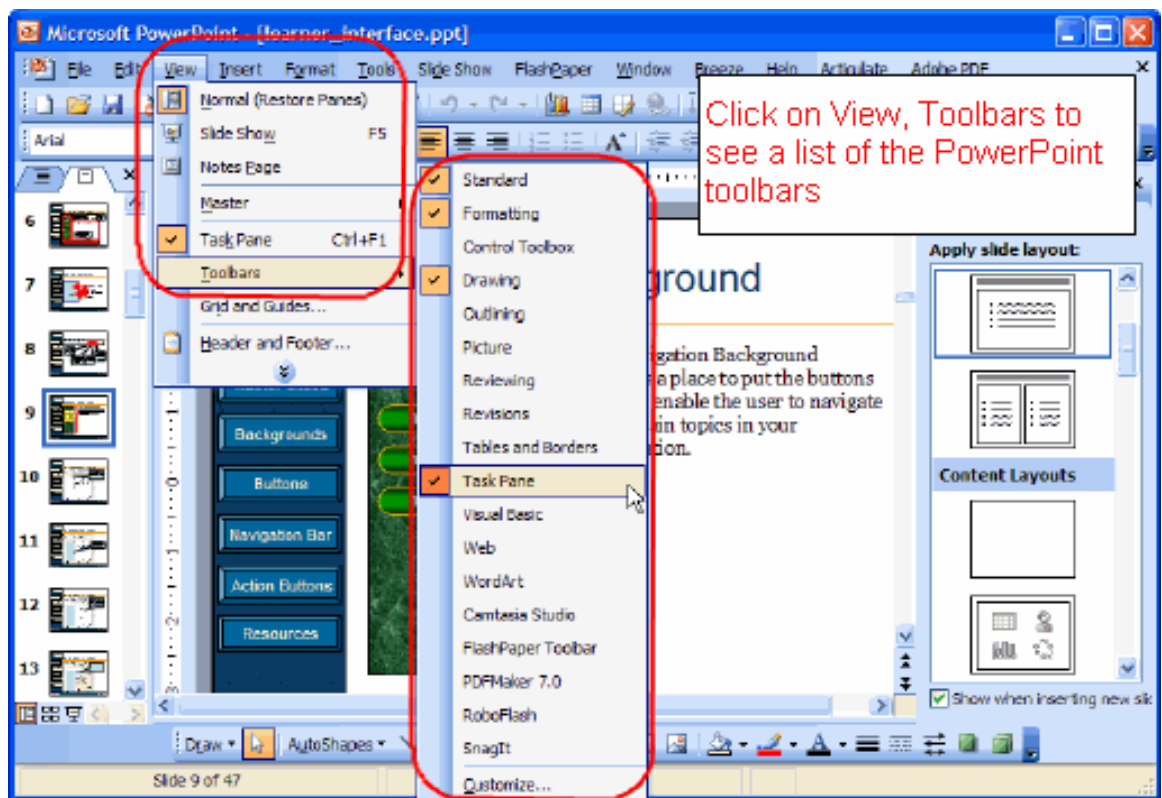
### 8.1.3 Toolbars

Toolbars include important components for developing a presentation. A toolbar is an onscreen bar which contains shortcut buttons. These allow easy access to frequently used commands. You can easily get to the toolbars you need by telling PowerPoint which ones to display.

PowerPoint includes 13 toolbars including commonly used ones such as the Standard, Formatting, Drawing, Picture, and E-mail toolbars. You don't need all of them at once, and some you may seldom use so you don't want them taking up space on your screen. You can pick and choose which toolbars are visible, and once you know how to turn toolbars on and off, you can always get to the toolbar you need.

#### Display and Hide PowerPoint Toolbars

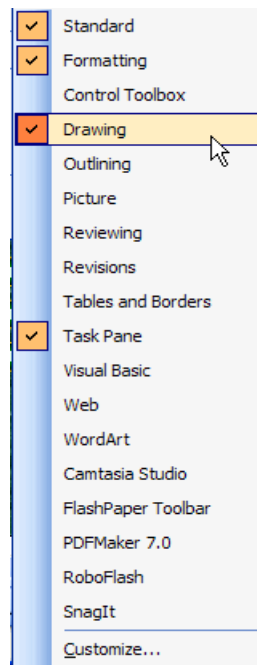
Click **View**. Then click on **Toolbars**. A fly-out menu will appear with a list of all of the Windows toolbars and any others that you may have installed from other applications on your computer.



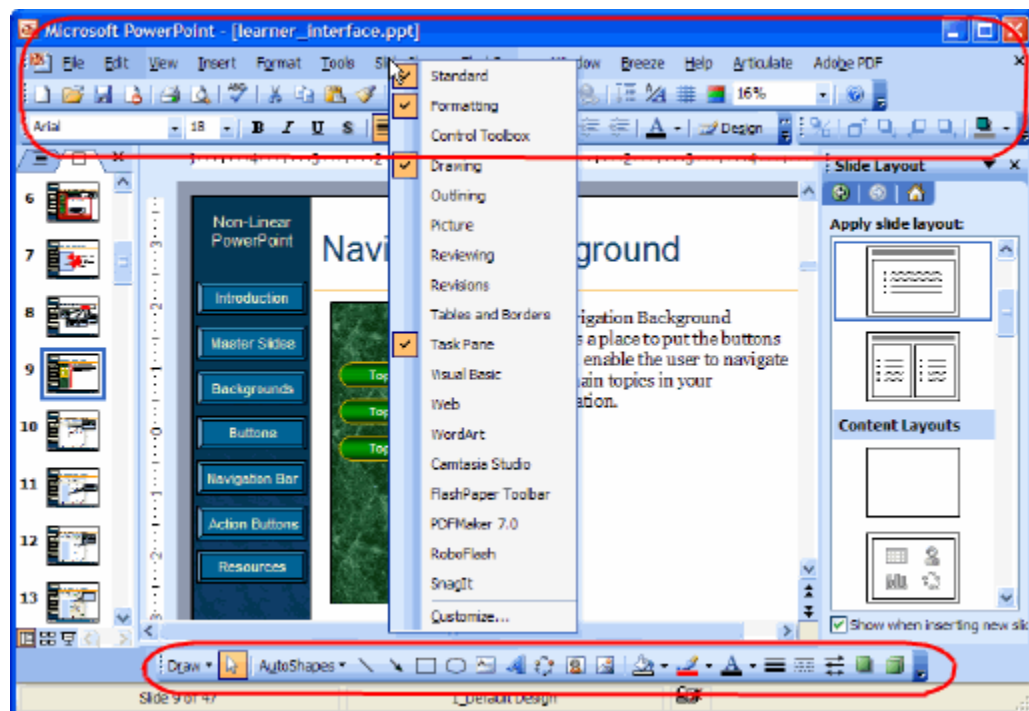
In the list of PowerPoint toolbars, the ones with the **check mark** next to them are visible. The ones without a checkmark are hidden.

To make a toolbar visible, simply click on its name in the list, a checkmark will appear next to the toolbar name in the list and the toolbar will become visible in your PowerPoint workplace. Check the toolbar you want to be visible and repeat as necessary.

You can also right-click on any existing toolbar and check or uncheck any entry in the shortcut menu.



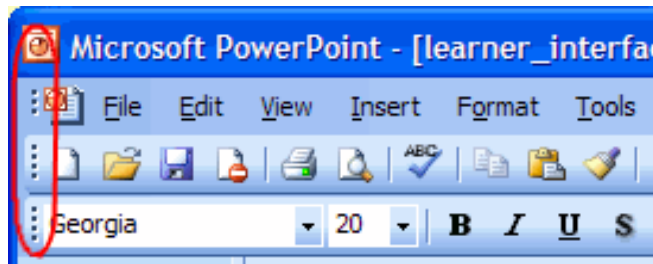
You can also right-click your mouse anywhere in a toolbar area and the list of PowerPoint toolbars will appear. From here you can turn toolbars on or off.



### Moving and Changing the Toolbars:

You can reposition toolbars on the presentation you are working on. You can also resize toolbars so that all or only a few of the buttons contained in them are visible.

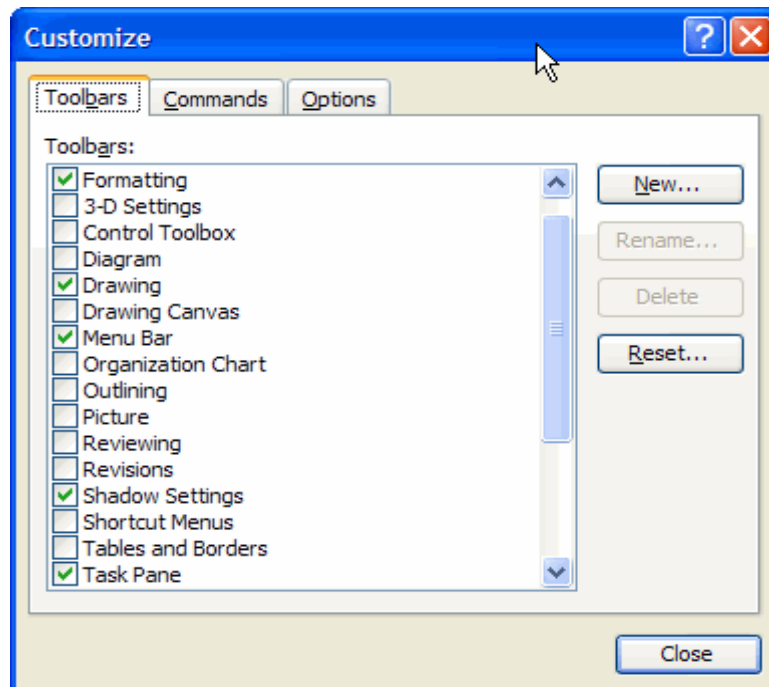
Each toolbar has four vertical dots that help you move them to a fixed position on the screen or to floating positions on the screen. To move a toolbar, click the four dots that are found on the left end of each toolbar.



Note that when you choose to view a toolbar, it appears in the position in which it was most recently used. It was last docked at the bottom of the screen, then that's where it will appear again when it is turned back on. You may need to experiment with various toolbar locations until you find the arrangement that works best for you.

### Creating Your Own Toolbar:


You can create your own customized toolbar. Right click any toolbar and hit Customize. In the Customize dialog box. Select the toolbars tab and click New. Name the toolbar and allocate a template.



In the Toolbars list, click the toolbars you want to display. Click Close, and the toolbars you selected appear on the workspace.

### 8.1.4 Insertion of new slides

#### To create a new slide:

1. Do one of the following:
  - Choose *Insert > New Slide* from the menu.
  - Click the New Slide button .
  - Press Ctrl-M.

The Apply Slide Layout pane will appear on the right side of the screen. The Apply Slide Layout pane provides you with slide templates you can use when creating your PowerPoint presentation. There are four types of Text Layout templates.

Title Slide - The Title Slide contains two text placeholders that you can use to display a title and a subtitle of your presentation.

Title Only - The Title Only slide contains a single placeholder. You can use it to display a title.

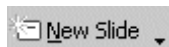
Title and Text - The Title and Text template provides a placeholder for a title and a placeholder for text.

Title and 2 Column Text - The Title and Text template provides a placeholder for a title and two placeholders for text.

2. To select a layout, click the layout you want in the Apply Slide Layout pane. The layout will then appear in the Slide pane.



3. To add text, click inside the placeholder and type.
4. To add an additional slide to your presentation do one of the following:
  - Right-click on the slide layout. A menu will appear. Choose *Insert New Slide*.
  - Click the down arrow next to the slide layout. A menu will appear). Choose *Insert New Slide*.



#### Change Your Slides

After creating a slide, if you want to add text:

1. Place the cursor at the point at which you would like to add text.
2. Type the information you want to add.

If you would like to change text:

1. Highlight the text you want to change.
2. Type the new text.

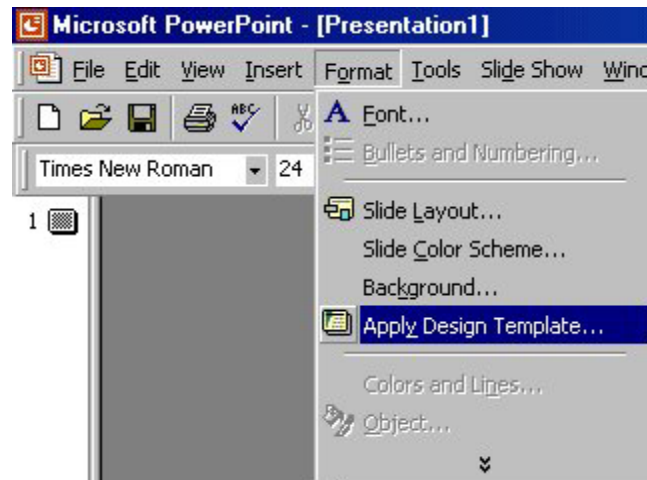
You can use the backspace key to delete text. You can also delete text by highlighting the text and pressing the Delete key.

---

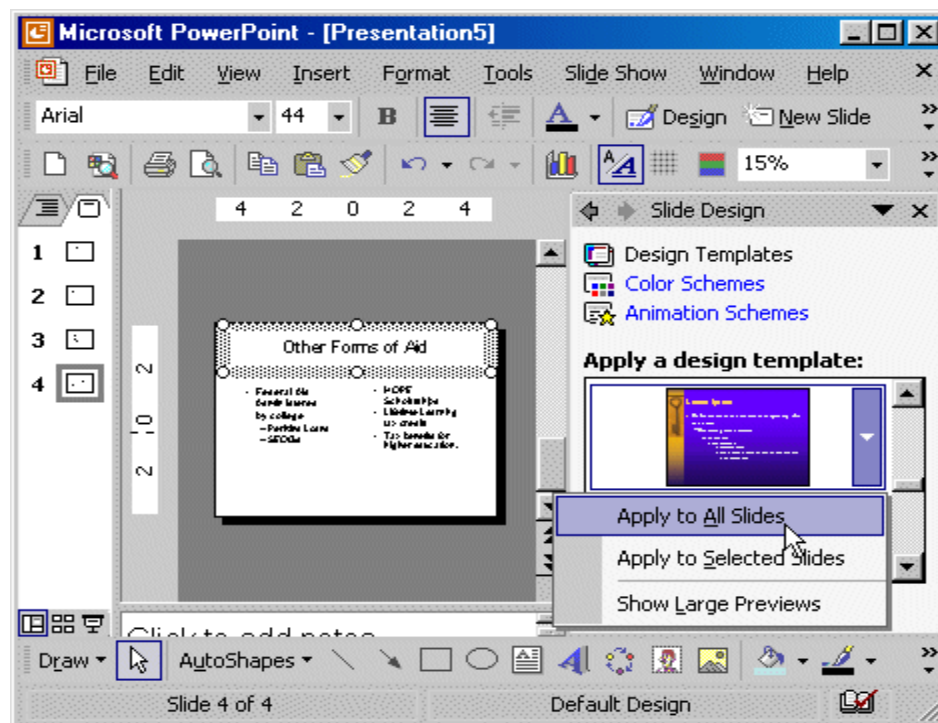
## 8.2 MS POWERPOINT-II

---

### 8.2.1 Apply a Design Template



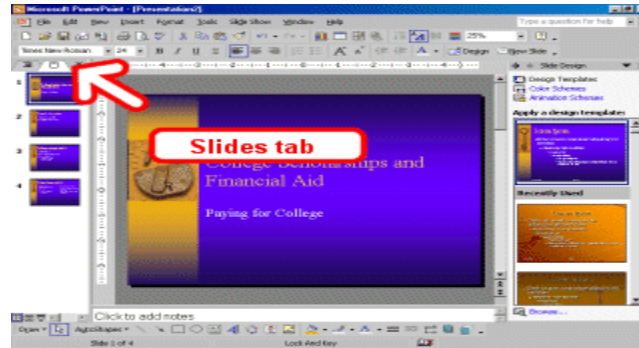
1. Click the design icon
2. Design templates will appear on the left side of the screen.
3. Scroll down to view the design templates.
4. Right-click the design template you want to apply. A context menu will appear. Choose **Apply to All Slides**. We used the Lock and Key design template.



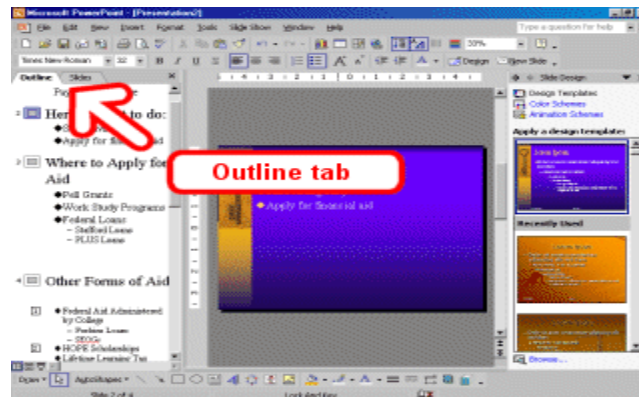


## Outline and Slides Tab

1. Use the Slides tab to view thumbnails of your slide.

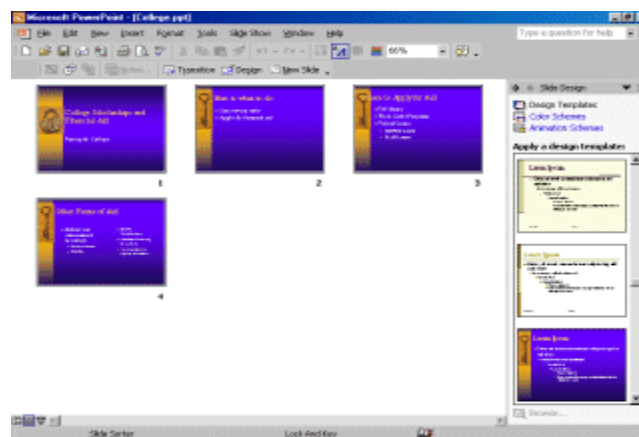


2. Click the Outline tab to view the text of your presentation as an outline.



## Slide Sorter View

1. Choose *View > Slide Sorter* from the menu to move to Slide Sorter view.



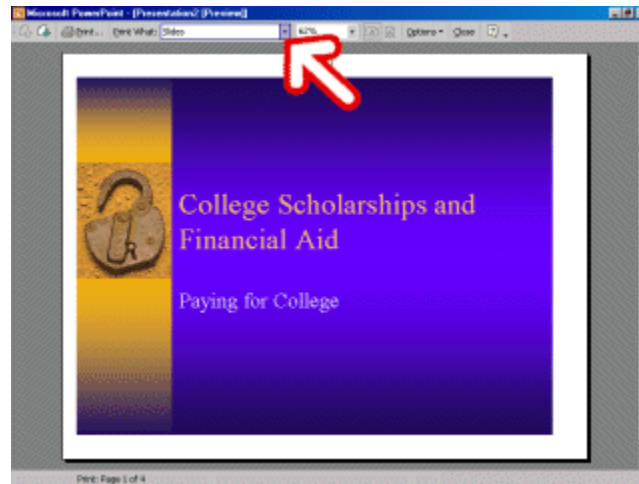
2. Double-click a slide to return to Normal view.

### Run Your Slide Show

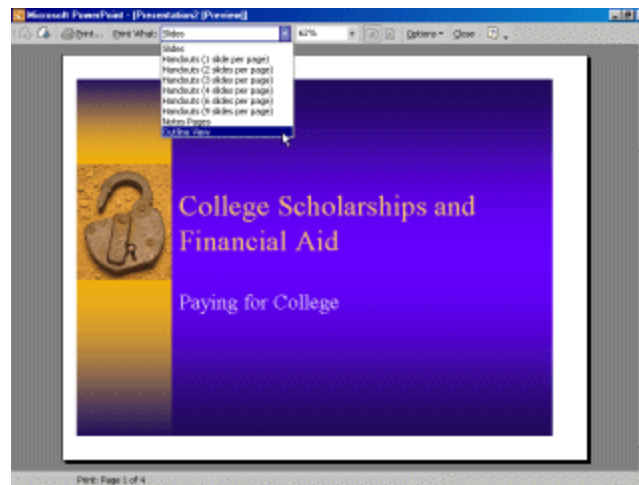
1. Press F5 to run the Slide Show.
2. Use the arrow keys on your keyboard to move forward and backward through your slides.
3. Use the Esc key to return to Normal view.

### Print Your Outline

1. Choose *File > Print Preview* from the menu.
2. Click the down arrow next to the Print What icon.



3. Select Outline view.



4. Click the Print icon.
5. Click Close.

### Print Your Slides

1. Choose *File > Print Preview* from the menu.
2. Click the down arrow next to the Print What icon.
3. Select the slides you want to print.

4. Click the down arrow next to Options. A menu will appear.
5. Choose **Color/Grayscale > Pure Black and White**.
6. Click the Print icon.
7. Click Close.

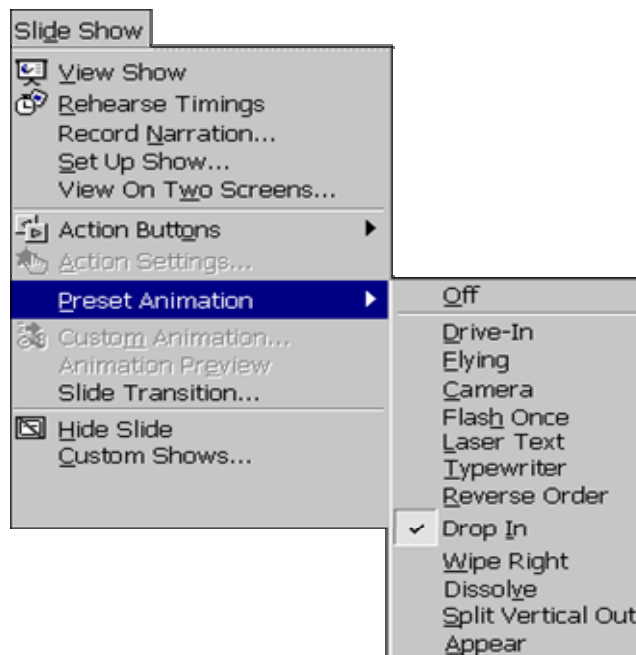
### **Print Your Slides as a Handout**

1. Choose *File > Print Preview* from the menu.
2. Click the down-arrow next to the Print What icon.
3. Select Handouts (2 Slides per Page).
4. Click the Print icon.
5. Click Close.

## **8.2.2 Presentation using Chart Wizards**

### **a) To animate a single object on a PowerPoint slide**

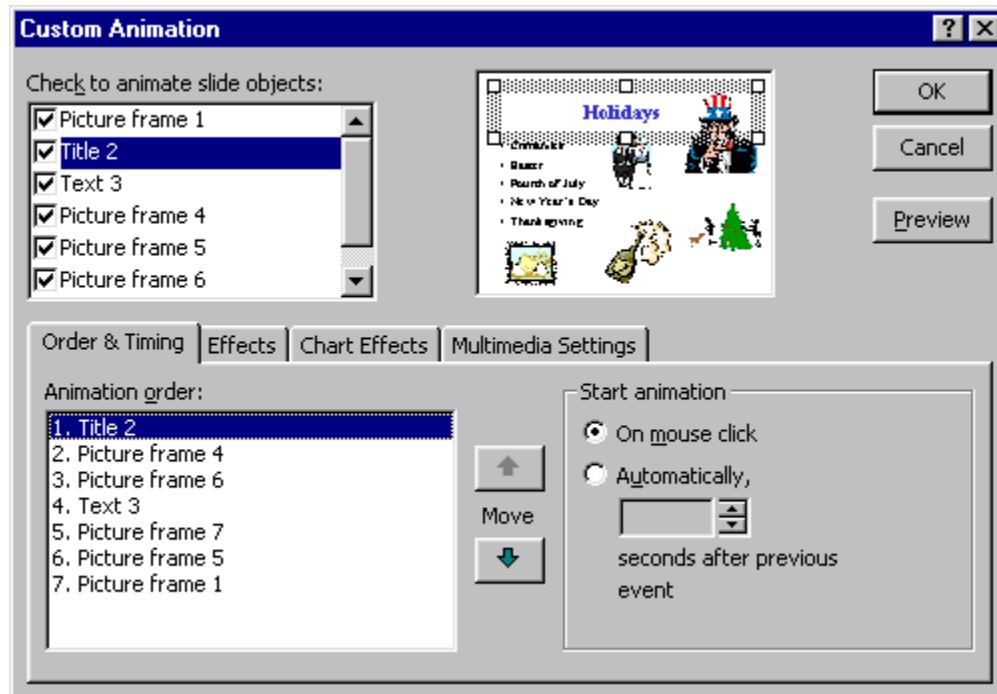
1. Select the object.
2. Choose SLIDE SHOW: Preset Animation.
3. Select the animation effect you desire for the selected object.



Animated Layers or Slides you may find it useful to bring a layered object into a presentation one layer at a time, building it on-screen. To animate a layered object or to animate each object on a slide:

1. Choose SLIDE SHOW: Custom Animation. (You must be in Normal, Outline, or Slide View.)
2. In the Custom Animation dialog box, each object is identified in the Check to animate slide objects list.

3. (If you don't remember what a particular object is), click the object's name in the list; that object appears selected in the preview window.
4. Click in the object's checkbox to animate that object. It will be added to the Animation order list.
5. To change the order that the animated objects appear, select the object in the Animation order list, then click the up or down arrow to move the object through the list.
6. Choose whether the object appears only on a mouse click or after a specified number of seconds.



**To choose other effects** such as sound effects and how the object appears on the slide during the on-screen presentation, click on the Effects tab.

**To animate text:**

1. Click on the Effects tab.
2. In the Introduce Text section, from the drop-down box, choose whether the text is introduced all at once, by word, or by letter.

**To animate charts** click the Chart Effects tab. You can choose to introduce the data by series, categories, or elements.

**NOTE:** Be careful of using too many effects in any single presentation because they soon become a distraction rather than an enhancement of the presentation.

**b) Create a Presentation Using the AutoContent Wizard in Microsoft PowerPoint**

1. In PowerPoint, click **Getting Started** to open the dropdown menu
2. Select **New Presentation** from the menu

3. Click **From AutoContent Wizard**
4. The **AutoContent Wizard** opens. In the opening pane, click **Next** and you arrive at the second pane
5. Click a category from one of the following:
  - **All:** Lists all slide presentations in all categories. You can scroll the window and select a slide presentation to create from the list
  - **General:** Displays a list of general business topics
  - **Corporate:** Displays a list of corporate topics such as business plans, financial reports, employee orientation, and so on
  - **Projects:** Lists presentations that might be used in a planning process
  - **Sales/Marketing:** Lists presentations suited for a marketing program
6. Click a presentation from within a category and click **Next** to move to the next pane
7. Select an output option from one of the following:
  - **On-Screen Presentation:** Click this radio button to create a presentation that is intended to be shown on your computer or on a projector connected to your computer
  - **Web Presentation:** Click this radio button for a slide presentation that you want to show on a Web site
  - **Black and White Overheads:** Click this radio button if you want to print your slides on clear acetate on a black-and-white laser printer
  - **Color Overheads:** Click this radio button if you want to print your slides on clear acetate on a color printer
  - **35mm Slides:** Click this radio button if you want to print your slides on a commercial film recorder that outputs to 35mm slides
8. Click **Next** to advance to the next pane
9. Type a title for your presentation in the **Presentation Title** text box
10. Type a footer in the **Footer** text box if you want a footer to appear on your slides
11. Click **Next** in the wizard to advance to the last pane in the wizard
12. Click **Finish** to complete the slide creation and open it in PowerPoint
13. Edit the presentation to customize it for your own needs.

### 8.2.3 Frame movements of the above

#### Using the Slide Sorter



The Slide Sorter shows a thumbnail of each slide in the presentation. From this view, it is easy to rearrange the presentation, make duplicate slides, delete slides, and place transitions into the presentation. **To place your presentation in Slide Sorter View**, click the Slide Sorter Tool. The current slide is denoted by a thicker border.



**To select a different slide**, click the slide you wish to become current.

**To duplicate or delete the current slide, choose EDIT:** Duplicate (or Delete) Slide.

PowerPoint provides visual indicators beneath each slide showing any slide transition, text animation, or advance timing that you have applied to that slide.



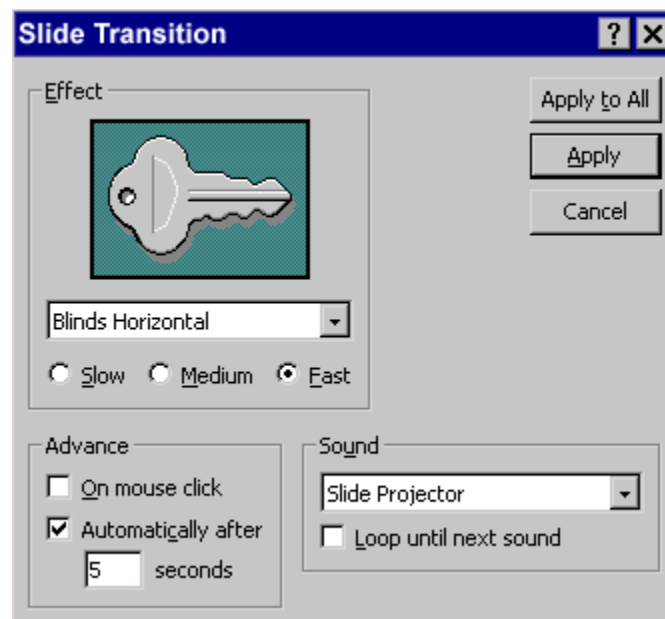
### Using Transitions:

Transitions determine the effects applied when you move from one slide to another during an on-screen presentation. You must be in Slide Sorter View to access the Transition Toolbar.

**To choose only a transition effect**, click the dropdown box beside the words "No Transition" and select a transition. **To have other transition choices** available to you, click the Slide Transition Tool.



When you click the Slide Transition Tool, the Slide Transition dialog box allows you to choose not only a transition effect from a drop-down box, but also offers other choices that affect your on-screen presentation.



**TIP:** Don't use a different transition on each slide because your audience's attention should remain focused on you and the content, not the effects. If you want to use multiple

transitions, a good rule of thumb is to apply a unique transition to each slide in a specific module of the presentation.

Generally, you should leave the Effect Speed set to Fast. This brings in the next content slide quickly and keeps your audience's attention focused on the presentation content. PowerPoint contains a few built-in sounds. **To play a sound** as the slide is transitioning, make a sound selection from the Sound drop-down box. Unless you have a well thought out reason for doing so, don't choose to have the sound loop until the next sound; it can become annoying very fast while you're giving a presentation, as well as making it difficult for you to speak over. Also, many presentation locations don't have adequate speakers attached to the computer to allow all of your audience to hear the sound.

#### **Advance determines when the current slide proceeds to the next.**

On mouse click advances the presentation to the next slide, or displays the next bullet point, only when you click the mouse. (You can also use the keyboard arrow keys or the spacebar.)

Automatically after xx seconds, makes the transition xx seconds after the preceding transition ended.

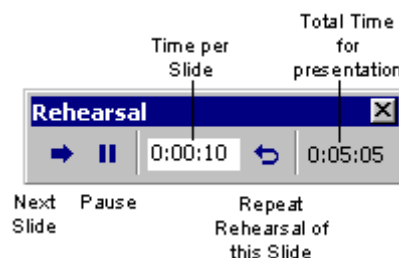
**NOTE:** Make sure that if you select automatically, that you remove the check in on mouse click.

For self-running presentations that function similar to a kiosk presentation where your audience may stop, watch, then leave, generally you will want to set the advance to 3-5 seconds.

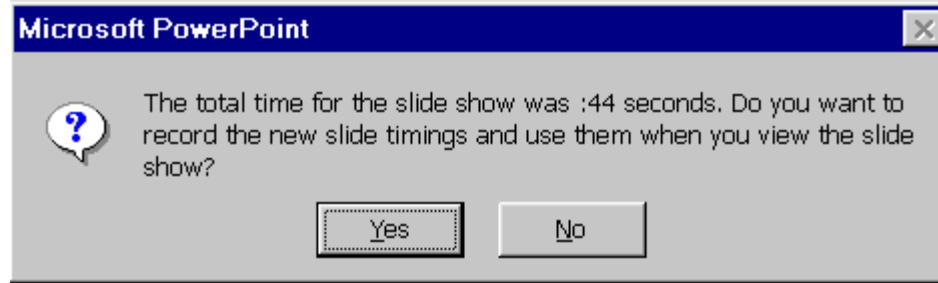
For a self-running presentation where you are speaking in synchronization with the presentation, generally you will want to set the advance to 3-5 minutes.

#### **Rehearse Timings**

The Rehearse Timing Tool allows you to practice giving an on-screen presentation, regardless of any slide advance timings you may have set previously. The tool times not only the entire presentation, but also each individual slide, as you rehearse. Each time you advance the slide, the time is recorded. You must be in Slide Sorter View to access the Rehearse Timing Tool.



**To use the Rehearse Timing Tool, click the Rehearse Timing Tool.** When you have completed rehearsing, PowerPoint displays the total time for the rehearsed presentation and ask if you want to record the new timings. If you click "Yes," these new timings will replace any slide advance timings you may have previously set for the presentation.



### **Bullet Effects:**

The Text Preset Animation Tool controls how bulleted points appear on the slide during an on-screen presentation. You must be in Slide Sorter View to access the Text Preset Animation Tool.

To animate bulleted points, the slide containing bulleted points must be the current slide. Then click the drop-down box and choose the animation effect you desire.



### **Hidden Slides**

You can hide slides within a presentation. Hidden slides remain available as part of the saved presentation and are accessible to you during development or in future presentations but do not appear as one of the consecutive presentation slides during a show.



You must be in Slide Sorter View to access the Hidden Slide Tool. To hide a slide, make sure it is the current slide, and then click the Hide Slide Tool.



Hidden slides display in Slide Sorter View with a slash through the slide number. Slide View does not differentiate between hidden and non-hidden slides, and all are displayed. During presentation, however, hidden slides are passed over unless specifically chosen by you through the Slide Show Navigator.

---

## **8.3 REVIEW QUESTIONS**

---

1. How to create 5 slides using different design templates?
2. How to make an effective presentation?
3. Explain the steps of AutoContent Wizard to create presentations.
4. What are the basic component of a slide?
5. Explain the steps to create a title slide.
6. How to create a slide show with time delay and user input?



---

## OFFICE AUTOMATION SYSTEMS - PART III

---

### Structure

#### 9.1 Introduction to Ms Outlook

##### 9.1.1 How to Set Up Outlook Express

##### 9.1.2 New For Outlook 2000

##### 9.1.3 Exploring Outlook 2000

##### 9.1.4 Exploring Inbox

#### 9.2 Difference between Outlook Express and Microsoft Outlook

#### 9.3 Computer in Office Automation

##### 9.3.1 Office Automation Technologies

#### 9.4 Computers in Engineering

#### 9.5 Review Questions

---

## 9.1 INTRODUCTION TO MS OUTLOOK

---

Microsoft Office Outlook or Outlook is a personal information manager from Microsoft. The 2007 version is available both as a separate application as well as a part of the Microsoft Office suite.

Microsoft Outlook 2000 helps you to organize, find, and view all of this information—all in one place. It is easy to use, like the other programs in the Office suite, provides an integrated approach to the Web. Outlook 2000 offers e-mail and collaboration features when used with Internet-based messaging systems and even more advanced functionality when used on an intranet with Microsoft Exchange Server.

Microsoft Outlook 2000 messaging and collaboration client provides the following capabilities:

- Electronic mail
- Personal calendar and group scheduling
- Contact information and task list
- Custom collaboration and information-sharing programs

### 9.1.1 How to Set Up Outlook Express

Before you can use Outlook Express to send and receive e-mail, you need to set up an account. You can have more than one account—for business, online shopping, and so on—and each person who uses your computer may have their own, completely separate account. Outlook Express gracefully handles it all.

### Start Outlook Express

There are many ways to start Outlook Express, but here's a sure-fire way to find and start it.

1. Click the **Start** button.
2. Point to **All Programs**.
3. Click **Outlook Express**.

These first three steps are shown in the image below:



**Fig 9.1 Opening Outlook Express from the Start menu**

4. If asked whether you'd like to open this particular account automatically every time you start Outlook Express, click **Yes** (if you do) or **No** (if you don't). If you don't want to be asked this question again, click to check the **Always perform this check...** box.

5. Check **When Outlook Express starts, go directly to my Inbox**.

Outlook Express directs all incoming mail to the Inbox, so it makes sense to bypass this opening page.

If you don't see the list of folders and contacts on the left, click **Layout** on the **View** menu. Click **Contacts** and **Folder List** to check them, and then click **OK**.



**Fig 9.2 Outlook Express list of folders**

**Quick start.** You'll notice that when you use Outlook Express regularly, Windows XP will put the Outlook Express icon on the Start menu (along with other programs you've used recently). In that case, just click the **Outlook Express** icon in the **Start** menu to open the program.

**Set Up an Outlook Express E-Mail Account ;** The Internet Connection Wizard makes short work of setting up your online mailbox by walking you through each step for every e-mail account you set up.

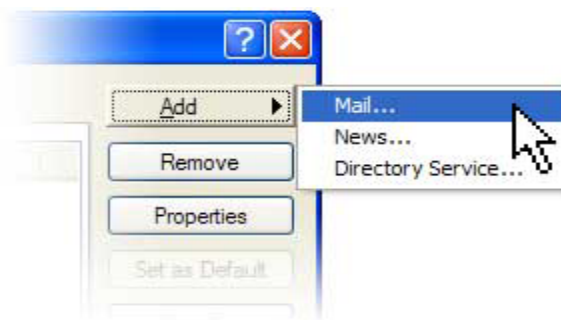
1. Before you get going, make sure you know your email address along with the following information. (You may need to contact your ISP, Internet Service Provider, to get it.)

**First, information about the e-mail servers:**

- The type of e-mail server you use: POP3 (most e-mail accounts), HTTP (such as Hotmail), or IMAP
- The name of the incoming e-mail server
- For POP3 and IMAP servers, the name of the outgoing e-mail server (generally SMTP)

**Second, information about your account:**

- Your account name and password (For some solid advice about making a secure password, read the Create strong passwords article.)
  - Find out if your ISP requires you to use Secure Password Authentication (SPA) to access your e-mail account—yes or no is all that's required.
2. Start Outlook Express, and on the **Tools** menu, click **Accounts**.
  3. If the Internet Connection Wizard starts up automatically, skip ahead to step 4. Click **Add**, and then click **Mail** to open the Internet Connection Wizard



**Fig 9.3 Mail option from the Add button**

4. On the **Your Name** page of the wizard, type your name as you want it to appear to everyone who gets e-mail from you, and then click **Next**.
5. Most people use their full name, but you can use any name—even a nickname—that people will recognize.
6. On the **Internet Explorer Address** page, type your e-mail address, and then click **Next**.

**Fig 9.4 Internet Connection Wizard's E-mail Server Names**

**Note:** If you chose HTTP as your incoming e-mail server—as for a Hotmail or MSN account—this wizard page changes slightly so you can identify your HTTP mail service provider.

7. On the **Internet Mail Logon** page, type your account name and password.

**Fig 9.5 Internet Connection Wizard's Internet Mail Logon**

**Note:** If you're concerned about break-ins to your e-mail, click to clear the check in the **Remember Password** box. You'll then be prompted for the password each time you send or retrieve mail.

8. Click **Next**, and then click **Finish**.

You're ready to send your first e-mail!

**Unsure if your new e-mail account is working?** Send an e-mail message to a friend. If they get the message, your account is ready to roll! But if you run into problems setting up

your account, Outlook Express offers help. Search for troubleshooting topics from **Contents and Index** on the **Help** menu.

### Set Up a Web-based E-Mail Account

The e-mail that you get in a Hotmail account and other Web-based accounts is not stored on your hard disk, but is kept on the account-provider's computer. That's what makes it possible to access your account from any computer in the world over the Internet. Here's how you set yourself up.

1. Go to the Web site and follow the setup instructions—for example, <http://www.hotmail.com/> for Hotmail.
2. Set up Outlook Express to use the account, by following the instructions above in Set up an Outlook Express e-mail account.

**If you share your computer with someone else**, take advantage of Fast User Switching. A feature of Windows XP, it lives up to its name by enabling you to switch among users on a single computer without closing any programs you are running or logging off.

- To turn Fast User Switching on, open **User Accounts** in Control Panel. Click **Change the way users log on or off**. Make sure the **Use Fast User Switching** box is checked.
- Then, to switch users, click **Start**, click **Log off** and then click **Switch User**. On the Welcome screen, click the user account you want to switch to. That's it!

### Close Outlook Express

In closing, Outlook Express works just as all other Windows programs do.

- On the **File** menu, click **Exit**.

**Tip:** For a fast way out, press ALT+F4.

Name	Version Number	Release Date	Notes
Outlook for MS-DOS	-	-	Bundled with Exchange Server 5.5
Outlook for Windows 3.x	-	-	Bundled with Exchange Server 5.5
Outlook for Macintosh	-	-	Bundled with Exchange Server 5.5

<b>Outlook 97</b>	8.0	January 16, 1997	Included in Office 97 and also bundled with Exchange Server 5.5.
<b>Outlook 98</b>	8.5	June 21, 1998	Freely distributed with books and magazines for coping with newest Internet standard such as HTML mail
<b>Outlook 2000</b>	9.0	June 7, 1999	Included in Office 2000 and also bundled with Exchange 2000 Server.
<b>Outlook 2002</b>	10	May 31, 2001	Included in Office XP.
<b>Office Outlook 2003</b>	11	October 21, 2003	Included in Office 2003 and also bundled with Exchange Server 2003.
<b>Office Outlook 2007</b>	12	November 30, 2006	Included in Office 2007, except Office Home and Student edition.

**Table 9.1 Versions of Microsoft Outlook**

### **9.1.2 New for Outlook 2000**

Whether you are a new user to a messaging and collaboration client or are already familiar with it, you will want to discover the new features that are present in Outlook 2000:

**Preview Pane:** A preview window that appears in the Inbox, allowing you to view e-mail messages quickly without opening the message. The Preview Pane is now available for viewing items in all Outlook 2000 folders.

**Automatic spell check in multiple languages:** Microsoft Word 2000 can serve as an e-mail editor, offering Language AutoDetect spell check and proofing support.

**Run Rules Now:** You can manually apply any of these rules to any Outlook 2000 folder at any point of time.

**Direct booking of resources:** Reserve conference rooms without dedicated-resource computers running.

**Enhanced Mail Merge:** You can filter the Contacts list in Outlook 2000 as desired and then pass the contacts to the Microsoft Word Mail Merge and merge on any Outlook fields.

**Outlook Bar shortcuts:** You can easily create a shortcut on the Outlook Bar to any file, folder, or Web page.

**Find Exchange Server Public Folder:** Outlook 2000 can search on Microsoft Exchange Server Public Folder properties to locate items in public folders.

**Web integration:** You can view a contact's personal Web page, post your calendar to a public folder for viewing on the Web, and share information within Outlook 2000.

**Folder home pages:** You can associate one or more Web pages with any personal or Exchange Server folder.

**View the Web:** Clicking any Outlook Bar shortcut to a Web page, displays the Web page in the right Outlook pane. Basic Web navigation is supported and the currently displayed page can be opened in your default Web browser.

**Internet group scheduling and iCalendar support:** Group scheduling is possible over the Internet. You can publish and download free/busy information for scheduling meetings, as well as send and receive meeting requests and responses over the Internet.

**Online meetings:** You can easily schedule real-time meetings and automatically start the Microsoft NetMeeting conferencing software.

**Microsoft NetShow™ Integration:** You can easily schedule your time to watch broadcasts via Microsoft NetShow services and automatically start Microsoft NetShow at the designated time.

**Save as Web page:** You can save Outlook 2000 items as HTML, making it easy to save your course calendar, schedules, and even your contacts to a Web page.

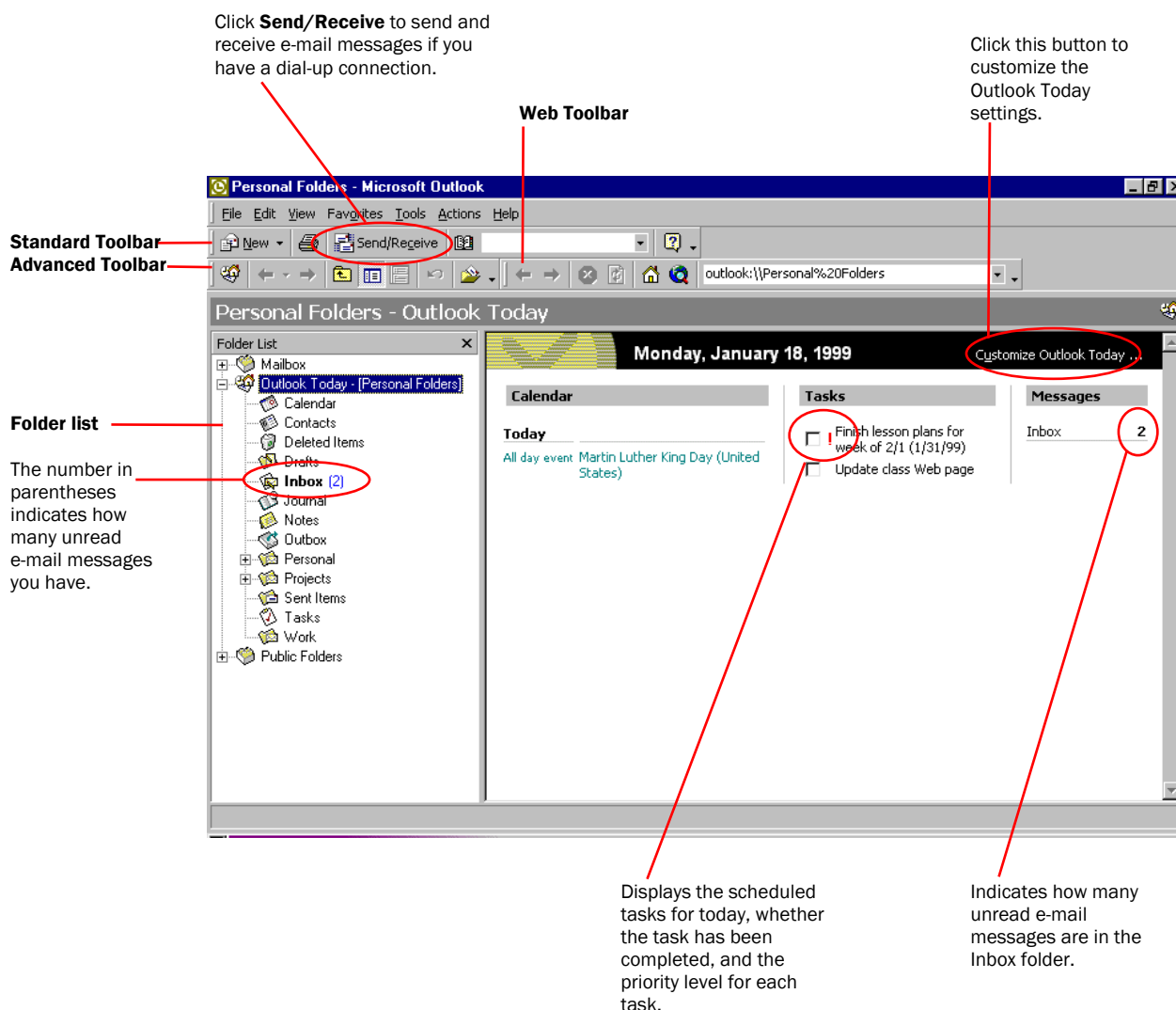
**HTML Mail:** Outlook 2000 fully supports sending and receiving of e-mails in HTML. Mails can be anything from simple formatted text to a complete Web page. Outlook 2000 also includes HTML stationery with different fonts and backgrounds.

### **9.1.3 Exploring Outlook 2000**

In Outlook 2000 you will find folders from which you can create tasks and contacts, schedule meetings and appointments, and send and receive messages. You can also switch easily between these folders, from the Outlook Bar or the Folders list or can create any new Outlook item from within any Outlook folder. On using the Office toolbar, you can even create Outlook items from other Office 2000 programs.

**Toolbars:** You will find that the Standard and Web toolbar features in Outlook 2000 are similar to those in other Office programs. For each Outlook folder, you can also display “Advanced toolbar” that gives you ready access to more features specific to Outlook 2000. To display toolbars, click View, point to Toolbars, and select those you want to make visible.

**Outlook Today:** The Outlook Today window provides a preview of your day. By using Outlook Today, you can see a summary of your appointments, a list of your tasks, and how many new e-mail messages you have. You can set this page to be the first page that opens when you start Outlook 2000, and you can customize Outlook Today to provide the information that you need.



**Fig 9.6 MS Outlook**





### 9.1.4 Exploring Inbox


Electronic mail, or e-mail, is quickly becoming one of the most widely used forms of communication in the world. It is fast, convenient, and doesn't require a stamp. Using e-mail, you can send a simple text message, like a reminder about an assignment or you can send a message that includes other files, such as a grade report spreadsheet or graphic file. With a microphone, you can even send voice messages.


Using e-mail can be beneficial for students and enhance instruction in many ways, from making it easier to ask questions to providing a forum for out-of-class discussions and collaboration. It can provide meaningful contact outside the classroom with instructors and peers. E-mail is easy to use and is becoming more and more accessible to students through their home computers or an information appliance like Microsoft Web TV. A few minutes of instruction can get most students (and instructors) up and running with e-mail.


#### Inbox symbols:


 High importance message


 Low importance message


 Read message

 Unread message

 Forwarded message


 Replied to message


 Saved or unsent message


 Sealed message


 Digitally signed message


#### More Inbox symbols:

 Accepted meeting request


 Tentatively accepted meeting request


 Declined meeting request


 Canceled meeting

 Task request

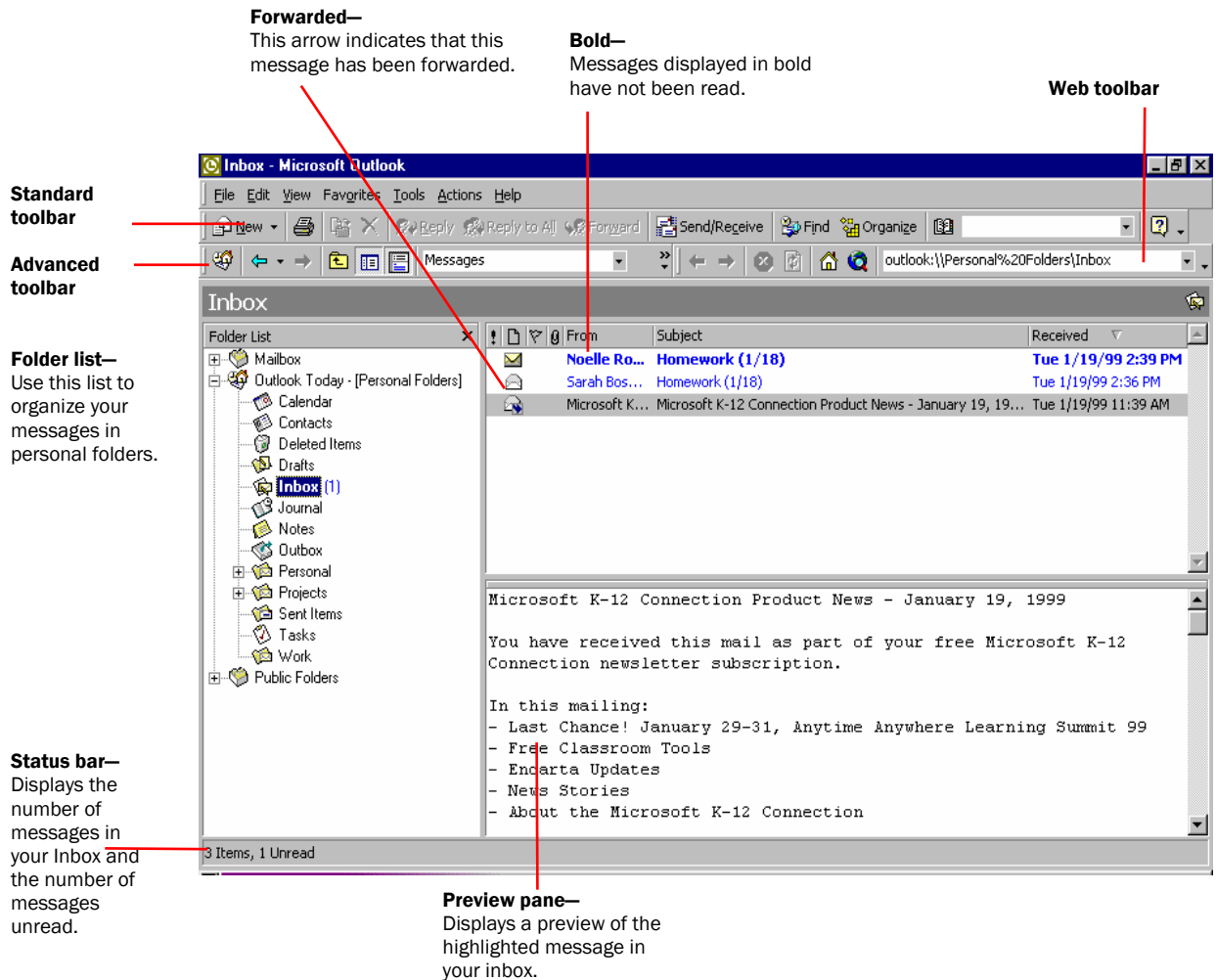
 Accepted task

 Declined task

 Message is flagged for follow up

 Message is flagged as complete


The following illustration shows the Inbox window in Outlook 2000. In this window you can receive, compose, send, and organize e-mail messages.

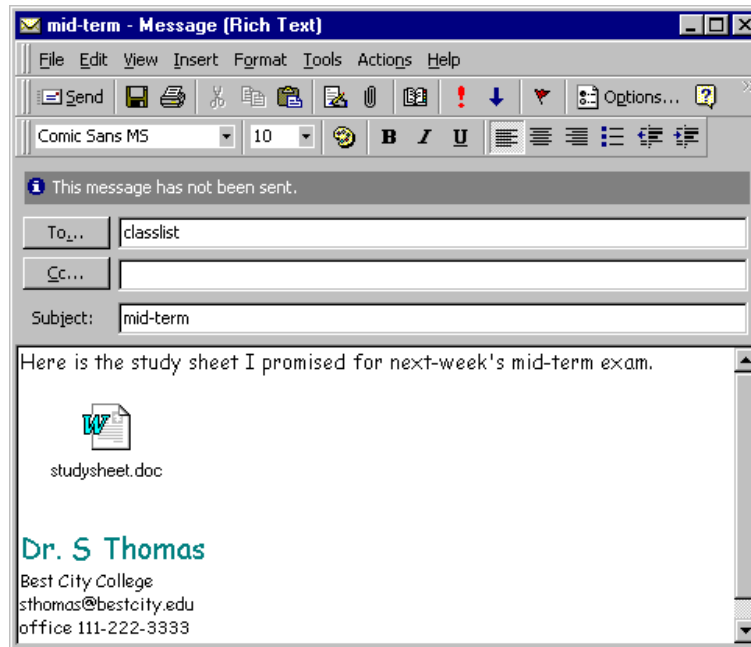


## Creating and sending e-mail messages

There are two ways to send e-mail messages using Outlook 2000: You can either open Outlook 2000 and begin a new message there or you can open any Office 2000 program, create a document, and send it directly to e-mail from that Office program.

### To create and send an e-mail message from Outlook 2000

- Start Outlook 2000.
- On the Actions menu, click New Mail Message. Or, on the Standard toolbar, click New Mail Message . To send a message on stationery, on the Actions menu, point to New Mail Message Using, click More Stationery, and then select a background. The New Message window opens.



- In the To field, type the e-mail address of the person to whom you are sending the message. If you are sending to more than one person, type a semicolon (;) between the e-mail addresses.

Or –

- Click “To” to open your address books. Select an address book and double-click a name. The address moves to the To Message Recipients field.
- Repeat the above step to add more e-mail addresses to the “To” field.
- To send a carbon copy (CC) to someone, click the CC field. Type the e-mail address in the field, or click CC, choose an address from one of your address books, and click OK. Repeat to CC other people.
- To send a blind carbon copy (BCC) to someone (to CC someone without the other message recipients knowing the person received the message), on the View menu select Bcc Field. Type the e-mail address in the field, or click BCC, choose an address from one of your address books, and click OK. Repeat to Blind CC other people.
- To add a subject line to the message, click in the Subject field and then type a brief line regarding the subject of the message.
- Click in the blank field below the Subject field (the message field) and type your message.
- When you are satisfied with your message, click Send. The message automatically moves to your Outbox folder and you return to the main Inbox window.
- If you are always connected to the network and Internet connection, your message is automatically sent.

Or -

- If you are not already connected to the Internet, click Send/ Receive to connect to the Internet and send the message.
- When the message has been sent, it moves to the Sent Items folder. If the message cannot be delivered to someone, you usually, but not always, receive an automatic reply letting you know who could not be reached and why.

### **To attach a file to a message from Outlook 2000**

In Outlook 2000, address and compose a text message as described in the “To create and send an e-mail message” section of this chapter.

- To attach a file to the message, position the cursor in the message field where you want to insert the file. This can be at the beginning, at the end, or anywhere in between.
- On the Insert menu, click File. Or, click the Insert File button on the Standard toolbar. The Insert File dialog box opens.
- Locate the file you want to attach. Click the file and then click OK. An icon representing the file labeled with the file name appears in the message field.

-Or-

- Click on a file and drag it to the message field.

### **To create and send an e-mail message from another Office 2000 program**

All Office 2000 programs integrate e-mail into their core functionality. You can send any document as a message or an attached file from directly within an Office 2000 program.

- Open the Office 2000 program of your choice.
- Open an existing document or create a new one and save the document.
- On the File menu, point to Send to. A submenu appears.
- On the submenu, you have two choices for sending the document. Select one:
  - ✓ To send a copy of this document as the text of the e-mail message, click Mail Recipient. The document becomes the body text of a new e-mail message.
  - ✓ To send a copy of the document as an attachment to the e-mail message, click Mail Recipient (as Attachment). The document becomes an attachment to a new e-mail message.
- If you select Mail Recipient, click Send Copy to send the message.

-Or-

- If you select Mail Recipient (as Attachment), click Send to send the message.

### **Receiving and replying to e-mail messages**

- When Outlook 2000 receives messages, it stores them in the Inbox folder. The number next to the word “Inbox” in the Folder list tells you how many messages are waiting for you. If there is no number, you have no new messages.
- When you click the Inbox folder in the Folder list, the contents of the folder are displayed on the upper, right portion of the window, which is called the Message

List pane. The Message header shows the subject and author of the messages in the Inbox. If a message header is bold, that message has not yet been read. If the message header is not bold, the message has been opened.

### **To receive and read messages**

- Open Outlook 2000.
- If you are always connected to the network and the Internet, any messages sent to you are automatically received to the Inbox folder. If you have new messages, an envelope icon appears in the taskbar.

Or –

- Click Send and Receive. Your computer connects to the Internet and tries to retrieve your messages to the Inbox folder. (It also sends any messages in the Outbox folder.)
- In the Folder list, click the Inbox folder. (If it has a number next to it, you have new or unread messages.) New and unread messages appear in bold in the Message List pane.
- To read a new message, click it in the Message List pane. The contents of the message are displayed in the Message Contents pane.

-Or –

- Double-click the message in the Message List pane to open the message in its own window.
- To open an attachment, double-click its file icon. The attachment opens in the appropriate program.
- When you are finished, you can close the message and it remains in the Inbox folder.

### **Using the Organize button**

Outlook 2000 can automatically organize certain messages for you. Outlook 2000 can save you time sorting through unwanted “junk” messages, highlight messages from certain people, and even move specified messages into certain folders upon delivery.

### **To organize messages using the Organize button**

- Open the Inbox folder. (For some options you will need to have messages in the Inbox.)
- Click Organize on the Standard toolbar, or, on the Tools menu, click Organize. The Ways to Organize Inbox dialog box opens at the top of the message pane.
- Four options are available on the left side of the dialog box: Using Folders, Using Colors, Using Views, and Junk E-mail. You can do any of the following:
  - Click Using Folders to create new folders, open the Rules Wizard, and move messages to other folders. You can easily create a rule to move messages from a certain sender into another folder upon delivery.

- Click Using Colors to color code messages by sender.
- Click Using Views to select how you see messages in your Inbox.
- Click Junk E-mail to color code junk and adult content messages, or have them sent directly to Deleted Items or another folder. You can also add senders to the junk or adult content filters.
- When you are finished, click Organize to close the dialog box.

You can also organize messages that have already been moved to other folders by opening that folder and then clicking Organize.

### Using the Rules Wizard

- A rule is a set of conditions and actions for processing and organizing your e-mail messages. *Conditions* identify messages for processing, and *actions* determine what kind of processing is performed. For example, you can define a rule that tells Outlook 2000 to forward all messages sent to you from students in Biology 101 section 3 to your lab assistants, or create a rule that tells Outlook 2000 to put all message with “Homework” in the subject field into a certain folder in your Personal Folders list.
- If you receive a large volume of mail from several different groups (personal mail, mail from students, mail from colleagues, even junk mail) you can use the Outlook Rules Wizard to create your own rules to manage your messages automatically. Here are some examples of rules you can create:
  - Assign categories to messages based on their contents.
  - Set up a notification, such as a message or a sound, when important messages arrive.
  - Move messages to a particular folder based on who sent them.
  - Delete messages in a conversation.
  - Flag messages from a particular person.
  - Assign categories to your sent messages based on their contents.
  - Delay delivery of messages by a specified amount of time.
  - Redirect an e-mail message to a person or distribution list.
  - Automatically reply to a certain type of message with a specific message you create.

### To create a rule


- Open Outlook 2000 and click the Inbox folder to display its contents.
- On the Tools menu, click Rules Wizard. The Rules Wizard dialog box opens.
- Click New. The Rules Wizard displays a list of the different types of rules you can create along with a description of the rule in the Rule description box.
- Select the type of rule you want to create and click Next.
- Select the conditions for the rule as directed by the Rules Wizard and then click Next.
- Specify the action for the rule as directed by the Rules Wizard and then click Next.

- Specify any exceptions to the rule as directed by the Rules Wizard and then click Next.
- Specify a name for the rule and then select the Turn on this rule check box to activate it.
- Click Finish. The rule is added to the Rules Wizard list.



**There are three ways to control how rules are applied in the Rules Wizard:**

- When you create a rule, you specify whether the rule is applied when the message arrives in the Inbox or when you send a message. You set these options for each rule.
- After you create multiple rules, you can move the rules up or down in the list in the Rules Wizard to change the order in which they are applied. Rules are applied in the order they appear in the list. Rules that are marked “client only” are applied after all other rules.
- You can specify whether the rule runs automatically or manually. This is useful when you want to apply rules manually to messages already delivered to the Inbox.

**Creating an address book**

- Use the Address Book dialog box to look up e-mail and fax information when you address messages. Use the Contacts folder to store and retrieve all types of information about others such as street addresses, telephone numbers, e-mail addresses, fax phone numbers, and Web page addresses. To open the Address Book dialog box, click Address Book  on the Standard toolbar, or click Address Book on the Tools menu.
- There can be several types of address books in the Address Book dialog box including the Global Address List, the Personal Address Book, and the Outlook Address Book. Select these address books in the Show names from box. Contacts in the Contacts folder that include an entry in the e-mail field or one of the fax phone number fields automatically appear in the Outlook Address Book.

**To add information to the address book**

- › Click Address Book  on the Standard toolbar. The Address Book dialog box opens.
- › In the Show Names from the drop-down box, select Personal Address Book.
- › Click New Entry  on the dialog box's toolbar.
- › In the Put this entry in the drop-down list, click Personal Address Book.
- › Select the type of entry you want to create (Microsoft Mail Address, Internet Address, Other Address, and so forth) and then click OK.
- › Enter the person's name and e-mail address in the appropriate fields.
- › If you want, click the Business, Phone Numbers, or Notes tabs and enter additional information.
- › Click OK to save the information.
- › Repeat steps 3 through 7 to add more addresses.

## Exploring Contacts

Outlook 2000 serves as much more than just an e-mail program: you can use it to maintain an electronic address book of your students, colleagues, and anyone else you need to contact. Storing contacts electronically in Outlook 2000 allows you to find information about someone quickly and easily. In the Contacts folder, you can store a wide range of information about people, from their work and home phone numbers and physical addresses to e-mail addresses and Web addresses, if they have them. You can link any Outlook item or Office document to a contact to help you track activities associated with that person or group.

### Contacts symbols:



Activities have been automatically recorded in Journal for this contact



Contact



Contact has an attachment



Contact is flagged for follow up

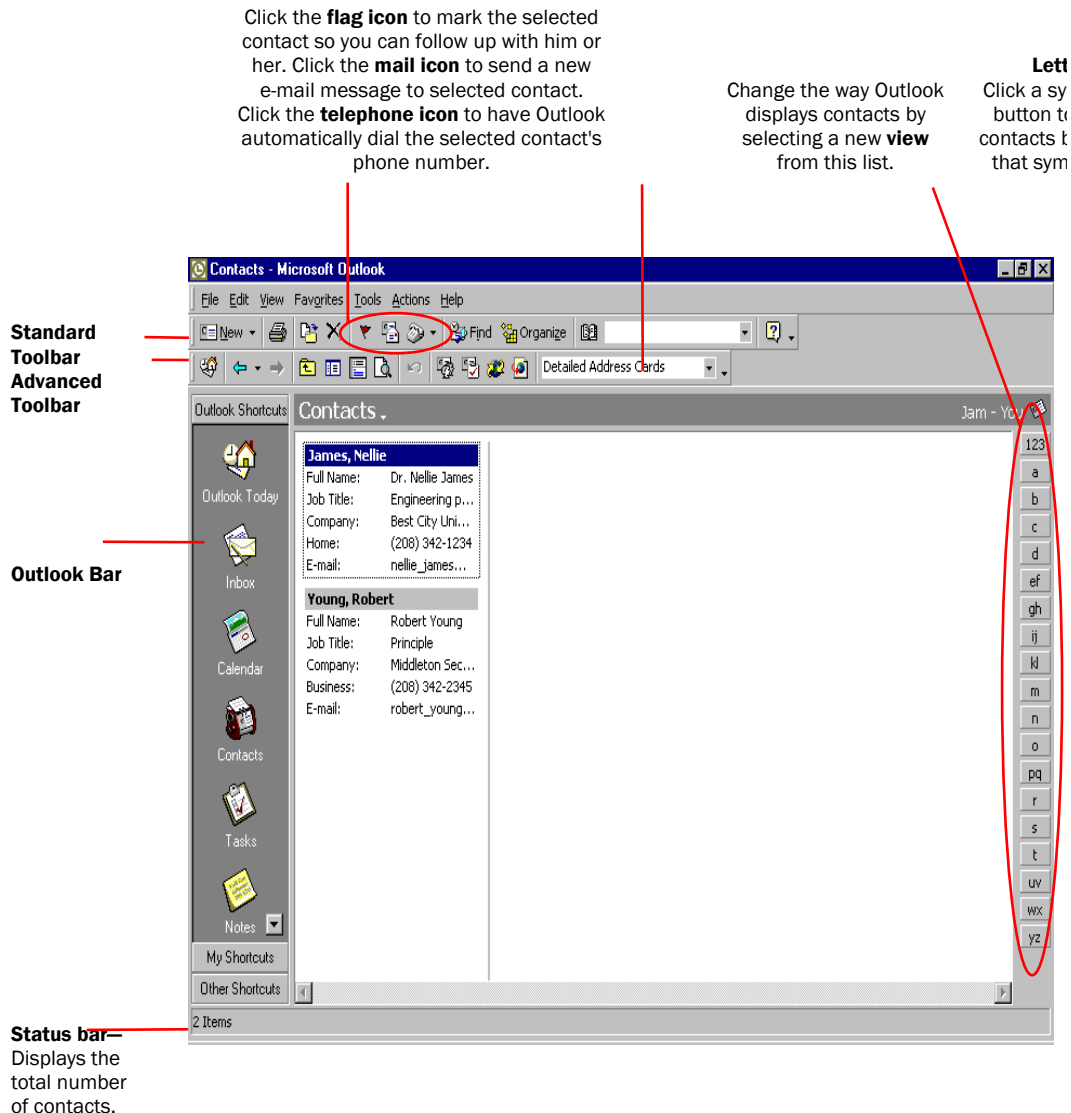


Contact is flagged as complete

When you enter a name or address for a contact, Outlook 2000 separates the name or address into parts and puts each part in a separate field. You can sort, group, or filter contacts by any part of the name or any part of the address you want.

From a contact in your contact list, you can click a button or menu command to have Outlook 2000 address a meeting request, e-mail message, or task request to the contact. If you have a modem, you can also have Outlook 2000 dial the contact's phone number. You can have Outlook 2000 time the call and keep a record in Journal complete with the notes you take during the conversation.





You can file contact information under a last name, first name, company name, nickname, or any word that helps you find the contact quickly, for example, “Section 004” for students in a particular class. Outlook 2000 gives you several naming choices to file the contact under or you can enter your own choice. You can enter up to three addresses for each contact. Designate one address as the mailing address and use it for mailing labels, envelopes, or creating mail-merge letters.

### Creating contacts

A contact is a person or organization you correspond with. You can store information about contacts such as job titles, phone numbers, addresses, e-mail addresses, Internet e-mail addresses, and notes. When you create a contact, you can start by entering all new information or you can start with information from an existing contact.

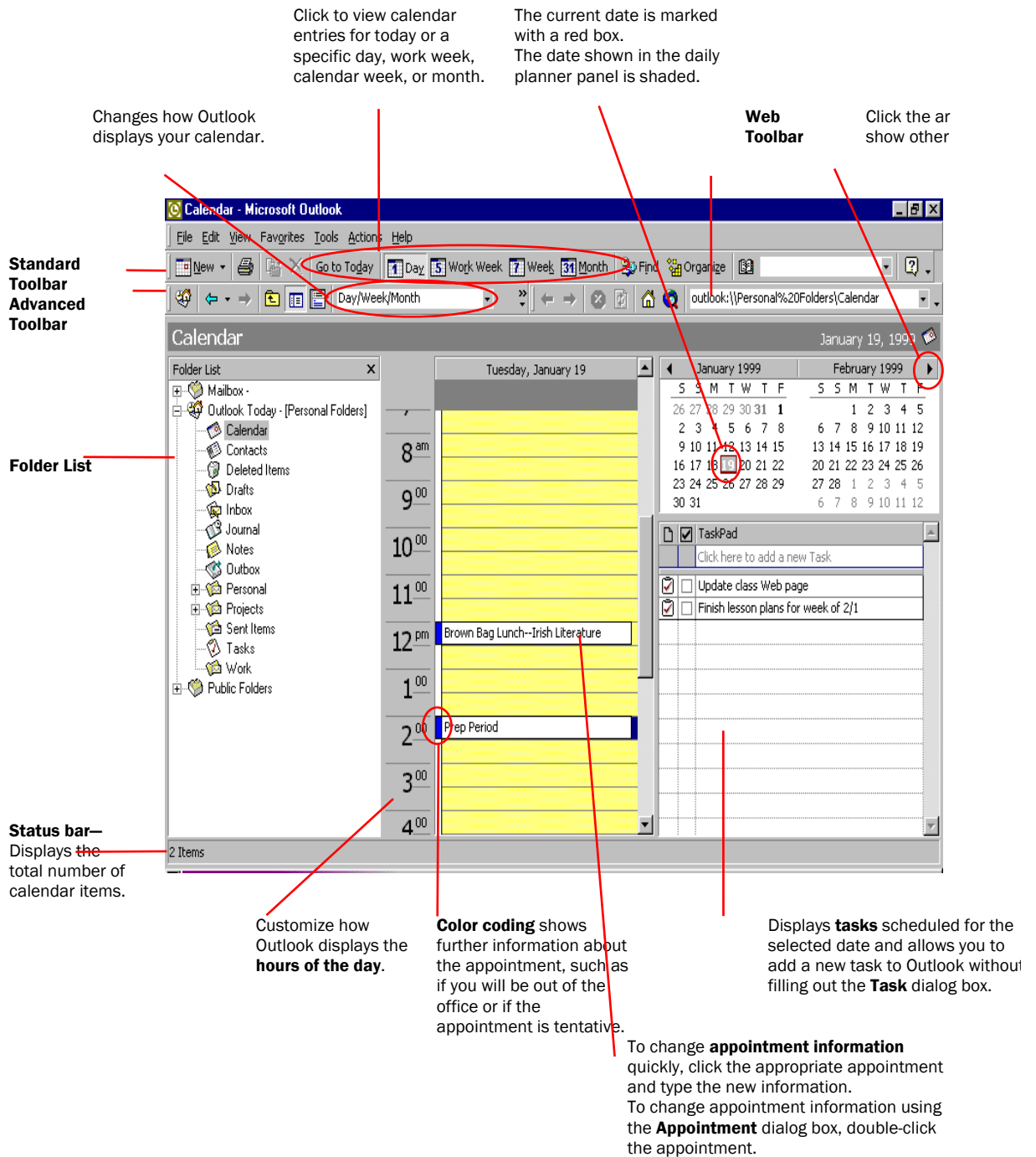
## To create a new contact

The screenshot shows the 'Untitled - Contact' dialog box in Outlook 2000. The dialog has a menu bar (File, Edit, View, Insert, Format, Tools, Actions, Help) and a toolbar with icons for Save and Close, Print, Copy, Paste, Find, and other functions. Below the toolbar are tabs for General, Details, Activities, Certificates, and All Fields. The General tab is active, showing fields for Full Name, Job title, Company, File as, Business, Home, Business Fax, Mobile, Address, E-mail, and Web page address. There is also a checkbox for 'This is the mailing address' and buttons for 'Contacts...' and 'Categories...' at the bottom.

- › On the File menu, point to New and then click Contact. The Contact dialog box opens.
- › In the Full Name box, type a name for the contact.
- › Enter the information you want to include for the contact. There are several tabs on which you can enter information.
- › If you wish, assign the contact to a category. Click Categories and then select a category from the list.
- › Click Save and Close.

## Exploring Calendar

Outlook 2000's Calendar offers an easy way to keep track of appointments and schedule your time. You can look at appointments and tasks for a given day or look at appointments in relation to other appointments in the month. You can also post your calendar to a Web page or print it out and make handouts so that students, parents, or others can know when you are available.



#### Calendar symbols:



Appointment



Click to see calendar items that do not fit in the current view



Meeting



Meeting request



Recurring appointment



Recurring meeting



Recurring meeting or appointment



Reminder for the appointment or meeting



Private meeting or appointment



Start and end times of the appointment or meeting

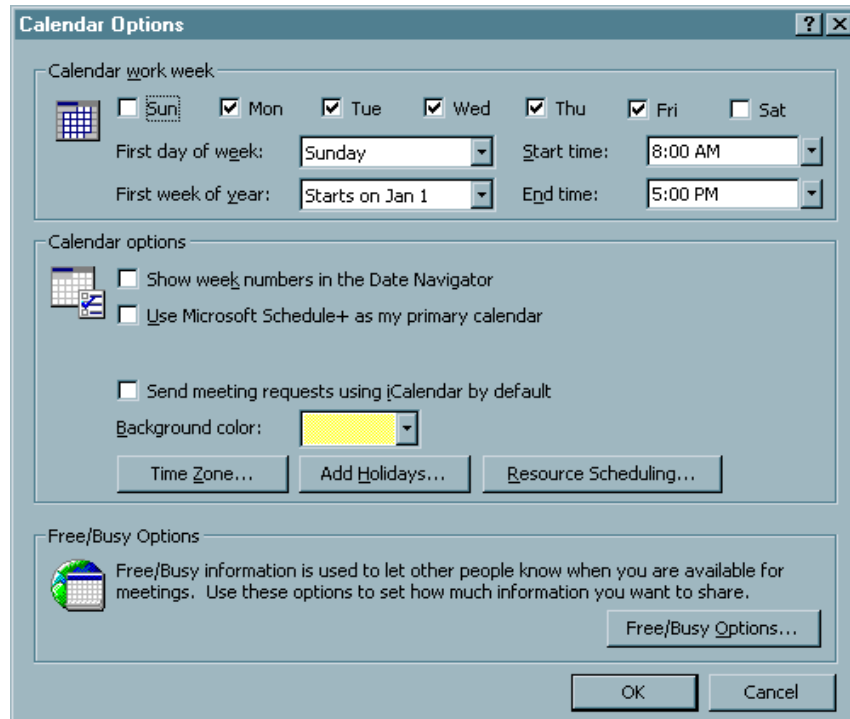


Calendar item has an attachment

#### To set calendar preferences

With the Calendar folder open, on the Tools menu, click Options. The Options dialog box opens.

- Click the Preferences tab.
- Under Calendar, select Default reminder to have Outlook 2000 remind you automatically of all appointments. Then, in the drop-down box, select the amount of time before appointments you want to receive the reminder. (You can change this time for individual appointments when you create them.)
- Click Calendar Options. The Calendar Options dialog box opens.



- Select the days of the week you want to show on your calendar.
- Select other options as necessary. To select a time zone, or show more than one time zone at a time, click Time Zone.
- To have Outlook 2000 automatically display holidays for different countries or religions, click Add Holidays.
- If you are responsible for coordinating resources, such as conference rooms, or classrooms, click Resource Scheduling.
- To publish your free/busy information on a Web or other server, click Free/Busy Options.
- When you are finished, click OK.

---

## 9.2 DIFFERENCE BETWEEN OUTLOOK EXPRESS AND MICROSOFT OUTLOOK

---

	Outlook Express	Microsoft Outlook
<b>Definition</b>	Outlook Express is the e-mail client that is included with Microsoft Internet Explorer 4.x, Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.x, the Microsoft Windows 98 operating system, the Microsoft Windows Millennium Edition (Me) operating	Outlook is Microsoft's premier messaging and collaboration client. It is a stand-alone application that is integrated into Microsoft Office and Exchange Server. Outlook also provides performance and

	system, the Microsoft Windows 2000 operating systems, and Microsoft Office 98 for the Macintosh. Outlook Express is designed for home users who gain access to their e-mail messages by dialing in to an Internet service provider (ISP).	integration with Internet Explorer 5.5. Complete integration of e-mail, calendaring, and contact management, makes Outlook the perfect client for many business users
<b>Technology</b>	Built on open Internet standards, Outlook Express is designed for use with any Internet standard system, for example, Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP), Post Office Protocol 3 (POP3), and Internet Mail Access Protocol (IMAP). It provides full support for today's most important e-mail, news, and directory standards such as Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP), Multipurpose Internet Mail Extension Hypertext Markup Language (MHTML), Hypertext Markup Language (HTML), Secure/Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (S/MIME), and Network News Transfer Protocol (NNTP). Full support ensures that you can take advantage of new technologies as well as seamlessly send and receive e-mail	Outlook is designed for use with the Internet (SMTP, POP3, and IMAP4), Exchange Server, or any other standards-based communication system that supports Messaging Application Programming Interface (MAPI), including voice mail. Outlook is based on Internet standards and supports today's most important e-mail, news, and directory standards, including LDAP, MHTML, NNTP, MIME, and S/MIME, vCalendar, vCard, iCalendar, and full support for HTML mail. Outlook also offers the same import tools that are offered with Outlook Express. This enables easy migration from other e-mail clients, and offers further migration from Microsoft Mail, Microsoft Schedule+ 1.0, Microsoft Schedule+ 7.0, Lotus Organizer, NetManage ECCO, Starfish SideKick, Symantec ACT, as well as synchronization with leading Personal Digital Assistants (PDAs), such as the 3Com Palm Pilot.
<b>Platforms Supported</b>	Versions of Windows later than Microsoft Windows 95, versions of Windows earlier than Microsoft Windows 95, Macintosh, and UNIX platforms	Versions of Windows later than Microsoft Windows 95, versions of Windows earlier than Microsoft Windows 95, and Macintosh platforms
<b>Calendars, group scheduling, task, and contact management</b>	Not Supported	Supported By Outlook and is widely used across organizations

<b>Integration with Other Applications</b>	Outlook Express handles not only Internet mail but also Internet news, a feature that Outlook does not natively possess. But Outlook has a host of features that Outlook Express does not have, such as a calendar, a task list, a journal, and automatic backup into archive files. The address book in Outlook is a very sophisticated contact management system unlike the simple address book used by Outlook Express. Outlook can be programmed using Visual Basic for Applications (VBA) but Outlook Express cannot. Outlook is highly interoperable and so can be used in combination with Word, for example, to perform mail-merge in e-mail or to automate outgoing mail messages. Outlook Express does not interact with other programs in this way except for creating a new mail message when a program requests it.	Outlook also has a very powerful Junk Mail feature which has received high praise and is envied just as highly by many Outlook Express users. In a similar vein, Outlook has message rules for both incoming and outgoing mail, while Outlook Express can only filter incoming. Outlook rules also offer a much wider range of actions than do rules in Outlook Express.
<b>Network System</b>	Outlook Express was designed for use on a single computer and so its message store and settings cannot be stored on a server.	Outlook however was tailor-made for networks, and so its message store can be on a central server that many machines can access. If you need to access your e-mail from more than one machine on your network

---

### 9.3 COMPUTER IN OFFICE AUTOMATION

---

Office automation is defined as using computer and communications technology to help people better use and manage information. Office automation technology includes all types of computers, telephones, electronic mail, and office machines that use microprocessors or other high-technology components.

People who use office automation are often called knowledge workers-senior executives, managers, supervisors, analysts, engineers, and other white-collar office workers. In most offices, information (often in paper form) is the end product and is essential for 'conducting the company's business. Office automation systems keep track of the information originating in various operations throughout the company, such as order processing, accounting, inventory, and manufacturing. Office automation provides knowledge workers with information-producing systems to collect, analyze, plan, and control information about the many facets of the business, using text, voice, graphics and video display technology.

## **People**

Although it takes people to complete work, it is the way people work that accounts for productivity. In recent years, the trend has been towards people working together to accomplish more. This is called work-group computing, which means a number of knowledge workers, each with different tasks, jobs or duties, work together towards a common goal. In large companies, there may be dozens or hundreds of workgroups. In smaller companies, everyone is part of the workgroup.

## **Ergonomics**

Business learned that "office could not be automated in the same way the factory was automated, and the field of ergonomic began to emerge. Office tasks involve a great deal of thinking and decision-making. As a result office systems must be flexible and versatile. Moreover, they must be designed so any knowledge worker, regardless of background can easily use them. This is called ergonomics, the study of how to create safety, comfort and ease of use for people who use machines. It is not a new field of study; in fact it has existed for over 100 years.

With the advent of computers, ergonomics engineers became particularly interested in office automation systems, furniture "and. environments for the knowledge worker intensive studies determined the best ,designs for Keyboard, set. Eyes fatigue- levels for monitors, and specified desks and seating designs that alleviate physical stress. Office furniture companies soon introduced ergonomically designed chairs and "equipment. Ergonomics has- played a significant role in -helping people use technology more effectively

There are five primary technologies used in managing information in office automation:

- Text or written words
- Data, as in umbers or other non-text forms.
- Graphics, including drawings, charts and photographs
- Audio, as in telephone, voice mail, or voice recognition systems
- Video, such as captured images, videotapes or teleconferencing.

In the past these forms of information- was created using different technologies. Text was created using conventional typewriters' or more" recently, word processing.

### **9.3.1 Office Automation Technologies**

Data, such as sales reports, was provided by the central computer. Charts and grabs were,- either ll and-drawn or created using 35mm slide photography and videotapes were user" or training. Audio was limited t9 the" phone or tape recording. It was not possible to combine these various forms of information.

What made it Possible to combine them was the computer. What computer produces is called an electronic document, which is a self-contained work, conveying information that has been created by a knowledge worker and stored in a computer system. An electronic document may be a simple main that may be printed on paper or transmitted via electronic



mail. Or it may be a more complex document, with graphics or even Video. Most computer systems can incorporate sound, so that an onscreen document can be annotated with comments spoken by the document creator.

Today, the computer integrates others different media and others' as well Data, sound and images can all -be 'entered info' a computer-, stored- and translated into the kind of output we need. It is now common to seek knowledge worker's in workgroups using a special type of, software designed' specifically for them and their work. This application software's called groupware, lets networked PCs and workstations share information and electronic documents from both corporate and on-line sources. At the center of this integration are networking and communications systems...

### **Office Automation Systems**

Office automation uses computer based systems to provide" information to help knowledge workers make decisions that benefit the business. Office automation systems are" comprised of many distinct subsystems: text management systems, business analysis systems, document management systems" and Network and communications C systems.

### **Text Management Systems**

A text management system is a completer system -cDesigned to work with the written or typewritten word. It includes all kinds of typewriters, word processing systems, PCs with word processing, desktop publishing and text editing systems, and even computerized typesetting equipment. Text management systems are used for test like writing memos, notes, letters and other short documents, - printing envelopes" and labels preparing pre-printed forms such as invoices, composing complex documents such as proposals and reports, retrieving and editing documents such as contracts, Creating display documents like newsletters, etc.

### **Business Analysis Systems**

Managers need solid data from which to extract the information necessary to make good decisions for the business. In the past, these knowledge workers had to rely on their experience and other personal factors to make decisions. A business analysis system provides data that, when used with the proper software, helps its users - better understand the business environment and make more effective decisions. Corporate users routinely use spreadsheets for analyzing cost and benefits and for creating budgets.

Other software tools for performing analysis that and"-commonly used in large companies are decision support systems (DSS), expert systems and executive support \ systems (ESS). A **decision support system** helps the knowledge worker to extract information from the various MIS database and reporting systems, analyze it, and then formulate a decision or a strategy for business planning. An **expert system** is a computer system that can. store and retrieve data with special problem solving expertise. An **executive support system** is an information system that consolidates and summarizes ongoing transactions within the organization. It provides the management with all the information it requires at all times from internal as well as external sources.

### **Document Management Systems**

Document management systems aid in filing, tracking and managing documents, whether they are paper, computer based, micrographic, or purely electronic. Office automation demands that data be immediately accessible and instantaneously retrievable. For that reason, we are slowly moving away from paper and toward. Document forms that can be stored on the computer.

### **Network and Communication Management Systems**

Today, knowledge workers have many ways to communicate with one another, primarily by voice, fax, and e-mail. They can communicate in real-time, via phone or computer. They can also communicate using computer controlled PBX telephone systems to record a digital message and leave it in the recipient's electronic mailbox. These systems are called network and communication management systems. The network and communication management systems include telephone, electronic mail, voice messaging systems, and teleconferencing and fax machines.

---

## **9.4 COMPUTERS IN ENGINEERING**

---

### **Introduction**

In the global economy, it is absolutely necessary for an organization to keep costs as low as possible in order to remain competitive. Since design, production, and manufacturing consumes so much of a manufacturing company's budget, great savings are being made by automating these procedures as much as possible.

### **Electronic Data Interchange (EDI)**

EDI is the computer-to-computer exchange of business documents in a standard format. These formats look much like standard forms and are highly structured. One widely used format is for purchase orders and consists of an outer digital 'envelope' with the addresses of both the sender and receiver. Inside the digital envelope a series of structured codes define the part number, cost, tax information, shipment methods, bill-to location, ship-to location, and contacts to call. This EDI purchase order can be automatically generated by the buyer when inventory fall below a certain point and send via networks to the supplier. At that end it is automatically processed and creates **a list of the products to be shipped even before the normal workday begins.**

### **Computer Aided Design/Computer Aided Manufacturing (CAD/CAM)**

An increasingly, popular tool for product design is Computer-aided-Design (CAD). CAD systems are computer programs or integrated packages for workstation hardware and software that allow the *user* to draw and easily modify product designs on a computer screen. Advanced CAD systems provide designers with at least 3 major benefits.

**Graphics capabilities** - CAD systems allow the designer to view a product from different perspectives, including three-dimensional rotations, and various cross-sections. The designer can also make proportional changes in scale, or change the angle of an arc with the click of a computer mouse rather than having to redraw the entire product.

**Design, storage and retrieval** - Some CAD systems can store the design characteristics of existing products and components. Then, for example, if a company needs a gear for a new product, the designer can enter the relevant information about the gear, such as its diameter, tooth pattern, and required hardness, into the CAD system. The CAD system determines whether the company is already using an identical or sufficiently similar gear, in which case a new one is unnecessary. If not, a gear that has similar properties may exist. The designer can then use the design of this similar gear as a starting point for the new gear: This capability not only promotes the use of common components but also reduces design time.

**Automatic evaluation of specifications** - One of the most time-consuming aspects of design for highly technical products is calculating whether or not product specifications, such as strength, heat resistance or aerodynamic drag, are satisfied. These calculations can be programmed into some CAD systems so that whenever the designer changes the design (by altering the shape or material to be used), these performance characteristics are recalculated automatically and compared to the product requirements. This is sometimes called **Computerized. -Engineering (CAE)**.

The overall benefits of CAD systems can be substantial. The features described above reduce development time and cost, and they improve product quality because more design options can be evaluated in greater detail more quickly. For example, Motorola used three-dimensional CAD to produce its award-winning MicroTac pocket sized cellular phone two years ahead of the competition. It is not uncommon for CAD systems to reduce product cycle times by 10-50 %.

Even greater time and cost reductions have resulted from recent advances whereby CAD-engineered designs are converted automatically into software programs for computerized production machines. These are called Computer-aided Design/Computer-assisted-Manufacturing (CAD/CAM) systems. This automatic conversion eliminates the costly and time consuming steps of having a person convert design drawings into a computer program for computer-controlled production equipment; such as robots or machine tools. CAD and CAD / CAM systems are not used by large automotive or electronics companies alone. Future Enterprises, the largest maker of wedding jewelry in the United States, reported that its CAD / CAM system reduced the time required to design and make jewelry from five months to one week.

### **Product Data Management (PDM)**

One of the major manufacturing challenges is to maximize the time-to-market benefits of concurrent engineering while maintaining control -of your data and distributing it automatically to the people who need it, when they need it. The way PDM systems cope with this challenge is that master data is held only once in a secure 'vault' where its integrity can be assured and all changes to it monitored, controlled and recorded.

Duplicate reference copies of the master data, on the other hand, can be distributed freely, to users in various departments for design, analysis and approval. The new data is then released back into the vault. When a 'change' is made to data, what actually happens is that

a modified copy of the data, signed and dated, is stored in the vault alongside the old data, which remains in its original form as permanent record.

The following are some of the benefits of the **PDM** system:

- Reduced time-to-market
- Improved design productivity
- Better use of creative team skills
- Data integrity safeguarded
- Better management of engineering change

### **Feature Prototyping**

One of the problems with product design is getting an intimate feel for the appearance and behavior potential of a product. Now there are software packages, which can generate computer prototypes, which can be distributed and tested by actual customers. Usage data from these tests is collected automatically and used to refine product specifications until they precisely meets customers' needs. This process helps in ensuring the market success of the new product before costly and time-consuming investments in engineering and manufacturing are made.

Better than communicating with customers using written specifications, static drawings, flip charts, or multimedia authoring tools, feature prototyping 'using fully functional prototypes provide accurate and valuable feedback to the company based on customers' experience that can make the difference -between a resounding market winner -and an embarrassing product failure.

### **Project Management**

When projects from marketing campaigns to construction projects are undertaken, keeping track of all the tasks is a big job and that is what project management programs have been developed to do. One concept they use is the critical path; the series of tasks that must follow one another in order and cannot be overlapped or begun until the previous one is completed. For example, a roof cannot be put on a house until the walls are up, and the walls cannot be built until the foundation is completed. When these dependent tasks are laid out end-to-end, they form the project's critical path. Any delays in the tasks on this path delay the entire project. Tasks not on the critical path like paving the driveway do not affect the project's completion date. Speeding up the project, called trashing the schedule can be done only by changing the dates on the critical path, but changing some dates on the critical path may result in another path becoming critical. Since this process is so interactive, it lends itself to computerization. Graphics are often used to show the complicated relationships in the timing and sequence of a project.

---

## **9.5 REVIEW QUESTIONS**

---

1. Explain salient features of MS-Outlook.
2. Compare Outlook Express and Ms Outlook.
3. Explain the Calendar views available in MS outlook.
4. What is the utilities available in MS outlook for E-mails? Comment on it.
5. What is the role of computers in Engineering?

“The lesson content has been compiled from various sources in public domain including but not limited to the internet for the convenience of the users. The university has no proprietary right on the same.”



**EIILM UNIVERSITY**  
S I K K I M

Jorethang, District Namchi, Sikkim- 737121, India  
[www.eiilmuniversity.ac.in](http://www.eiilmuniversity.ac.in)